

LOCAL ADVERTISING CONTENT ON AN INTERACTIVE HEAD-MOUNTED EYEPiece

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

[0001] This application claims the benefit of the following provisional applications, each of which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety: United States Provisional Patent Application 61/308,973, filed February 28, 2010; United States Provisional Patent Application 61/373,791, filed August 13, 2010; United States Provisional Patent Application 61/382,578, filed September 14, 2010; United States Provisional Patent Application 61/410,983, filed November 8, 2010; United States Provisional Patent Application 61/429,445, filed January 3, 2011; and United States Provisional Patent Application 61/429,447, filed January 3, 2011.

BACKGROUND

[0002] Field:

[0003] The present disclosure relates to an augmented reality eyepiece, associated control technologies, and applications for use. The present disclosure also relates to an apparatus for collecting biometric data and making the collected data available over a network using highly portable devices.

SUMMARY

[0004] In one embodiment, an eyepiece may include a nano-projector (or micro-projector) comprising a light source and an LCoS display, a (two surface) freeform wave guide lens enabling TIR bounces, a coupling lens disposed between the LCoS display and the freeform waveguide, and a wedge-shaped optic (translucent correction lens) adhered to the waveguide lens that enables proper viewing through the lens whether the projector is on or off. The projector may include an RGB LED module. The RGB LED module may emit field sequential color, wherein the different colored LEDs are turned on in rapid succession to form a color image that is reflected off the LCoS display. The projector may have a polarizing beam splitter or a projection collimator.

[0005] In one embodiment, an eyepiece may include a freeform wave guide lens, a freeform translucent correction lens, a display coupling lens and a micro-projector.

[0006] In another embodiment, an eyepiece may include a freeform wave guide lens, a freeform correction lens, a display coupling lens and a micro-projector, providing a FOV of at least 80-degrees and a Virtual Display FOV (Diagonal) of ~25-30°.

[0007] In an embodiment, an eyepiece may include an optical wedge waveguide optimized to match with the ergonomic factors of the human head, allowing it to wrap around a human face.

[0008] In another embodiment, an eyepiece may include two freeform optical surfaces and waveguide to enable folding the complex optical paths within a very thin prism form factor.

[0009] The present disclosure provides a method of collecting biometric information from an individual. The method comprises positioning a body part of the individual in front of a sensor. The sensor may be a flat plate type sensor for collecting fingerprints and palm prints, or may be an optical device for collecting an iris print. Video and audio may be used to collect facial, gait, and voice information. The collected information is then processed to form an image, typically using the light reflected from the body part, when the biometric data is amenable to visual capture. Captured images are formed by the flat plate sensor, which may also be a mosaic sensor, using light reflected toward the cameras located inside the sensor. The collected image may be stored on the collection device, or uploaded to a database of biometric data.

[0010] An embodiment provides an apparatus for collecting biometric data. The apparatus includes a flat plate containing a mosaic sensor, wherein the mosaic sensor has multiple light sources positioned around the perimeter of the flat plate as well as cameras disposed perpendicular to the flat plate. The device also includes a keyboard and straps for mounting the device to a user's forearm. Internally, the device includes a geo-location module for ascertaining and recording position information and a communications module that provides wireless interface with other communication devices. An internal clock is also included and provides time stamping of collected biometric information.

[0011] A further embodiment of the apparatus provides a system for biometric information collection. The system includes a flat plate sensor for collecting finger and palm information, an eyepiece that may be part of an augmented reality eyepiece, a video camera for collecting facial and gait information, and a computer for analyzing the collected biometric data. Collected data is then compared to a database of previously collected information and the results of the comparison are reported to the user.

[0012] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, wherein the displayed content comprises an interactive control element; and an integrated camera facility that images the surrounding environment, and identifies a user hand gesture as an interactive control element location command, wherein the location of the interactive control element remains fixed with respect to an object in the surrounding environment, in response to the interactive control element location command, regardless of a change in the viewing direction of the user.

[0013] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; wherein the displayed content comprises an interactive control element; and an integrated camera facility that images a user's body part as it interacts with the interactive control element, wherein the processor removes a portion of the interactive control element by subtracting the portion of the interactive control element that is determined to be co-located with the imaged user body part based on the user's view.

[0014] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through

which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. The displayed content may comprise an interactive keyboard control element, and where the keyboard control element is associated with an input path analyzer, a word matching search facility, and a keyboard input interface. The user may input text by sliding a pointing device (e.g. a finger, a stylus, and the like) across character keys of the keyboard input interface in an sliding motion through an approximate sequence of a word the user would like to input as text, wherein the input path analyzer determines the characters contacted in the input path, the word matching facility finds a best word match to the sequence of characters contacted and inputs the best word match as input text.

[0015] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; and an integrated camera facility that images an external visual cue, wherein the integrated processor identifies and interprets the external visual cue as a command to display content associated with the visual cue. The visual cue may be a sign in the surrounding environment, and where the projected content is associated with an advertisement. The sign may be a billboard, and the advertisement a personalized advertisement based on a preferences profile of the user. The visual cue may be a hand gesture, and the projected content a projected virtual keyboard. The hand gesture may be a thumb and index finger gesture from a first user hand, and the virtual keyboard projected on the palm of the first user hand, and where the user is able to type on the virtual keyboard with a second user hand. The hand gesture may be a thumb and index finger gesture combination of both user hands, and the virtual keyboard projected between the user hands as configured in the hand gesture, where the user is able to type on the virtual keyboard using the thumbs of the user's hands.

[0016] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; and an integrated camera facility that images a gesture, wherein the integrated processor identifies and interprets the gesture as a command instruction. The control instruction may provide manipulation of the content for display, a command communicated to an external device, and the like.

[0017] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; and a tactile control interface mounted on the eyepiece that accepts control inputs from the user through at least one of a user touching the interface and the user being proximate to the interface.

[0018] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; and at least one of a plurality of head motion sensing control devices integrated with the eyepiece that provide control commands to the processor as command instructions based upon sensing a predefined head motion characteristic.

[0019] The head motion characteristic may be a nod of the user's head such that the nod is an overt motion dissimilar from ordinary head motions. The overt motion

may be a jerking motion of the head. The control instructions may provide manipulation of the content for display, be communicated to control an external device, and the like.

[0020] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, wherein the optical assembly includes an electrochromic layer that provides a display characteristic adjustment that is dependent on displayed content requirements and surrounding environmental conditions. In embodiments, the display characteristic may be brightness, contrast, and the like. The surrounding environmental condition may be a level of brightness that without the display characteristic adjustment would make the displayed content difficult to visualize by the wearer of the eyepiece, where the display characteristic adjustment may be applied to an area of the optical assembly where content is being projected.

[0021] In embodiments, the eyepiece may be an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user may view a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may comprise a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. Further, the eyepiece may include an adjustable wrap round extendable arm comprising any shape memory material for securing the position of the eyepiece on the user's head. The extendable arm may extend from an end of an eyepiece arm. The end of a wrap around extendable arm may be covered with silicone. Further, the extendable arms may meet and secure to each other or they may independently grasp a portion of the head. In other embodiments, the extendable arm may attach to a portion of the head mounted eyepiece to secure the eyepiece to the user's head. In embodiments, the extendable arm may extend telescopically from the end of the eyepiece arm. In other embodiments, at least one of the wrap around extendable arms may be detachable from

the head mounted eyepiece. Also, the extendable arm may be an add-on feature of the head mounted eyepiece.

[0022] In embodiments, the eyepiece may be an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user may view a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may comprise a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. Further, the displayed content may comprise a local advertisement wherein the location of the eyepiece is determined by an integrated location sensor. Also, the local advertisement may have relevance to the location of the eyepiece. In other embodiments, the eyepiece may contain a capacitive sensor capable of sensing whether the eyepiece is in contact with human skin. The local advertisement may be sent to the user based on whether the capacitive sensor senses that the eyepiece is in contact with human skin. The local advertisements may also be sent in response to the eyepiece being powered on.

[0023] In other embodiments, the local advertisement may be displayed to the user as a banner advertisement, two dimensional graphic, or text. Further, advertisement may be associated with a physical aspect of the surrounding environment. In yet other embodiments, the advertisement may be displayed as an augmented reality associated with a physical aspect of the surrounding environment. The augmented reality advertisement may be two or three-dimensional. Further, the advertisement may be animated and it may be associated with the user's view of the surrounding environment. The local advertisements may also be displayed to the user based on a web search conducted by the user and displayed in the content of the search results. Furthermore, the content of the local advertisement may be determined based on the user's personal information. The user's personal information may be available to a web application or an advertising facility. The user's information may be used by a web application, an advertising facility or eyepiece to filter the local advertising based on the user's personal information. A local advertisement may be cached on a server where it may be accessed by at least one of an advertising facility, web application and eyepiece and displayed to the user.

[0024] In another embodiment, the user may request additional information related to a local advertisement by making any action of an eye movement, body movement and other gesture. Furthermore, a user may ignore the local advertisement by making any an eye movement, body movement and other gesture or by not selecting the advertisement for further interaction within a given period of time from when the advertisement is displayed. In yet other embodiments, the user may select to not allow local advertisements to be displayed by selecting such an option on a graphical user interface. Alternatively, the user may not allow such advertisements by tuning such feature off via a control on said eyepiece.

[0025] In one embodiment, the eyepiece may include an audio device. Further, the displayed content may comprise a local advertisement and audio. The location of the eyepiece may be determined by an integrated location sensor and the local advertisement and audio may have a relevance to the location of the eyepiece. As such, a user may hear audio that corresponds to the displayed content and local advertisements.

[0026] In an aspect, the interactive head-mounted eyepiece may include an optical assembly, through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly includes a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment and an optical waveguide with a first and a second surface enabling total internal reflections. The eyepiece may also include an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. In this aspect, displayed content may be introduced into the optical waveguide at an angle of internal incidence that does not result in total internal reflection. However, the eyepiece also includes a mirrored surface on the first surface of the optical waveguide to reflect the displayed content towards the second surface of the optical waveguide. Thus, the mirrored surface enables a total reflection of the light entering the optical waveguide or a reflection of at least a portion of the light entering the optical waveguide. In embodiments, the surface may be 100% mirrored or mirrored to a lower percentage. In some embodiments, in place of a mirrored surface, an air gap between the waveguide and the corrective element may cause a reflection of the light that enters the waveguide at an angle of incidence that would not result in TIR.

[0027] In an aspect, the interactive head-mounted eyepiece may include an optical assembly, through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly includes a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment and an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user. The eyepiece further includes an integrated image source that introduces the content to the optical assembly from a side of the optical waveguide adjacent to an arm of the eyepiece, wherein the displayed content aspect ratio is between approximately square to approximately rectangular with the long axis approximately horizontal.

[0028] In one aspect, the interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly includes a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, a freeform optical waveguide enabling internal reflections, and a coupling lens positioned to direct an image from an LCoS display to the optical waveguide. The eyepiece further includes an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user and an integrated projector facility for projecting the content to the optical assembly, wherein the projector facility comprises a light source and the LCoS display, wherein light from the light source is emitted under control of the processor and traverses a polarizing beam splitter where it is polarized before being reflected off the LCoS display and into the optical waveguide. In another aspect, the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, includes an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly includes a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an optical waveguide enabling internal reflections, and a coupling lens positioned to direct an image from an optical display to the optical waveguide. The eyepiece further includes an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, wherein the image source comprises a light source and the optical display. The corrective element may be a see-through correction lens attached to the optical waveguide that enables proper viewing of the surrounding environment whether the image source or projector facility is on or off. The freeform optical waveguide may

include dual freeform surfaces that enable a curvature and a sizing of the waveguide, wherein the curvature and the sizing enable placement of the waveguide in a frame of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece. The light source may be an RGB LED module that emits light sequentially to form a color image that is reflected off the optical or LCoS display. The eyepiece may further include a homogenizer through which light from the light source is propagated to ensure that the beam of light is uniform. A surface of the polarizing beam splitter reflects the color image from the optical or LCoS display into the optical waveguide. The eyepiece may further include a collimator that improves the resolution of the light entering the optical waveguide. Light from the light source may be emitted under control of the processor and traverse a polarizing beam splitter where it is polarized before being reflected off the optical display and into the optical waveguide. The optical display may be at least one of an LCoS and an LCD display. The image source may be a projector, and wherein the projector is at least one of a microprojector, a nanoprojector, and a picoprojector. The eyepiece further includes a polarizing beam splitter that polarizes light from the light source before being reflected off the LCoS display and into the optical waveguide, wherein a surface of the polarizing beam splitter reflects the color image from the LCoS display into the optical waveguide.

[0029] In an embodiment, an apparatus for biometric data capture is provided. Biometric data may be visual biometric data, such as facial biometric data or iris biometric data, or may be audio biometric data. The apparatus includes an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly also includes a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment. An integrated processor handles content for display to the user on the eyepiece. The eyepiece also incorporates an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. Biometric data capture is accomplished with an integrated optical sensor assembly. Audio data capture is accomplished with an integrated endfire microphone array. Processing of the captured biometric data occurs remotely and data is transmitted using an integrated communications facility. A remote computing facility interprets and analyzes the captured biometric data, generates display content based on the captured biometric data, and delivers the display content to the eyepiece.

[0030] A further embodiment provides a camera mounted on the eyepiece for obtaining biometric images of an individual proximate to the eyepiece.

[0031] A yet further embodiment provides a method for biometric data capture. In the method an individual is placed proximate to the eyepiece. This may be accomplished by the wearer of the eyepiece moving into a position that permits the capture of the desired biometric data. Once positioned, the eyepiece captures biometric data and transmits the captured biometric data to a facility that stores the captured biometric data in a biometric data database. The biometric data database incorporates a remote computing facility that interprets the received data and generates display content based on the interpretation of the captured biometric data. This display content is then transmitted back to the user for display on the eyepiece.

[0032] A yet further embodiment provides a method for audio biometric data capture. In the method an individual is placed proximate to the eyepiece. This may be accomplished by the wearer of the eyepiece moving into a position that permits the capture of the desired audio biometric data. Once positioned, the microphone array captures audio biometric data and transmits the captured audio biometric data to a facility that stores the captured audio biometric data in a biometric data database. The audio biometric data database incorporates a remote computing facility that interprets the received data and generates display content based on the interpretation of the captured audio biometric data. This display content is then transmitted back to the user for display on the eyepiece.

[0033] In embodiments, the eyepiece includes a see-through correction lens attached to an exterior surface of the optical waveguide that enables proper viewing of the surrounding environment whether there is displayed content or not. The see-through correction lens may be a prescription lens customized to the user's corrective eyeglass prescription. The see-through correction lens may be polarized and may attach to at least one of the optical waveguide and a frame of the eyepiece, wherein the polarized correction lens blocks oppositely polarized light reflected from the user's eye. The see-through correction lens may attach to at least one of the optical waveguide and a frame of the eyepiece, wherein the correction lens protects the optical waveguide, and may include at least one of a ballistic material and an ANSI-certified polycarbonate material.

[0034] In one embodiment, an interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an eyepiece for wearing by a user, an optical assembly mounted on the eyepiece through which the user views a surrounding environment and a displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, and an electrically adjustable lens integrated with the optical assembly that adjusts a focus of the displayed content for the user.

[0035] One embodiment concerns an interactive head-mounted eyepiece. This interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an eyepiece for wearing by a user, an optical assembly mounted on the eyepiece through which the user views a surrounding environment and a displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects a user's view of the surrounding environment, and an integrated processor of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece for handling content for display to the user. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece also includes an electrically adjustable liquid lens integrated with the optical assembly, an integrated image source of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece for introducing the content to the optical assembly, and a memory operably connected with the integrated processor, the memory including at least one software program for providing a correction for the displayed content by adjusting the electrically adjustable liquid lens.

[0036] Another embodiment is an interactive head-mounted eyepiece for wearing by a user. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an optical assembly mounted on the eyepiece through which the user views a surrounding environment and a displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the displayed content, and an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece also includes an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, an electrically adjustable liquid lens integrated with the optical assembly that adjusts a focus of the displayed content for the user, and at least one sensor mounted on the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, wherein an output from the at least one sensor is used to

stabilize the displayed content of the optical assembly of the interactive head mounted eyepiece using at least one of optical stabilization and image stabilization.

[0037] One embodiment is a method for stabilizing images. The method includes steps of providing an interactive head-mounted eyepiece including a camera and an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, and imaging the surrounding environment with the camera to capture an image of an object in the surrounding environment. The method also includes steps of displaying, through the optical assembly, the content at a fixed location with respect to the user's view of the imaged object, sensing vibration and movement of the eyepiece, and stabilizing the displayed content with respect to the user's view of the surrounding environment via at least one digital technique.

[0038] Another embodiment is a method for stabilizing images. The method includes steps of providing an interactive head-mounted eyepiece including a camera and an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, the assembly also comprising a processor for handling content for display to the user and an integrated projector for projecting the content to the optical assembly, and imaging the surrounding environment with the camera to capture an image of an object in the surrounding environment. The method also includes steps of displaying, through the optical assembly, the content at a fixed location with respect to the user's view of the imaged object, sensing vibration and movement of the eyepiece, and stabilizing the displayed content with respect to the user's view of the surrounding environment via at least one digital technique.

[0039] One embodiment is a method for stabilizing images. The method includes steps of providing an interactive, head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, and imaging the surrounding environment with a camera to capture an image of an object in the surrounding environment. The method also includes steps of displaying, through the optical

assembly, the content at a fixed location with respect to the user's view of the imaged object, sensing vibration and movement of the eyepiece, sending signals indicative of the vibration and movement of the eyepiece to the integrated processor of the interactive head-mounted device, and stabilizing the displayed content with respect to the user's view of the environment via at least one digital technique.

[0040] Another embodiment is an interactive head-mounted eyepiece. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an eyepiece for wearing by a user, an optical assembly mounted on the eyepiece through which the user views a surrounding environment and a displayed content, and a corrective element mounted on the eyepiece that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment. The interactive, head-mounted eyepiece also includes an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, and at least one sensor mounted on the camera or the eyepiece, wherein an output from the at least one sensor is used to stabilize the displayed content of the optical assembly of the interactive head mounted eyepiece using at least one digital technique.

[0041] One embodiment is an interactive head-mounted eyepiece. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an interactive head-mounted eyepiece for wearing by a user, an optical assembly mounted on the eyepiece through which the user views a surrounding environment and a displayed content, and an integrated processor of the eyepiece for handling content for display to the user. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece also includes an integrated image source of the eyepiece for introducing the content to the optical assembly, and at least one sensor mounted on the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, wherein an output from the at least one sensor is used to stabilize the displayed content of the optical assembly of the interactive head mounted eyepiece using at least one of optical stabilization and image stabilization.

[0042] Another embodiment is an interactive head-mounted eyepiece. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an eyepiece for wearing by a user, an optical assembly mounted on the eyepiece through which the user views a surrounding environment and a displayed content and an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user. The interactive head-mounted eyepiece also includes an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, an electro-optic lens in

series between the integrated image source and the optical assembly for stabilizing content for display to the user, and at least one sensor mounted on the eyepiece or a mount for the eyepiece, wherein an output from the at least one sensor is used to stabilize the electro-optic lens of the interactive head mounted eyepiece.

[0043] Aspects disclosed herein include an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly.

[0044] The eyepiece may further include a control device worn on a hand of the user, including at least one control component actuated by a digit of a hand of the user, and providing a control command from the actuation of the at least one control component to the processor as a command instruction. The command instruction may be directed to the manipulation of content for display to the user.

[0045] The eyepiece may further include a hand motion sensing device worn on a hand of the user, and providing control commands from the motion sensing device to the processor as command instructions.

[0046] The eyepiece may further include a bi-directional optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment simultaneously with displayed content as transmitted through the optical assembly from an integrated image source and a processor for handling the content for display to the user and sensor information from the sensor, wherein the processor correlates the displayed content and the information from the sensor to indicate the eye's line-of-sight relative to the projected image, and uses the line-of-sight information relative to the projected image, plus a user command indication, to invoke an action.

[0047] In the eyepiece, line of sight information for the user's eye is communicated to the processor as command instructions.

[0048] The eyepiece may further include a hand motion sensing device for tracking hand gestures within a field of view of the eyepiece to provide control instructions to the eyepiece.

[0049] In an aspect, a method of social networking includes contacting a social networking website using the eyepiece, requesting information about members of the social networking website using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and searching for nearby members of the social networking website using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece.

[0050] In an aspect, a method of social networking includes contacting a social networking website using the eyepiece, requesting information about other members of the social networking website using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, sending a signal indicating a location of the user of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and allowing access to information about the user of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece.

[0051] In an aspect, a method of social networking includes contacting a social networking website using the eyepiece, requesting information about members of the social networking website using the interactive, head-mounted eyepiece, sending a signal indicating a location and at least one preference of the user of the interactive, head-mounted eyepiece, allowing access to information on the social networking site about preferences of the user of the interactive, head-mounted eyepiece, and searching for nearby members of the social networking website using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece.

[0052] In an aspect, a method of gaming includes contacting an online gaming site using the eyepiece, initiating or joining a game of the online gaming site using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, viewing the game through the optical assembly of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and playing the game by manipulating at least one body-mounted control device using the interactive, head mounted eyepiece.

[0053] In an aspect, a method of gaming includes contacting an online gaming site using the eyepiece, initiating or joining a game of the online gaming site with a plurality of members of the online gaming site, each member using an interactive head-mounted eyepiece system, viewing game content with the optical assembly, and playing the game by manipulating at least one sensor for detecting motion.

[0054] In an aspect, a method of gaming includes contacting an online gaming site using the eyepiece, contacting at least one additional player for a game of the online

gaming site using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, initiating a game of the online gaming site using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, viewing the game of the online gaming site with the optical assembly of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and playing the game by touchlessly manipulating at least one control using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece.

[0055] In an aspect, a method of using augmented vision includes providing an interactive head-mounted eyepiece including an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, scanning the surrounding environment with a black silicon short wave infrared (SWIR) image sensor, controlling the SWIR image sensor through movements, gestures or commands of the user, sending at least one visual image from the sensor to a processor of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and viewing the at least one visual image using the optical assembly, wherein the black silicon short wave infrared (SWIR) sensor provides a night vision capability.

[0056] In an aspect, a method of using augmented vision includes providing an interactive head-mounted eyepiece including a camera and an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, viewing the surrounding environment with a camera and a black silicon short wave infra red (SWIR) image sensor, controlling the camera through movements, gestures or commands of the user, sending information from the camera to a processor of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and viewing visual images using the optical assembly, wherein the black silicon short wave infrared (SWIR) sensor provides a night vision capability.

[0057] In an aspect, a method of using augmented vision includes providing an interactive head-mounted eyepiece including an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, viewing the surrounding environment with a black silicon short wave infrared (SWIR) image sensor, controlling scanning of the image sensor through movements and gestures of the user, sending information from the image sensor to a processor of the interactive head-

mounted eyepiece, and viewing visual images using the optical assembly, wherein the black silicon short wave infrared (SWIR) sensor provides a night vision capability.

[0058] In an aspect, a method of receiving information includes contacting an accessible database using an interactive head-mounted eyepiece including an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, requesting information from the accessible database using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and viewing information from the accessible database using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, wherein the steps of requesting and viewing information are accomplished without contacting controls of the interactive head-mounted device by the user.

[0059] In an aspect, a method of receiving information includes contacting an accessible database using the eyepiece, requesting information from the accessible database using the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, displaying the information using the optical facility, and manipulating the information using the processor, wherein the steps of requesting, displaying and manipulating are accomplished without touching controls of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece.

[0060] In an aspect, a method of receiving information includes contacting an accessible database using the eyepiece, requesting information from the accessible website using the interactive, head-mounted eyepiece without touching of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece by digits of the user, allowing access to information on the accessible website without touching controls of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, displaying the information using the optical facility, and manipulating the information using the processor without touching controls of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece.

[0061] In an aspect, a method of social networking includes providing the eyepiece, scanning facial features of a nearby person with an optical sensor of the head-mounted eyepiece, extracting a facial profile of the person, contacting a social networking website using a communications facility of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and searching a database of the social networking site for a match for the facial profile.

[0062] In an aspect, a method of social networking includes providing the eyepiece, scanning facial features of a nearby person with an optical sensor of the head-

mounted eyepiece, extracting a facial profile of the person, contacting a database using a communications facility of the head-mounted eyepiece, and searching the database for a person matching the facial profile.

[0063] In an aspect, a method of social networking includes contacting a social networking website using the eyepiece, requesting information about nearby members of the social networking website using the interactive, head-mounted eyepiece, scanning facial features of a nearby person identified as a member of the social networking site with an optical sensor of the head-mounted eyepiece, extracting a facial profile of the person, and searching at least one additional database for information concerning the person.

[0064] In an aspect, a method of using augmented vision includes providing the eyepiece, controlling the camera through movements, gestures or commands of the user, sending information from the camera to a processor of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and viewing visual images using the optical assembly, wherein visual images from the camera and optical assembly are an improvement for the user in at least one of focus, brightness, clarity and magnification.

[0065] In one aspect, a method of using augmented vision, includes providing the eyepiece, controlling the camera through movements of the user without touching controls of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, sending information from the camera to a processor of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and viewing visual images using the optical assembly of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, wherein visual images from the camera and optical assembly are an improvement for the user in at least one of focus, brightness, clarity and magnification.

[0066] In another aspect, a method of using augmented vision includes providing the eyepiece, controlling the camera through movements of the user of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, sending information from the camera to the integrated processor of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, applying an image enhancement technique using computer software and the integrated processor of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, and viewing visual images using the optical assembly of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, wherein visual images from the camera and

optical assembly are an improvement for the user in at least one of focus, brightness, clarity and magnification.

[0067] In one aspect, a method for facial recognition includes capturing an image of a subject with the eyepiece, converting the image to biometric data, comparing the biometric data to a database of previously collected biometric data, identifying biometric data matching previously collected biometric data, and reporting the identified matching biometric data as displayed content.

[0068] In another aspect, a system includes the eyepiece, a face detection facility in association with the integrated processor facility, wherein the face detection facility captures images of faces in the surrounding environment, compares the captured images to stored images in a face recognition database, and provides a visual indication to indicate a match, where the visual indication corresponds to the current position of the imaged face in the surrounding environment as part of the projected content, and an integrated vibratory actuator in the eyepiece, wherein the vibratory actuator provides a vibration output to alert the user to the match.

[0069] In an aspect of the invention, a method for augmenting vision includes collecting photons with a short wave infrared sensor mounted on the eyepiece, converting the collected photons in the short wave infrared spectrum to electrical signals, relaying the electrical signals to the eyepiece for display, collecting biometric data using the sensor, collecting audio data using an audio sensor, and transferring the collected biometric data and audio data to a database.

[0070] In one aspect, a method for object recognition includes capturing an image of an object with the eyepiece, analyzing the object to determine if the object has been previously captured, increasing the resolution of the areas of the captured image that have not been previously captured and analyzed, and decreasing the resolution of the areas of the captured image that have been previously captured and analyzed.

[0071] In another aspect, a system includes the eyepiece, and a position determination system external to the eyepiece and in communication with the processor facility, such that position information of the sensors the processor facility is able to determine the pointing direction of the weapon, and where the processor facility provides

content through the display to the user to indicate the current pointing direction of the weapon.

[0072] In one aspect, a system includes the eyepiece with a communications interface, and a control device worn on a hand of the user, including at least one control component actuated by a digit of a hand of the user, and providing a control command from the actuation of the at least one control component to the processor as a command instruction, wherein the command instruction is associated with identifying a target to potentially fire upon with the handheld weapon.

[0073] In another aspect, a system includes the eyepiece and a weapon mounted interface for accepting user input and generating control instructions for the eyepiece.

[0074] In yet another, a system includes the eyepiece, and a weapon mounted interface for accepting user input and generating control instructions for the eyepiece, and wherein the displayed content relates information about an object viewed through the eyepiece.

[0075] In an aspect, a system includes the eyepiece wherein the optical assembly is attached to the eyepiece and can be moved out of the user's field of view.

[0076] In one aspect, a method of collecting biometric information includes positioning a body part in front of a sensor, recording biometric information about the body part using light reflected from the body part when the sensor is illuminated from the side perpendicular to the body part, forming an image using the light reflected from the body part, and storing the image in a database of similarly collected biometric information.

[0077] In another aspect, an apparatus for collecting biometric information, includes a flat plate containing a mosaic sensor, wherein the mosaic sensor has multiple light sources positioned around the perimeter of the flat plate and cameras disposed perpendicular to the flat plate, a keyboard, straps for mounting to a user's forearm, a geo-location module for ascertaining position location, a communications module for wireless interfacing with other communication devices, and a clock for time stamping collected biometric information.

[0078] In yet another aspect, a system for collecting biometric information includes a flat plate sensor for collecting finger and palm information, an eyepiece for collecting iris and facial information, a video camera for collecting facial and gait information, and computer for analyzing collected biometric data, comparing to a database of previously collected information, and determining if the biometric information collected was previously stored in the database, and presenting a result of the analysis.

[0079] In an aspect, a method of streaming data to the eyepiece includes providing the eyepiece, connecting the communications interface into an optical train of a device, and streaming data from said device to said eyepiece.

[0080] In another aspect, a gun sight includes optical lenses to magnify targets, a camera for capturing images of the targets, a sensor for collecting biometric information from the targets, and a wireless data transmitter for transferring the captured images and biometric information to the eyepiece.

[0081] These and other systems, methods, objects, features, and advantages of the present disclosure will be apparent to those skilled in the art from the following detailed description of the embodiments and the drawings.

[0082] All documents mentioned herein are hereby incorporated in their entirety by reference. References to items in the singular should be understood to include items in the plural, and vice versa, unless explicitly stated otherwise or clear from the text. Grammatical conjunctions are intended to express any and all disjunctive and conjunctive combinations of conjoined clauses, sentences, words, and the like, unless otherwise stated or clear from the context.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

[0083] The present disclosure and the following detailed description of certain embodiments thereof may be understood by reference to the following figures:

[0084] Fig. 1 depicts an illustrative embodiment of the optical arrangement.

[0085] Fig. 2 depicts an RGB LED projector.

[0086] Fig. 3 depicts the projector in use.

[0087] Fig. 4 depicts an embodiment of the waveguide and correction lens disposed in a frame.

[0088] Fig. 5 depicts a design for a waveguide eyepiece.

[0089] Fig. 6 depicts an embodiment of the eyepiece with a see-through lens.

[0090] Fig. 7 depicts an embodiment of the eyepiece with a see-through lens.

[0091] Figs. 8a - c depict an embodiment of the eyepiece arranged in a flip-up/flip-down unit.

[0092] Figs. 8D & 8E depict snap-fit elements of a secondary optic.

[0093] Fig. 9 depicts embodiments of flip-up/flip-down electro-optics modules.

[0094] Fig. 10 depicts the advantages of the eyepiece in real-time image enhancement, keystone correction, and virtual perspective correction.

[0095] Fig. 11 depicts a plot of responsivity versus wavelength for three substrates.

[0096] Fig. 12 illustrates the performance of the black silicon sensor.

[0097] Fig. 13a depicts an incumbent night vision system, Fig. 13b depicts the night vision system of the present disclosure, and Fig. 13c illustrates the difference in responsivity between the two.

[0098] Fig. 14 depicts a tactile interface of the eyepiece.

[0099] Fig. 14A depicts motions in an embodiment of the eyepiece featuring nod control.

[00100] Fig. 15 depicts a ring that controls the eyepiece.

[00101] Fig. 15A depicts hand mounted sensors in an embodiment of a virtual mouse.

[00102] Fig. 15B depicts a facial actuation sensor as mounted on the eyepiece.

[00103] Fig. 15C depicts a hand pointing control of the eyepiece.

[00104] Fig. 15D depicts a hand pointing control of the eyepiece.

[00105] Fig. 15E depicts an example of eye tracking control.

[00106] Fig. 15F depicts a hand positioning control of the eyepiece.

[00107] Fig. 16 depicts a location-based application mode of the eyepiece.

[00108] Fig. 17 shows the difference in image quality between A) a flexible platform of uncooled CMOS image sensors capable of VIS/NIR/SWIR imaging and B) an image intensified night vision system

[00109] Fig. 18 depicts an augmented reality-enabled custom billboard.

[00110] Fig. 19 depicts an augmented reality-enabled custom advertisement.

[00111] Fig. 20 an augmented reality-enabled custom artwork.

[00112] Fig. 20A depicts a method for posting messages to be transmitted when a viewer reaches a certain location.

[00113] Fig. 21 depicts an alternative arrangement of the eyepiece optics and electronics.

[00114] Fig. 22 depicts an alternative arrangement of the eyepiece optics and electronics.

[00115] Fig. 23 depicts an alternative arrangement of the eyepiece optics and electronics.

[00116] Fig. 24 depicts a lock position of a virtual keyboard.

[00117] Fig. 25 depicts a detailed view of the projector.

[00118] Fig. 26 depicts a detailed view of the RGB LED module.

[00119] Fig. 27 depicts a gaming network.

[00120] Fig. 28 depicts a method for gaming using augmented reality glasses.

[00121] Fig. 29 depicts an exemplary electronic circuit diagram for an augmented reality eyepiece.

[00122] Fig. 30 depicts a control circuit for eye-tracking control of an external device.

[00123] Fig. 31 depicts a communication network among users of augmented reality eyepieces.

[00124] Fig. 32 depicts a flowchart for a method of identifying a person based on speech of the person as captured by microphones of the augmented reality device.

[00125] Fig. 33 shows the mosaic finger and palm enrollment system according to an embodiment.

[00126] Fig. 34 illustrates the traditional optical approach used by other finger and palm print systems.

[00127] Fig. 35 shows the approach used by the mosaic sensor according to an embodiment.

[00128] Fig. 36 depicts the device layout of the mosaic sensor according to an embodiment.

[00129] Fig. 37 illustrates the camera field of view and number of cameras used in a mosaic sensor according to another embodiment.

[00130] Fig. 38 shows the bio-phone and tactical computer according to an embodiment.

[00131] Fig. 39 shows the use of the bio-phone and tactical computer in capturing latent fingerprints and palm prints according to an embodiment.

[00132] Fig. 40 illustrates a typical DOMEX collection.

[00133] Fig. 41 shows the relationship between the biometric images captured using the bio-phone and tactical computer and a biometric watch list according to an embodiment.

[00134] Fig. 42 illustrates a pocket bio-kit according to an embodiment.

[00135] Fig. 43 shows the components of the pocket bio-kit according to an embodiment.

[00136] Fig. 44 depicts the fingerprint, palm print, geo-location and POI enrollment device according to an embodiment.

[00137] Fig. 45 shows a system for multi-modal biometric collection, identification, geo-location, and POI enrollment according to an embodiment.

[00138] Fig. 46 illustrates a fingerprint, palm print, geo-location, and POI enrollment forearm wearable device according to an embodiment.

[00139] Fig. 47 shows a mobile folding biometric enrollment kit according to an embodiment.

[00140] Fig. 48 is a high level system diagram of a biometric enrollment kit according to an embodiment.

[00141] Fig. 49 is a system diagram of a folding biometric enrollment device according to an embodiment.

[00142] Fig. 50 shows a thin-film finger and palm print sensor according to an embodiment.

[00143] Fig. 51 shows a biometric collection device for finger, palm, and enrollment data collection according to an embodiment.

[00144] Fig. 52 illustrates capture of a two stage palm print according to an embodiment.

[00145] Fig. 53 illustrates capture of a fingertip tap according to an embodiment.

[00146] Fig. 54 illustrates capture of a slap and roll print according to an embodiment.

[00147] Fig. 55 depicts a system for taking contactless fingerprints, palmprints or other biometric prints.

[00148] Fig. 56 depicts a process for taking contactless fingerprints, palmprints or other biometric prints.

[00149] Fig. 57 depicts embodiments of the eyepiece for optical or digital stabilization.

[00150] Fig. 58 depicts a typical camera for use in video calling or conferencing.

[00151] Fig. 59 illustrates an embodiment of a block diagram of a video calling camera.

[00152] Fig. 60 depicts an embodiment of a classic cassegrain configuration.

[00153] Fig. 61 depicts the configuration of the microcassegrain telescoping folded optic camera.

[00154] Fig. 62 depicts partial image removal by the eyepiece.

[00155] Fig. 63 depicts a swipe process with a virtual keyboard.

[00156] Fig. 64 depicts a target marker process for a virtual keyboard.

[00157] Fig. 65 depicts an electrochromic layer of the eyepiece.

[00158] Fig. 66 illustrates glasses for biometric data capture according to an embodiment.

[00159] Fig. 67 illustrates iris recognition using the biometric data capture glasses according to an embodiment.

[00160] Fig. 68 depicts face and iris recognition according to an embodiment.

[00161] Fig. 69 illustrates use of dual omni-microphones according to an embodiment.

[00162] Fig. 70 depicts the directionality improvements with multiple microphones.

[00163] Fig. 71 shows the use of adaptive arrays to steer the audio capture facility according to an embodiment.

[00164] Fig. 72 depicts a block diagram of a system including the eyepiece.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

[00165] The present disclosure relates to eyepiece electro-optics. The eyepiece may include projection optics suitable to project an image onto a see-through or translucent lens, enabling the wearer of the eyepiece to view the surrounding environment as well as the displayed image. The projection optics, also known as a projector, may include an RGB LED module that uses field sequential color. With field sequential color, a single full color image may be broken down into color fields based on the primary colors of red, green, and blue and imaged by an LCoS (liquid crystal on silicon) optical display 210 individually. As each color field is imaged by the optical display 210, the corresponding LED color is turned on. When these color fields are displayed in rapid sequence, a full color image may be seen. With field sequential color illumination, the resulting projected image in the eyepiece can be adjusted for any chromatic aberrations by shifting the red image relative to the blue and/or green image and so on. The image may thereafter be reflected into a two surface freeform waveguide where the image light engages in total internal reflections (TIR) until reaching the active viewing area of the lens where the user sees the image. A processor, which may include a memory and an operating system, may control the LED light source and the optical display. The projector may also include or be optically coupled to a display coupling lens, a condenser lens, a polarizing beam splitter, and a field lens.

[00166] Referring to Fig. 1, an illustrative embodiment of the augmented reality eyepiece 100 may be depicted. It will be understood that embodiments of the

eyepiece 100 may not include all of the elements depicted in Fig. 1 while other embodiments may include additional or different elements. In embodiments, the optical elements may be embedded in the arm portions 122 of the frame 102 of the eyepiece. Images may be projected with a projector 108 onto at least one lens 104 disposed in an opening of the frame 102. One or more projectors 108, such as a nanoprojector, picoprojector, microprojector, femtoprojector, LASER-based projector, holographic projector, and the like may be disposed in an arm portion of the eyepiece frame 102. In embodiments, both lenses 104 are see-through or translucent while in other embodiments only one lens 104 is translucent while the other is opaque or missing. In embodiments, more than one projector 108 may be included in the eyepiece 100.

[00167] In embodiments such as the one depicted in Fig. 1, the eyepiece 100 may also include at least one articulating ear bud 120, a radio transceiver 118 and a heat sink 114 to absorb heat from the LED light engine, to keep it cool and to allow it to operate at full brightness. There is also a TI OMAP4 (open multimedia applications processor) 112, and a flex cable with RF antenna 110, all of which will be further described herein.

[00168] In an embodiment and referring to Fig. 2, the projector 200 may be an RGB projector. The projector 200 may include a housing 202, a heatsink 204 and an RGB LED engine or module 206. The RGB LED engine 206 may include LEDs, dichroics, concentrators, and the like. A digital signal processor (DSP) (not shown) may convert the images or video stream into control signals, such as voltage drops / current modifications, pulse width modulation (PWM) signals, and the like to control the intensity, duration, and mixing of the LED light. For example, the DSP may control the duty cycle of each PWM signal to control the average current flowing through each LED generating a plurality of colors. A still image co-processor of the eyepiece may employ noise-filtering, image / video stabilization, and face detection, and be able to make image enhancements. An audio back-end processor of the eyepiece may employ buffering, SRC, equalization and the like.

[00169] The projector 200 may include an optical display 210, such as an LCoS display, and a number of components as shown. In embodiments, the projector 200 may be designed with a single panel LCoS display 210; however, a three panel

display may be possible as well. In the single panel embodiment, the display 210 is illuminated with red, blue, and green sequentially (aka field sequential color). In other embodiments, the projector 200 may make use of alternative optical display technologies, such as a back-lit liquid crystal display (LCD), a front-lit LCD, a transfective LCD, an organic light emitting diode (OLED), a field emission display (FED), a ferroelectric LCoS (FLCOS) and the like.

[00170] The eyepiece may be powered by any power supply, such as battery power, solar power, line power, and the like. The power may be integrated in the frame 102 or disposed external to the eyepiece 100 and in electrical communication with the powered elements of the eyepiece 100. For example, a solar energy collector may be placed on the frame 102, on a belt clip, and the like. Battery charging may occur using a wall charger, car charger, on a belt clip, in an eyepiece case, and the like.

[00171] The projector 200 may include the LED light engine 206, which may be mounted on heat sink 204 and holder 208, for ensuring vibration-free mounting for the LED light engine, hollow tapered light tunnel 220, diffuser 212 and condenser lens 214. Hollow tunnel 220 helps to homogenize the rapidly-varying light from the RGB LED light engine. In one embodiment, hollow light tunnel 220 includes a silvered coating. The diffuser lens 212 further homogenizes and mixes the light before the light is led to the condenser lens 214. The light leaves the condenser lens 214 and then enters the polarizing beam splitter (PBS) 218. In the PBS, the LED light is propagated and split into polarization components before it is refracted to a field lens 216 and the LCoS display 210. The LCoS display provides the image for the microprojector. The image is then reflected from the LCoS display and back through the polarizing beam splitter, and then reflected ninety degrees. Thus, the image leaves microprojector 200 in about the middle of the microprojector. The light then is led to the coupling lens 504, described below.

[00172] In an embodiment, the digital signal processor (DSP) may be programmed and/or configured to receive video feed information and configure the video feed to drive whatever type of image source is being used with the optical display 210. The DSP may include a bus or other communication mechanism for communicating information, and an internal processor coupled with the bus for processing the

information. The DSP may include a memory, such as a random access memory (RAM) or other dynamic storage device (e.g., dynamic RAM (DRAM), static RAM (SRAM), and synchronous DRAM (SDRAM)), coupled to the bus for storing information and instructions to be executed. The DSP can include a non-volatile memory such as for example a read only memory (ROM) or other static storage device (e.g., programmable ROM (PROM), erasable PROM (EPROM), and electrically erasable PROM (EEPROM)) coupled to the bus for storing static information and instructions for the internal processor. The DSP may include special purpose logic devices (e.g., application specific integrated circuits (ASICs)) or configurable logic devices (e.g., simple programmable logic devices (SPLDs), complex programmable logic devices (CPLDs), and field programmable gate arrays (FPGAs)).

[00173] The DSP may include at least one computer readable medium or memory for holding instructions programmed and for containing data structures, tables, records, or other data necessary to drive the optical display. Examples of computer readable media suitable for applications of the present disclosure may be compact discs, hard disks, floppy disks, tape, magneto-optical disks, PROMs (EPROM, EEPROM, flash EPROM), DRAM, SRAM, SDRAM, or any other magnetic medium, compact discs (e.g., CD-ROM), or any other optical medium, punch cards, paper tape, or other physical medium with patterns of holes, a carrier wave (described below), or any other medium from which a computer can read. Various forms of computer readable media may be involved in carrying out one or more sequences of one or more instructions to the optical display 210 for execution. The DSP may also include a communication interface to provide a data communication coupling to a network link that can be connected to, for example, a local area network (LAN), or to another communications network such as the Internet. Wireless links may also be implemented. In any such implementation, an appropriate communication interface can send and receive electrical, electromagnetic or optical signals that carry digital data streams representing various types of information (such as the video information) to the optical display 210.

[00174] In another embodiment, Figs. 21 and 22 depict an alternate arrangement of the waveguide and projector in exploded view. In this arrangement, the projector is placed just behind the hinge of the arm of the eyepiece and it is vertically

oriented such that the initial travel of the RGB LED signals is vertical until the direction is changed by a reflecting prism in order to enter the waveguide lens. The vertically arranged projection engine may have a PBS 218 at the center, the RGB LED array at the bottom, a hollow, tapered tunnel with thin film diffuser to mix the colors for collection in an optic, and a condenser lens. The PBS may have a pre-polarizer on an entrance face. The pre-polarizer may be aligned to transmit light of a certain polarization, such as p-polarized light and reflect (or absorb) light of the opposite polarization, such as s-polarized light. The polarized light may then pass through the PBS to the field lens 216. The purpose of the field lens 216 may be to create near telecentric illumination of the LCoS panel. The LCoS display may be truly reflective, reflecting colors sequentially with correct timing so the image is displayed properly. Light may reflect from the LCoS panel and, for bright areas of the image, may be rotated to s-polarization. The light then may refract through the field lens 216 and may be reflected at the internal interface of the PBS and exit the projector, heading toward the coupling lens. The hollow, tapered tunnel 220 may replace the homogenizing lenslet from other embodiments. By vertically orienting the projector and placing the PBS in the center, space is saved and the projector is able to be placed in a hinge space with little moment arm hanging from the waveguide.

[00175] Light entering the waveguide may be polarized, such as s-polarized. When this light reflects from the user's eye, it may appear as a "night glow" from the user's eye. This night glow may be eliminated by attaching lenses to the waveguide or frame, such as the snap-fit optics described herein, that are oppositely polarized from the light reflecting from the user's eye, such as p-polarized in this case.

[00176] In Figs. 21-22, augmented reality eyepiece 2100 includes a frame 2102 and left and right earpieces or temple pieces 2104. Protective lenses 2106, such as ballistic lenses, are mounted on the front of the frame 2102 to protect the eyes of the user or to correct the user's view of the surrounding environment if they are prescription lenses. The front portion of the frame may also be used to mount a camera or image sensor 2130 and one or more microphones 2132. Not visible in Fig. 21, waveguides are mounted in the frame 2102 behind the protective lenses 2106, one on each side of the center or adjustable nose bridge 2138. The front cover 2106 may be interchangeable, so that tints or prescriptions may be changed readily for the particular user of the augmented

reality device. In one embodiment, each lens is quickly interchangeable, allowing for a different prescription for each eye. In one embodiment, the lenses are quickly interchangeable with snap-fits as discussed elsewhere herein. Certain embodiments may only have a projector and waveguide combination on one side of the eyepiece while the other side may be filled with a regular lens, reading lens, prescription lens, or the like. The left and right ear pieces 2104 each vertically mount a projector or microprojector 2114 or other image source atop a spring-loaded hinge 2128 for easier assembly and vibration/ shock protection. Each temple piece also includes a temple housing 2116 for mounting associated electronics for the eyepiece, and each may also include an elastomeric head grip pad 2120, for better retention on the user. Each temple piece also includes extending, wrap-around ear buds 2112 and an orifice 2126 for mounting a headstrap 2142.

[00177] As noted, the temple housing 2116 contains electronics associated with the augmented reality eyepiece. The electronics may include several circuit boards, as shown, such as for the microprocessor and radios 2122, the communications system on a chip (SOC) 2124, and the open multimedia applications processor (OMAP) processor board 2140. The communications system on a chip (SOC) may include electronics for one or more communications capabilities, including a wide local area network (WLAN), BlueTooth™ communications, frequency modulation (FM) radio, a global positioning system (GPS), a 3-axis accelerometer, one or more gyroscopes, and the like. In addition, the right temple piece may include an optical trackpad (not shown) on the outside of the temple piece for user control of the eyepiece and one or more applications.

[00178] The frame 2102 is in a general shape of a pair of wrap-around sunglasses. The sides of the glasses include shape-memory alloy straps 2134, such as nitinol straps. The nitinol or other shape-memory alloy straps are fitted for the user of the augmented reality eyepiece. The straps are tailored so that they assume their trained or preferred shape when worn by the user and warmed to near body temperature.

[00179] Other features of this embodiment include detachable, noise-cancelling earbuds. As seen in the figure, the earbuds are intended for connection to the controls of the augmented reality eyepiece for delivering sounds to ears of the user. The sounds may include inputs from the wireless internet or telecommunications capability of the

augmented reality eyepiece. The earbuds also include soft, deformable plastic or foam portions, so that the inner ears of the user are protected in a manner similar to earplugs. In one embodiment, the earbuds limit inputs to the user's ears to about 85 dB. This allows for normal hearing by the wearer, while providing protection from gunshot noise or other explosive noises. In one embodiment, the controls of the noise-cancelling earbuds have an automatic gain control for very fast adjustment of the cancelling feature in protecting the wearer's ears.

[00180] Fig. 23 depicts a layout of the vertically arranged projector 2114, where the illumination light passes from bottom to top through one side of the PBS on its way to the display and imager board, which may be silicon backed, and being refracted as image light where it hits the internal interfaces of the triangular prisms which constitute the polarizing beam splitter, and is reflected out of the projector and into the waveguide lens. In this example, the dimensions of the projector are shown with the width of the imager board being 11 mm, the distance from the end of the imager board to the image centerline being 10.6 mm, and the distance from the image centerline to the end of the LED board being about 11.8 mm.

[00181] A detailed and assembled view of the components of the projector discussed above may be seen in Fig. 25. This view depicts how compact the micro-projector 2500 is when assembled, for example, near a hinge of the augmented reality eyepiece. Microprojector 2500 includes a housing and a holder 208 for mounting certain of the optical pieces. As each color field is imaged by the optical display 210, the corresponding LED color is turned on. The RGB LED light engine 202 is depicted near the bottom, mounted on heat sink 204. The holder 208 is mounted atop the LED light engine 202, the holder mounting light tunnel 220, diffuser lens 212 (to eliminate hotspots) and condenser lens 214. Light passes from the condenser lens into the polarizing beam splitter 218 and then to the field lens 216. The light then refracts onto the LCoS (liquid crystal on silicon) chip 210, where an image is formed. The light for the image then reflects back through the field lens 216 and is polarized and reflected 90° through the polarizing beam splitter 218. The light then leaves the microprojector for transmission to the optical display of the glasses.

[00182] Fig. 26 depicts an exemplary RGB LED module. In this example, the LED is a 2x2 array with 1 red, 1 blue and 2 green die and the LED array has 4 cathodes and a common anode. The maximum current may be 0.5 A per die and the maximum voltage ($\approx 4V$) may be needed for the green and blue die.

[00183] Fig. 3 depicts an embodiment of a horizontally disposed projector in use. The projector 300 may be disposed in an arm portion of an eyepiece frame. The LED module 302, under processor control 304, may emit a single color at a time in rapid sequence. The emitted light may travel down a light tunnel 308 and through at least one homogenizing lenslet 310 before encountering a polarizing beam splitter 312 and being deflected towards an LCoS display 314 where a full color image is displayed. The LCoS display may have a resolution of 1280 x 720p. The image may then be reflected back up through the polarizing beam splitter, reflected off a fold mirror 318 and travel through a collimator on its way out of the projector and into a waveguide. The projector may include a diffractive element to eliminate aberrations.

[00184] In an embodiment, the interactive head-mounted eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which a user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly includes a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, a freeform optical waveguide enabling internal reflections, and a coupling lens positioned to direct an image from an optical display, such as an LCoS display, to the optical waveguide. The eyepiece further includes an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user and an integrated image source, such as a projector facility, for introducing the content to the optical assembly. In embodiments where the image source is a projector, the projector facility includes a light source and the optical display. Light from the light source, such as an RGB module, is emitted under control of the processor and traverses a polarizing beam splitter where it is polarized before being reflected off the optical display, such as the LCoS display or LCD display in certain other embodiments, and into the optical waveguide. A surface of the polarizing beam splitter may reflect the color image from the optical display into the optical waveguide. The RGB LED module may emit light sequentially to form a color image that is reflected off the optical display. The corrective element may be a see-through correction lens that is attached to the optical waveguide to

enable proper viewing of the surrounding environment whether the image source is on or off. This corrective element may be a wedge-shaped correction lens, and may be prescription, tinted, coated, or the like. The freeform optical waveguide, which may be described by a higher order polynomial, may include dual freeform surfaces that enable a curvature and a sizing of the waveguide. The curvature and the sizing of the waveguide enable its placement in a frame of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece. This frame may be sized to fit a user's head in a similar fashion to sunglasses or eyeglasses. Other elements of the optical assembly of the eyepiece include a homogenizer through which light from the light source is propagated to ensure that the beam of light is uniform and a collimator that improves the resolution of the light entering the optical waveguide.

[00185] Referring to Fig. 4, the image light, which may be polarized and collimated, may optionally traverse a display coupling lens 412, which may or may not be the collimator itself or in addition to the collimator, and enter the waveguide 414. In embodiments, the waveguide 414 may be a freeform waveguide, where the surfaces of the waveguide are described by a polynomial equation. The waveguide may be rectilinear. The waveguide 414 may include two reflective surfaces. When the image light enters the waveguide 414, it may strike a first surface with an angle of incidence greater than the critical angle above which total internal reflection (TIR) occurs. The image light may engage in TIR bounces between the first surface and a second facing surface, eventually reaching the active viewing area 418 of the composite lens. In an embodiment, light may engage in at least three TIR bounces. Since the waveguide 414 tapers to enable the TIR bounces to eventually exit the waveguide, the thickness of the composite lens 420 may not be uniform. Distortion through the viewing area of the composite lens 420 may be minimized by disposing a wedge-shaped correction lens 410 along a length of the freeform waveguide 414 in order to provide a uniform thickness across at least the viewing area of the lens 420. The correction lens 410 may be a prescription lens, a tinted lens, a polarized lens, a ballistic lens, and the like.

[00186] In some embodiments, while the optical waveguide may have a first surface and a second surface enabling total internal reflections of the light entering the waveguide, the light may not actually enter the waveguide at an internal angle of incidence that would result in total internal reflection. The eyepiece may include a

mirrored surface on the first surface of the optical waveguide to reflect the displayed content towards the second surface of the optical waveguide. Thus, the mirrored surface enables a total reflection of the light entering the optical waveguide or a reflection of at least a portion of the light entering the optical waveguide. In embodiments, the surface may be 100% mirrored or mirrored to a lower percentage. In some embodiments, in place of a mirrored surface, an air gap between the waveguide and the corrective element may cause a reflection of the light that enters the waveguide at an angle of incidence that would not result in TIR.

[00187] In an embodiment, the eyepiece includes an integrated image source, such as a projector, that introduces content for display to the optical assembly from a side of the optical waveguide adjacent to an arm of the eyepiece. As opposed to prior art optical assemblies where image injection occurs from a top side of the optical waveguide, the present disclosure provides image injection to the waveguide from a side of the waveguide. The displayed content aspect ratio is between approximately square to approximately rectangular with the long axis approximately horizontal. In embodiments, the displayed content aspect ratio is 16:9. In embodiments, achieving a rectangular aspect ratio for the displayed content where the long axis is approximately horizontal may be done via rotation of the injected image. In other embodiments, it may be done by stretching the image until it reaches the desired aspect ratio.

[00188] Fig. 5 depicts a design for a waveguide eyepiece showing sample dimensions. For example, in this design, the width of the coupling lens 504 may be 13 ~ 15 mm, with the optical display 502 optically coupled in series. These elements may be disposed in an arm of an eyepiece. Image light from the optical display 502 is projected through the coupling lens 504 into the freeform waveguide 508. The thickness of the composite lens 520 including waveguide 508 and correction lens 510 may be 9 mm. In this design, the waveguide 502 enables an exit pupil diameter of 8 mm with an eye clearance of 20 mm. The resultant see-through view 512 may be about 60 – 70 mm. The distance from the pupil to the image light path as it enters the waveguide 502 (dimension a) may be about 50 – 60 mm, which can accommodate a large % of human head breadths. In an embodiment, the field of view may be larger than the pupil. In embodiments, the field of view may not fill the lens. It should be understood that these dimensions are for a

particular illustrative embodiment and should not be construed as limiting. In an embodiment, the waveguide, snap-on optics, and/or the corrective lens may comprise optical plastic. In other embodiments, the waveguide snap-on optics, and/or the corrective lens may comprise glass, marginal glass, bulk glass, metallic glass, palladium-enriched glass, or other suitable glass. In embodiments, the waveguide 508 and correction lens 510 may be made from different materials selected to result in little to no chromatic aberrations. The materials may include a diffraction grating, a holographic grating, and the like.

[00189] In embodiments such as that shown in Fig. 1, the projected image may be a stereo image when two projectors 108 are used for the left and right images. To enable stereo viewing, the projectors 108 may be disposed at an adjustable distance from one another that enables adjustment based on the interpupillary distance for individual wearers of the eyepiece.

[00190] Having described certain embodiments of the eyepiece, we turn to describing various additional features, applications for use 4512, control technologies and external control devices 4508, associated external devices 4504, software, networking capabilities, integrated sensors 4502, external processing facilities 4510, associated third party facilities 4514, and the like. External devices 4504 for use with the eyepiece include devices useful in entertainment, navigation, computing, communication, weaponry, and the like. External control devices 4508 include a ring/hand or other haptic controller, external device enabling gesture control (e.g. non-integral camera, device with embedded accelerometer), I/F to external device, and the like. External processing facilities 4510 include local processing facilities, remote processing facilities, I/F to external applications, and the like. Applications for use 4512 include those for commercial, consumer, military, education, government, augmented reality, advertising, media, and the like. Various third party facilities 4514 may be accessed by the eyepiece or work in conjunction with the eyepiece. Eyepieces 100 may interact with other eyepieces 100 through wireless communication, near-field communication, a wired communication, and the like.

[00191] Fig. 6 depicts an embodiment of the eyepiece 600 with a see-through or translucent lens 602. A projected image 618 can be seen on the lens 602. In this

embodiment, the image 618 that is being projected onto the lens 602 happens to be an augmented reality version of the scene that the wearer is seeing, wherein tagged points of interest (POI) in the field of view are displayed to the wearer. The augmented reality version may be enabled by a forward facing camera embedded in the eyepiece (not shown in Fig. 6) that images what the wearer is looking and identifies the location / POI. In one embodiment, the output of the camera or optical transmitter may be sent to the eyepiece controller or memory for storage, for transmission to a remote location, or for viewing by the person wearing the eyepiece or glasses. For example, the video output may be streamed to the virtual screen seen by the user. The video output may thus be used to help determine the user's location, or may be sent remotely to others to assist in helping to locate the location of the wearer, or for any other purpose. Other detection technologies, such as GPS, RFID, manual input, and the like, may be used to determine a wearer's location. Using location or identification data, a database may be accessed by the eyepiece for information that may be overlaid, projected, or otherwise displayed with what is being seen. Augmented reality applications and technology will be further described herein.

[00192] In Fig. 7, an embodiment of the eyepiece 700 is depicted with a translucent lens 702 on which is being displayed streaming media (an e-mail application) and an incoming call notification. In this embodiment, the media obscures a portion of the viewing area, however, it should be understood that the displayed image may be positioned anywhere in the field of view. In embodiments, the media may be made to be more or less transparent.

[00193] In an embodiment, the eyepiece may receive input from any external source, such as an external converter box. The source may be depicted in the lens of eyepiece. In an embodiment, when the external source is a phone, the eyepiece may use the phone's location capabilities to display location-based augmented reality, including marker overlay from marker-based AR applications. In embodiments, a VNC client running on the eyepiece's processor or an associated device may be used to connect to and control a computer, where the computer's display is seen in the eyepiece by the wearer. In an embodiment, content from any source may be streamed to the eyepiece, such as a display from a panoramic camera riding atop a vehicle, a user interface for a

device, imagery from a drone or helicopter, and the like. For example, a gun-mounted camera may enable shooting a target not in direct line of sight when the camera feed is directed to the eyepiece.

[00194] The lenses may be chromic, such as photochromic or electrochromic. The electrochromic lens may include integral chromic material or a chromic coating which changes the opacity of at least a portion of the lens in response to a burst of charge applied by the processor across the chromic material. For example, and referring to Fig. 65, a chromic portion 6502 of the lens 6504 is shown darkened, such as for providing greater viewability by the wearer of the eyepiece when that portion is showing displayed content to the wearer. In embodiments, there may be a plurality of chromic areas on the lens that may be controlled independently, such as large portions of the lens, sub-portions of the projected area, programmable areas of the lens and/or projected area, controlled to the pixel level, and the like. Activation of the chromic material may be controlled via the control techniques further described herein or automatically enabled with certain applications (e.g. a streaming video application, a sun tracking application) or in response to a frame-embedded UV sensor. The lens may have an angular sensitive coating which enables transmitting light-waves with low incident angles and reflecting light, such as s-polarized light, with high incident angles. The chromic coating may be controlled in portions or in its entirety, such as by the control technologies described herein. The lenses may be variable contrast. In embodiments, the user may wear the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, where the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may include a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. The optical assembly may include an electrochromic layer that provides a display characteristic adjustment that is dependent on displayed content requirements and surrounding environmental conditions. In embodiments, the display characteristic may be brightness, contrast, and the like. The surrounding environmental condition may be a level of brightness that without the display characteristic adjustment would make the displayed content difficult

to visualize by the wearer of the eyepiece, where the display characteristic adjustment may be applied to an area of the optical assembly where content is being displayed.

[00195] In embodiments, the eyepiece may have brightness, contrast, spatial, resolution, and the like control over the eyepiece projected area, such as to alter and improve the user's view of the projected content against a bright or dark surrounding environment. For example, a user may be using the eyepiece under bright daylight conditions, and in order for the user to clearly see the displayed content the display area may need to be altered in brightness and/or contrast. Alternatively, the viewing area surrounding the display area may be altered. In addition, the area altered, whether within the display area or not, may be spatially oriented or controlled per the application being implemented. For instance, only a small portion of the display area may need to be altered, such as when that portion of the display area deviates from some determined or predetermined contrast ratio between the display portion of the display area and the surrounding environment. In embodiments, portions of the lens may be altered in brightness, contrast, spatial extent, resolution, and the like, such as fixed to include the entire display area, adjusted to only a portion of the lens, adaptable and dynamic to changes in lighting conditions of the surrounding environment and/or the brightness-contrast of the displayed content, and the like. Spatial extent (e.g. the area affected by the alteration) and resolution (e.g. display optical resolution) may vary over different portions of the lens, including high resolution segments, low resolution segments, single pixel segments, and the like, where differing segments may be combined to achieve the viewing objectives of the application(s) being executed. In embodiments, technologies for implementing alterations of brightness, contrast, spatial extent, resolution, and the like, may include electrochromic materials, LCD technologies, embedded beads in the optics, flexible displays, suspension particle device (SPD) technologies, colloid technologies, and the like.

[00196] In embodiments, there may be various modes of activation of the electrochromic layer. For example, the user may enter sunglass mode where the composite lenses appear only somewhat darkened or the user may enter "Blackout" mode, where the composite lenses appear completely blackened.

[00197] In an example of a technology that may be employed in implementing the alterations of brightness, contrast, spatial extent, resolution, and the like, may be electrochromic materials, films, inks, and the like. Electrochromism is the phenomenon displayed by some materials of reversibly changing appearance when electric charge is applied. Various types of materials and structures can be used to construct electrochromic devices, depending on the specific applications. For instance, electrochromic materials include tungsten oxide (WO_3), which is the main chemical used in the production of electrochromic windows or smart glass. In embodiments, electrochromic coatings may be used on the lens of the eyepiece in implementing alterations. In another example, electrochromic displays may be used in implementing 'electronic paper', which is designed to mimic the appearance of ordinary paper, where the electronic paper displays reflected light like ordinary paper. In embodiments, electrochromism may be implemented in a wide variety of applications and materials, including gyricon (consisting of polyethylene spheres embedded in a transparent silicone sheet, with each sphere suspended in a bubble of oil so that they can rotate freely), electro-phoretic displays (forming images by rearranging charged pigment particles using an applied electric field), E-Ink technology, electro-wetting, electro-fluidic, interferometric modulator, organic transistors embedded into flexible substrates, nano-chromics displays (NCD), and the like.

[00198] In another example of a technology that may be employed in implementing the alterations of brightness, contrast, spatial extent, resolution, and the like, may be suspended particle devices (SPD). When a small voltage is applied to an SPD film, its microscopic particles, which in their stable state are randomly dispersed, become aligned and allow light to pass through. The response may be immediate, uniform, and with stable color throughout the film. Adjustment of the voltage may allow users to control the amount of light, glare and heat passing through. The system's response may range from a dark blue appearance, with up to full blockage of light in its off state, to clear in its on state. In embodiments, SPD technology may be an emulsion applied on a plastic substrate creating the active film. This plastic film may be laminated (as a single glass pane), suspended between two sheets of glass, plastic or other transparent materials, and the like.

[00199] Referring to Fig. 8, in certain embodiments, the electro-optics may be mounted in a monocular or binocular flip-up/flip-down arrangement in two parts: 1) electro-optics; and 2) correction lens. Fig. 8a depicts a two part eyepiece where the electro-optics are contained within a module 802 that may be electrically connected to the eyepiece 804 via an electrical connector 810, such as a plug, pin, socket, wiring, and the like. In this arrangement, the lens 818 in the frame 814 may be a correction lens entirely. The interpupillary distance (IPD) between the two halves of the electro-optic module 802 may be adjusted at the bridge 808 to accommodate various IPDs. Similarly, the placement of the display 812 may be adjusted via the bridge 808. Fig. 8b depicts the binocular electro-optics module 802 where one half is flipped up and the other half is flipped down. The nose bridge may be fully adjustable and elastomeric. In an embodiment, the lens 818 may be ANSI-compliant, hard-coat scratch-resistant polycarbonate ballistic lenses, may be chromic, may have an angular sensitive coating, may include a UV-sensitive material, and the like.

[00200] As noted in the discussion for Fig. 8, the augmented reality glasses may include a lens 818 for each eye of the wearer. The lenses 818 may be made to fit readily into the frame 814, so that each lens may be tailored for the person for whom the glasses are intended. Thus, the lenses may be corrective lenses, and may also be tinted for use as sunglasses, or have other qualities suitable for the intended environment. Thus, the lenses may be tinted yellow, dark or other suitable color, or may be photochromic, so that the transparency of the lens decreases when exposed to brighter light. In one embodiment, the lenses may also be designed for snap fitting into or onto the frames, i.e., snap on lenses are one embodiment.

[00201] Of course, the lenses need not be corrective lenses; they may simply serve as sunglasses or as protection for the optical system within the frame. In non-flip up/flip down arrangements, it goes without saying that the outer lenses are important for helping to protect the rather expensive waveguides, viewing systems and electronics within the augmented reality glasses. At a minimum, the outer lenses offer protection from scratching by the environment of the user, whether sand, brambles, thorns and the like, in one environment, and flying debris, bullets and shrapnel, in another environment. In addition, the outer lenses may be decorative, acting to change a look of the composite

lens, perhaps to appeal to the individuality or fashion sense of a user. The outer lenses may also help one individual user to distinguish his or her glasses from others, for example, when many users are gathered together.

[00202] It is desirable that the lenses be suitable for impact, such as a ballistic impact. Accordingly, in one embodiment, the lenses and the frames meet ANSI Standard Z87.1-2010 for ballistic resistance. In one embodiment, the lenses also meet ballistic standard CE EN166B. In another embodiment, for military uses, the lenses and frames may meet the standards of MIL-PRF-31013, standards 3.5.1.1 or 4.4.1.1. Each of these standards has slightly different requirements for ballistic resistance and each is intended to protect the eyes of the user from impact by high-speed projectiles or debris. While no particular material is specified, polycarbonate, such as certain Lexan® grades, usually is sufficient to pass tests specified in the appropriate standard.

[00203] In one embodiment, as shown in Fig. 8d, the lenses snap in from the outside of the frame, not the inside, for better impact resistance, since any impact is expected from the outside of the augmented reality eyeglasses. In this embodiment, replaceable lens 819 has a plurality of snap-fit arms 819a which fit into recesses 820a of frame 820. The engagement angle 819b of the arm is greater than 90°, while the engagement angle 820b of the recess is also greater than 90°. Making the angles greater than right angles has the practical effect of allowing removal of lens 819 from the frame 820. The lens 819 may need to be removed if the person's vision has changed or if a different lens is desired for any reason. The design of the snap fit is such that there is a slight compression or bearing load between the lens and the frame. That is, the lens may be held firmly within the frame, such as by a slight interference fit of the lens within the frame.

[00204] The cantilever snap fit of Fig. 8d is not the only possible way to removably snap-fit the lenses and the frame. For example, an annular snap fit may be used, in which a continuous sealing lip of the frame engages an enlarged edge of the lens, which then snap-fits into the lip, or possibly over the lip. Such a snap fit is typically used to join a cap to an ink pen. This configuration may have an advantage of a sturdier joint with fewer chances for admission of very small dust and dirt particles. Possible disadvantages include the fairly tight tolerances required around the entire periphery of

both the lens and frame, and the requirement for dimensional integrity in all three dimensions over time.

[00205] It is also possible to use an even simpler interface, which may still be considered a snap-fit. A groove may be molded into an outer surface of the frame, with the lens having a protruding surface, which may be considered a tongue that fits into the groove. If the groove is semi-cylindrical, such as from about 270° to about 300°, the tongue will snap into the groove and be firmly retained, with removal still possible through the gap that remains in the groove. In this embodiment, shown in Fig. 8E, a lens or replacement lens or cover 826 with a tongue 828 may be inserted into a groove 827 in a frame 825, even though the lens or cover is not snap-fit into the frame. Because the fit is a close one, it will act as a snap-fit and securely retain the lens in the frame.

[00206] In another embodiment, the frame may be made in two pieces, such as a lower portion and an upper portion, with a conventional tongue-and-groove fit. In another embodiment, this design may also use standard fasteners to ensure a tight grip of the lens by the frame. The design should not require disassembly of anything on the inside of the frame. Thus, the snap-on or other lens or cover should be assembled onto the frame, or removed from the frame, without having to go inside the frame. As noted in other parts of this disclosure, the augmented reality glasses have many component parts. Some of the assemblies and subassemblies may require careful alignment. Moving and jarring these assemblies may be detrimental to their function, as will moving and jarring the frame and the outer or snap-on lens or cover.

[00207] In embodiments, the flip-up / flip-down arrangement enables a modular design for the eyepiece. For example, not only can the eyepiece be equipped with a monocular or binocular module 802, but the lens 818 may also be swapped. In embodiments, additional features may be included with the module 802, either associated with one or both displays 812. For example, either monocular or binocular versions of the module 802 may be display only 902 (monocular), 904 (binocular) or may be equipped with a forward-looking camera 908 (monocular), and 910 & 912 (binocular). In some embodiments, the module may have additional integrated electronics, such as a GPS, a laser range finder, and the like. In the embodiment 912, a binocular electro-optic

module 912 is equipped with stereo forward-looking cameras 920 and a laser range finder 918.

[00208] In an embodiment, the electro-optics characteristics may be, but not limited to, as follows:

Optic Characteristics	Value
WAVEGUIDE	
virtual display field of view (Diagonal)	~25 - 30 degrees (equivalent to the FOV of a 24" monitor viewed at 1m distance)
see-through field of view	more than 80 degrees
eye clearance	more than 18 mm
Material	zeonex optical plastic
weight approx	15 grams
Wave Guide dimensions	60 x 30 x 10mm (or 9)
Size	15.5mm (diagonal)
Material	PMMA (optical plastics)
FOV	53.5° (diagonal)
Active display area	12.7 mm x 9.0 mm
Resolution	800 x 600 pixels
VIRTUAL IMAGING SYSTEM	
Type	Folded FFS prism
Effective focal length	15 mm
Exit pupil diameter	8 mm
Eye relief	18.25 mm
F#	1.875
Number of free form surfaces	2 – 3
AUGMENTED VIEWING SYSTEM	
Type	Free form Lens
Number of free form surfaces	2
Other Parameters	
Wavelength	656.3-486.1nm
Field of view	45°H x 32°V
Vignetting	0.15 for the top and bottom fields
Distortion	<12% at the maximum field
Image quality	MTF> 10% at 30lp/mm

[00209] In an embodiment, the Projector Characteristics may be as follows:

Projector Characteristics	Value
Brightness	Adjustable, .25-2 Lumens
Voltage	3.6VDC
Illumination	Red, Green and Blue LEDs
Display	SVGA 800 x 600 dpi Syndiant LCOS Display
Power Consumption	Adjustable, 50 to 250mw
Target MPE Dimensions	Approximately 24mm x 12mm x 6mm
Focus	Adjustable
Optics Housing	6061-T6 Aluminum and Glass-filled ABS/PC
Weight	5 gms
RGB Engine	Adjustable Color Output
ARCHITECTURE	
	2x 1GHZ processor cores
	633MHZ DSPs
	30M polygons/sec DC graphics accelerator
IMAGE CORRECTION	
	real-time sensing
	image enhancement
	noise reduction
	keystone correction
	perspective correction

[00210] In another embodiment, an augmented reality eyepiece may include electrically-controlled lenses as part of the microprojector or as part of the optics between the microprojector and the waveguide. Fig. 21 depicts an embodiment with such liquid lenses 2152.

[00211] The glasses also include at least one camera or optical sensor 2130 that may furnish an image or images for viewing by the user. The images are formed by a microprojector 2114 on each side of the glasses for conveyance to the waveguide 2108 on that side. In one embodiment, an additional optical element, a variable focus lens 2152 is also furnished. The lens is electrically adjustable by the user so that the image seen in the waveguides 2108 are focused for the user.

[00212] Variable lenses may include the so-called liquid lenses furnished by Varioptic, S.A., Lyons, France, or by LensVector, Inc., Mountain View, CA, U.S.A. Such lenses may include a central portion with two immiscible liquids. Typically, in

these lenses, the path of light through the lens, i.e., the focal length of the lens is altered or focused by applying an electric potential between electrodes immersed in the liquids. At least one of the liquids is affected by the resulting electric or magnetic field potential. Thus, electrowetting may occur, as described in U.S. Pat. Appl. Publ. 2010/0007807, assigned to LensVector, Inc. Other techniques are described in LensVector Pat. Appl. Pubs. 2009/021331 and 2009/0316097. All three of these disclosures are incorporated herein by reference, as though each page and figures were set forth verbatim herein.

[00213] Other patent documents from Varioptic, S.A., describe other devices and techniques for a variable focus lens, which may also work through an electrowetting phenomenon. These documents include U.S. Pats. No. 7,245,440 and 7,894,440 and U.S. Pat. Appl. Pubs. 2010/0177386 and 2010/0295987, each of which is also incorporated herein by reference, as though each page and figures were set forth verbatim herein. In these documents, the two liquids typically have different indices of refraction and different electrical conductivities, e.g., one liquid is conductive, such as an aqueous liquid, and the other liquid is insulating, such as an oily liquid. Applying an electric potential may change the thickness of the lens and does change the path of light through the lens, thus changing the focal length of the lens.

[00214] The electrically-adjustable lenses may be controlled by the controls of the glasses. In one embodiment, a focus adjustment is made by calling up a menu from the controls and adjusting the focus of the lens. The lenses may be controlled separately or may be controlled together. The adjustment is made by physically turning a control knob, by indicating with a gesture, or by voice command. In another embodiment, the augmented reality glasses may also include a rangefinder, and focus of the electrically-adjustable lenses may be controlled automatically by pointing the rangefinder, such as a laser rangefinder, to a target or object a desired distance away from the user.

[00215] As shown in U.S. Pat. No. 7,894,440, discussed above, the variable lenses may also be applied to the outer lenses of the augmented reality glasses or eyepiece. In one embodiment, the lenses may simply take the place of a corrective lens. The variable lenses with their electric-adjustable control may be used instead of or in addition to the image source- or projector-mounted lenses. The corrective lens inserts provide corrective

optics for the user's environment, the outside world, whether the waveguide displays are active or not.

[00216] It is important to stabilize the images presented to the wearer of the augmented reality glasses or eyepiece(s), that is, the images seen in the waveguide. The view or images presented travel from one or two digital cameras or sensors mounted on the eyepiece, to digital circuitry, where the images are processed and, if desired, stored as digital data before they appear in the display of the glasses. In any event, and as discussed above, the digital data is then used to form an image, such as by using an LCOS display and a series of RGB light emitting diodes. The light images are processed using a series of lenses, a polarizing beam splitter, an electrically-powered liquid corrective lens and at least one transition lens from the projector to the waveguide.

[00217] The process of gathering and presenting images includes several mechanical and optical linkages between components of the augmented reality glasses. It seems clear, therefore, that some form of stabilization will be required. This may include optical stabilization of the most immediate cause, the camera itself, since it is mounted on a mobile platform, the glasses, which themselves are movably mounted on a mobile user. Accordingly, camera stabilization or correction may be required. In addition, at least some stabilization or correction should be used for the liquid variable lens. Ideally, a stabilization circuit at that point could correct not only for the liquid lens, but also for any aberration and vibration from many parts of the circuit upstream from the liquid lens, including the image source. One advantage of the present system is that many commercial off-the-shelf cameras are very advanced and typically have at least one image-stabilization feature or option. Thus, there may be many embodiments of the present disclosure, each with a same or a different method of stabilizing an image or a very fast stream of images, as discussed below. The term optical stabilization is typically used herein with the meaning of physically stabilizing the camera, camera platform, or other physical object, while image stabilization refers to data manipulation and processing.

[00218] One technique of image stabilization is performed on digital images as they are formed. This technique may use pixels outside the border of the visible frame as a buffer for the undesired motion. Alternatively, the technique may use another relatively

steady area or basis in succeeding frames. This technique is applicable to video cameras, shifting the electronic image from frame to frame of the video in a manner sufficient to counteract the motion. This technique does not depend on sensors and directly stabilizes the images by reducing vibrations and other distracting motion from the moving camera. In some techniques, the speed of the images may be slowed in order to add the stabilization process to the remainder of the digital process, and requiring more time per image. These techniques may use a global motion vector calculated from frame-to-frame motion differences to determine the direction of the stabilization.

[00219] Optical stabilization for images uses a gravity- or electronically-driven mechanism to move or adjust an optical element or imaging sensor such that it counteracts the ambient vibrations. Another way to optically stabilize the displayed content is to provide gyroscopic correction or sensing of the platform housing the augmented reality glasses, e.g., the user. As noted above, the sensors available and used on the augmented reality glasses or eyepiece include MEMS gyroscopic sensors. These sensors capture movement and motion in three dimensions in very small increments and can be used as feedback to correct the images sent from the camera in real time. It is clear that at least a large part of the undesired and undesirable movement probably is caused by movement of the user and the camera itself. These larger movements may include gross movements of the user, e.g., walking or running, riding in a vehicle. Smaller vibrations may also result within the augmented reality eyeglasses, that is, vibrations in the components in the electrical and mechanical linkages that form the path from the camera (input) to the image in the waveguide (output). These gross movements may be more important to correct or to account for, rather than, for instance, independent and small movements in the linkages of components downstream from the projector.

[00220] Motion sensing may thus be used to sense the motion and correct for it, as in optical stabilization, or to sense the motion and then correct the images that are being taken and processed, as in image stabilization. An apparatus for sensing motion and correcting the images or the data is depicted in Fig. 57A. In this apparatus, one or more kinds of motion sensors may be used, including accelerometers, angular position sensors or gyroscopes, such as MEMS gyroscopes. Data from the sensors is fed back to the appropriate sensor interfaces, such as analog to digital converters (ADCs) or other

suitable interface, such as digital signal processors (DSPs). A microprocessor then processes this information, as discussed above, and sends image-stabilized frames to the display driver and then to the see-through display or waveguide discussed above. In one embodiment, the display begins with the RGB display in the microprojector of the augmented reality eyepiece.

[00221] In another embodiment, a video sensor or augmented reality glasses, or other device with a video sensor may be mounted on a vehicle. In this embodiment, the video stream may be communicated through a telecommunication capability or an Internet capability to personnel in the vehicle. One application could be sightseeing or touring of an area. Another embodiment could be exploring or reconnaissance, or even patrolling, of an area. In these embodiments, gyroscopic stabilization of the image sensor would be helpful, rather than applying a gyroscopic correction to the images or digital data representing the images. An embodiment of this technique is depicted in Fig. 57B. In this technique, a camera or image sensor 3407 is mounted on a vehicle 3401. One or more motion sensors 3406, such as gyroscopes, are mounted in the camera assembly 3405. A stabilizing platform 3403 receives information from the motion sensors and stabilizes the camera assembly 3405, so that jitter and wobble are minimized while the camera operates. This is true optical stabilization. Alternatively, the motion sensors or gyroscopes may be mounted on or within the stabilizing platform itself. This technique would actually provide optical stabilization, stabilizing the camera or image sensor, in contrast to digital stabilization, correcting the image afterwards by computer processing of the data taken by the camera.

[00222] In one technique, the key to optical stabilization is to apply the stabilization or correction before an image sensor converts the image into digital information. In one technique, feedback from sensors, such as gyroscopes or angular velocity sensors, is encoded and sent to an actuator that moves the image sensor, much as an autofocus mechanism adjusts a focus of a lens. The image sensor is moved in such a way as to maintain the projection of the image onto the image plane, which is a function of the focal length of the lens being used. Autoranging and focal length information, perhaps from a range finder of the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, may be acquired through the lens itself. In another technique, angular velocity sensors, sometimes also called

gyroscopic sensors, can be used to detect, respectively, horizontal and vertical movements. The motion detected may then be fed back to electromagnets to move a floating lens of the camera. This optical stabilization technique, however, would have to be applied to each lens contemplated, making the result rather expensive.

[00223] Stabilization of the liquid lens is discussed in U.S. Pat. Appl. Publ. 2010/0295987, assigned to Varioptic, S.A., Lyon, France. In theory, control of a liquid lens is relatively simple, since there is only one variable to control: the level of voltage applied to the electrodes in the conducting and non-conducting liquids of the lens, using, for examples, the lens housing and the cap as electrodes. Applying a voltage causes a change or tilt in the liquid-liquid interface via the electrowetting effect. This change or tilt adjusts the focus or output of the lens. In its most basic terms, a control scheme with feedback would then apply a voltage and determine the effect of the applied voltage on the result, i.e., a focus or an astigmatism of the image. The voltages may be applied in patterns, for example, equal and opposite + and – voltages, both positive voltages of differing magnitude, both negative voltages of differing magnitude, and so forth. Such lenses are known as electrically variable optic lenses or electro-optic lenses.

[00224] Voltages may be applied to the electrodes in patterns for a short period of time and a check on the focus or astigmatism made. The check may be made, for instance, by an image sensor. In addition, sensors on the camera or in this case the lens, may detect motion of the camera or lens. Motion sensors would include accelerometers, gyroscopes, angular velocity sensors or piezoelectric sensors mounted on the liquid lens or a portion of the optic train very near the liquid lens. In one embodiment, a table, such as a calibration table, is then constructed of voltages applied and the degree of correction or voltages needed for given levels of movement. More sophistication may also be added, for example, by using segmented electrodes in different portions of the liquid so that four voltages may be applied rather than two. Of course, if four electrodes are used, four voltages may be applied, in many more patterns than with only two electrodes. These patterns may include equal and opposite positive and negative voltages to opposite segments, and so forth. An example is depicted in Fig. 57C. Four electrodes 3409 are mounted within a liquid lens housing (not shown). Two electrodes are mounted in or

near the non-conducting liquid and two are mounted in or near the conducting liquid. Each electrode is independent in terms of the possible voltage that may be applied.

[00225] Look-up or calibration tables may be constructed and placed in the memory of the augmented reality glasses. In use, the accelerometer or other motion sensor will sense the motion of the glasses, i.e., the camera on the glasses or the lens itself. A motion sensor such as an accelerometer will sense in particular, small vibration-type motions that interfere with smooth delivery of images to the waveguide. In one embodiment, the image stabilization techniques described here can be applied to the electrically-controllable liquid lens so that the image from the projector is corrected immediately. This will stabilize the output of the projector, at least partially correcting for the vibration and movement of the augmented reality eyepiece, as well as at least some movement by the user. There may also be a manual control for adjusting the gain or other parameter of the corrections. Note that this technique may also be used to correct for near-sightedness or far-sightedness of the individual user, in addition to the focus adjustment already provided by the image sensor controls and discussed as part of the adjustable-focus projector.

[00226] Another variable focus element uses tunable liquid crystal cells to focus an image. These are disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Appl. Publ. Nos. 2009/0213321, 2009/0316097 and 2010/0007807, which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety and relied on. In this method, a liquid crystal material is contained within a transparent cell, preferably with a matching index of refraction. The cell includes transparent electrodes, such as those made from indium tin oxide (ITO). Using one spiral-shaped electrode, and a second spiral-shaped electrode or a planar electrode, a spatially non-uniform magnetic field is applied. Electrodes of other shapes may be used. The shape of the magnetic field determines the rotation of molecules in the liquid crystal cell to achieve a change in refractive index and thus a focus of the lens. The liquid crystals can thus be electromagnetically manipulated to change their index of refraction, making the tunable liquid crystal cell act as a lens.

[00227] In a first embodiment, a tunable liquid crystal cell 3420 is depicted in Fig. 57D. The cell includes an inner layer of liquid crystal 3421 and thin layers 3423 of orienting material such as polyimide. This material helps to orient the liquid crystals in a

preferred direction. Transparent electrodes 3425 are on each side of the orienting material. An electrode may be planar, or may be spiral shaped as shown on the right in Fig. 57D. Transparent glass 3427 substrates contain the materials within the cell. The electrodes are formed so that they will lend shape to the magnetic field. As noted, a spiral shaped electrode on one or both sides, such that the two are not symmetrical, is used in one embodiment. A second embodiment is depicted in Fig. 57E. Tunable liquid crystal cell 3430 includes central liquid crystal material 3431, transparent glass substrate walls 3433, and transparent electrodes. Bottom electrode 3435 is planar, while top electrode 3437 is in the shape of a spiral. Transparent electrodes may be made of indium tin oxide (ITO).

[00228] Additional electrodes may be used for quick reversion of the liquid crystal to a non-shaped or natural state. A small control voltage is thus used to dynamically change the refractive index of the material the light passes through. The voltage generates a spatially non-uniform magnetic field of a desired shape, allowing the liquid crystal to function as a lens.

[00229] In one embodiment, the camera includes the black silicon, short wave infrared (SWIR) CMOS sensor described elsewhere in this patent. In another embodiment, the camera is a 5 megapixel (MP) optically-stabilized video sensor. In one embodiment, the controls include a 3 GHz microprocessor or microcontroller, and may also include a 633 MHz digital signal processor with a 30 M polygon/second graphic accelerator for real-time image processing for images from the camera or video sensor. In one embodiment, the augmented reality glasses may include a wireless internet, radio or telecommunications capability for wideband, personal area network (PAN), local area network (LAN), a wide local area network, WLAN, conforming to IEEE 802.11, or reach-back communications. The equipment furnished in one embodiment includes a Bluetooth capability, conforming to IEEE 802.15. In one embodiment, the augmented reality glasses include an encryption system, such as a 256-bit Advanced Encryption System (AES) encryption system or other suitable encryption program, for secure communications.

[00230] In one embodiment, the wireless telecommunications may include a capability for a 3G or 4G network and may also include a wireless internet capability. In

order for an extended life, the augmented reality eyepiece or glasses may also include at least one lithium-ion battery, and as discussed above, a recharging capability. The recharging plug may comprise an AC/DC power converter and may be capable of using multiple input voltages, such as 120 or 240 VAC. The controls for adjusting the focus of the adjustable focus lenses in one embodiment comprises a 2D or 3D wireless air mouse or other non-contact control responsive to gestures or movements of the user. A 2D mouse is available from Logitech, Fremont, CA, USA. A 3D mouse is described herein, or others such as the Cideko AVK05 available from Cideko, Taiwan, R.O.C, may be used.

[00231] In an embodiment, the eyepiece may comprise electronics suitable for controlling the optics, and associated systems, including a central processing unit, non-volatile memory, digital signal processors, 3-D graphics accelerators, and the like. The eyepiece may provide additional electronic elements or features, including inertial navigation systems, cameras, microphones, audio output, power, communication systems, sensors, stopwatch or chronometer functions, thermometer, vibratory temple motors, motion sensor, a microphone to enable audio control of the system, a UV sensor to enable contrast and dimming with photochromic materials, and the like.

[00232] In an embodiment, the central processing unit (CPU) of the eyepiece may be an OMAP 4, with dual 1 GHz processor cores. The CPU may include a 633 MHz DSP, giving a capability for the CPU of 30 million polygons/second.

[00233] The system may also provide dual micro-SD (secure digital) slots for provisioning of additional removable non-volatile memory.

[00234] An on-board camera may provide 1.3 MP color and record up to 60 minutes of video footage. The recorded video may be transferred wirelessly or using a mini-USB transfer device to off-load footage.

[00235] The communications system-on-a-chip (SOC) may be capable of operating with wide local area networks (WLAN), Bluetooth version 3.0, a GPS receiver, an FM radio, and the like.

[00236] The eyepiece may operate on a 3.6 VDC lithium-ion rechargeable battery for long battery life and ease of use. An additional power source may be provided

through solar cells on the exterior of the frame of the system. These solar cells may supply power and may also be capable of recharging the lithium-ion battery.

[00237] The total power consumption of the eyepiece may be approximately 400 mW, but is variable depending on features and applications used. For example, processor-intensive applications with significant video graphics demand more power, and will be closer to 400 mW. Simpler, less video-intensive applications will use less power. The operation time on a charge also may vary with application and feature usage.

[00238] The micro-projector illumination engine, also known herein as the projector, may include multiple light emitting diodes (LEDs). In order to provide life-like color, Osram red, Cree green, and Cree blue LEDs are used. These are die-based LEDs. The RGB engine may provide an adjustable color output, allowing a user to optimize viewing for various programs and applications.

[00239] In embodiments, illumination may be added to the glasses or controlled through various means. For example, LED lights or other lights may be embedded in the frame of the eyepiece, such as in the nose bridge, around the composite lens, or at the temples.

[00240] The intensity of the illumination and or the color of illumination may be modulated. Modulation may be accomplished through the various control technologies described herein, through various applications, filtering and magnification.

[00241] By way of example, illumination may be modulated through various control technologies described herein such as through the adjustment of a control knob, a gesture, eye movement, or voice command. If a user desires to increase the intensity of illumination, the user may adjust a control knob on the glasses or he may adjust a control knob in the user interface displayed on the lens or by other means. The user may use eye movements to control the knob displayed on the lens or he may control the knob by other means. The user may adjust illumination through a movement of the hand or other body movement such that the intensity or color of illumination changes based on the movement made by the user. Also, the user may adjust the illumination through a voice command such as by speaking a phrase requesting increased or decreased illumination or requesting other colors to be displayed. Additionally, illumination modulation may be achieved through any control technology described herein or by other means.

[00242] Further, the illumination may be modulated per the particular application being executed. As an example, an application may automatically adjust the intensity of illumination or color of illumination based on the optimal settings for that application. If the current levels of illumination are not at the optimal levels for the application being executed, a message or command may be sent to provide for illumination adjustment.

[00243] In embodiments, illumination modulation may be accomplished through filtering and or through magnification. For example, filtering techniques may be employed that allow the intensity and or color of the light to be changed such that the optimal or desired illumination is achieved. Also, in embodiments, the intensity of the illumination may be modulated by applying greater or less magnification to reach the desired illumination intensity.

[00244] The projector may be connected to the display to output the video and other display elements to the user. The display used may be an SVGA 800 x 600 dots/inch SYNDIANT liquid crystal on silicon (LCoS) display.

[00245] The target MPE dimensions for the system may be 24 mm x 12 mm x 6 mm.

[00246] The focus may be adjustable, allowing a user to refine the projector output to suit their needs.

[00247] The optics system may be contained within a housing fabricated for 6061-T6 aluminum and glass-filled ABS/PC.

[00248] The weight of the system, in an embodiment, is estimated to be 3.75 ounces, or 95 grams.

[00249] In an embodiment, the eyepiece and associated electronics provide night vision capability. This night vision capability may be enabled by a black silicon SWIR sensor. Black silicon is a complementary metal-oxide silicon (CMOS) processing technique that enhances the photo response of silicon over 100 times. The spectral range is expanded deep into the short wave infra-red (SWIR) wavelength range. In this technique, a 300 nm deep absorbing and anti-reflective layer is added to the glasses. This layer offers improved responsivity as shown in FIG. 11, where the responsivity of black silicon is much greater than silicon's over the visible and NIR ranges and extends well

into the SWIR range. This technology is an improvement over current technology, which suffers from extremely high cost, performance issues, as well as high volume manufacturability problems. Incorporating this technology into night vision optics brings the economic advantages of CMOS technology into the design.

[00250] These advantages include using active illumination only when needed. In some instances there may be sufficient natural illumination at night, such as during a full moon. When such is the case, artificial night vision using active illumination may not be necessary. With black silicon CMOS-based SWIR sensors, active illumination may not be needed during these conditions, and is not provided, thus improving battery life.

[00251] In addition, a black silicon image sensor may have over eight times the signal to noise ratio found in costly indium-gallium arsenide image sensors under night sky conditions. Better resolution is also provided by this technology, offering much higher resolution than available using current technology for night vision. Typically, long wavelength images produced by CMOS-based SWIR have been difficult to interpret, having good heat detection, but poor resolution. This problem is solved with a black image silicon SWIR sensor, which relies on much shorter wavelengths. SWIR is highly desirable for battlefield night vision glasses for these reasons. FIG. 12 illustrates the effectiveness of black silicon night vision technology, providing both before and after images of seeing through a) dust; b) fog, and c) smoke. The images in FIG. 12 demonstrate the performance of the new VIS/NIR/SWIR black silicon sensor.

[00252] Previous night vision systems suffered from “blooms” from bright light sources, such as streetlights. These “blooms” were particularly strong in image intensifying technology and are also associated with a loss of resolution. In some cases, cooling systems are necessary in image intensifying technology systems, increasing weight and shortening battery power lifespan. FIG. 17 shows the difference in image quality between A) a flexible platform of uncooled CMOS image sensors capable of VIS/NIR/SWIR imaging and B) an image intensified night vision system.

[00253] FIG. 13 depicts the difference in structure between current or incumbent vision enhancement technology and uncooled CMOS image sensors. The incumbent platform (Fig. 13A) limits deployment because of cost, weight, power consumption, spectral range, and reliability issues. Incumbent systems are typically

comprised of a front lens 1301, photocathode 1302, micro channel plate 1303, high voltage power supply 1304, phosphorous screen 1305, and eyepiece 1306. This is in contrast to a flexible platform (Fig. 13B) of uncooled CMOS image sensors 1307 capable of VIS/NIR/SWIR imaging at a fraction of the cost, power consumption, and weight. These much simpler sensors include a front lens 1308 and an image sensor 1309 with a digital image output.

[00254] These advantages derive from the CMOS compatible processing technique that enhances the photo response of silicon over 100 times and extends the spectral range deep into the short wave infrared region. The difference in responsivity is illustrated in FIG. 13C. While typical night vision goggles are limited to the UV, visible and near infrared (NIR) ranges, to about 1100 nm (1.1 micrometers) the newer CMOS image sensor ranges also include the short wave infrared (SWIR) spectrum, out to as much as 2000 nm (2 micrometers).

[00255] The black silicon core technology may offer significant improvement over current night vision glasses. Femtosecond laser doping may enhance the light detection properties of silicon across a broad spectrum. Additionally, optical response may be improved by a factor of 100 to 10,000. The black silicon technology is a fast, scalable, and CMOS compatible technology at a very low cost, compared to current night vision systems. Black silicon technology may also provide a low operation bias, with 3.3 V typical. In addition, uncooled performance may be possible up to 50°C. Cooling requirements of current technology increase both weight and power consumption, and also create discomfort in users. As noted above, the black silicon core technology offers a high-resolution replacement for current image intensifier technology. Black silicon core technology may provide high speed electronic shuttering at speeds up to 1000 frames/second with minimal cross talk. In certain embodiments of the night vision eyepiece, an OLED display may be preferred over other optical displays, such as the LCoS display.

[00256] Further advantages of the eyepiece may include robust connectivity. This connectivity enables download and transmission using Bluetooth, Wi-Fi/Internet, cellular, satellite, 3G, FM/AM, TV, and UVB transceiver.

[00257] The eyepiece may provide its own cellular connectivity, such as though a personal wireless connection with a cellular system. The personal wireless connection may be available for only the wearer of the eyepiece, or it may be available to a plurality of proximate users, such as in a Wi-Fi hot spot (e.g. MiFi), where the eyepiece provides a local hotspot for others to utilize. These proximate users may be other wearers of an eyepiece, or users of some other wireless computing device, such as a mobile communications facility (e.g. mobile phone). Through this personal wireless connection, the wearer may not need other cellular or Internet wireless connections to connect to wireless services. For instance, without a personal wireless connection integrated into the eyepiece, the wearer may have to find a WiFi connection point or tether to their mobile communications facility in order to establish a wireless connection. In embodiments, the eyepiece may be able to replace the need for having a separate mobile communications device, such as a mobile phone, mobile computer, and the like, by integrating these functions and user interfaces into the eyepiece. For instance, the eyepiece may have an integrated WiFi connection or hotspot, a real or virtual keyboard interface, a USB hub, speakers (e.g. to stream music to) or speaker input connections, integrated camera, external camera, and the like. In embodiments, an external device, in connectivity with the eyepiece, may provide a single unit with a personal network connection (e.g. WiFi, cellular connection), keyboard, control pad (e.g. a touch pad), and the like.

[00258] The eyepiece may include MEMS-based inertial navigation systems, such as a GPS processor, an accelerometer (e.g. for enabling head control of the system and other functions), a gyroscope, an altimeter, an inclinometer, a speedometer/odometer, a laser rangefinder, and a magnetometer, which also enables image stabilization.

[00259] The eyepiece may include integrated headphones, such as the articulating earbud 120, that provide audio output to the user or wearer.

[00260] In an embodiment, a forward facing camera (see Fig. 21) integrated with the eyepiece may enable basic augmented reality. In augmented reality, a viewer can image what is being viewed and then layer an augmented, edited, tagged, or analyzed version on top of the basic view. In the alternative, associated data may be displayed with or over the basic image. If two cameras are provided and are mounted at the correct interpupillary distance for the user, stereo video imagery may be created. This capability

may be useful for persons requiring vision assistance. Many people suffer from deficiencies in their vision, such as near-sightedness, far-sightedness, and so forth. A camera and a very close, virtual screen as described herein provides a “video” for such persons, the video adjustable in terms of focal point, nearer or farther, and fully in control by the person via voice or other command. This capability may also be useful for persons suffering diseases of the eye, such as cataracts, retinitis pigmentosa, and the like. So long as some organic vision capability remains, an augmented reality eyepiece can help a person see more clearly. Embodiments of the eyepiece may feature one or more of magnification, increased brightness, and ability to map content to the areas of the eye that are still healthy. Embodiments of the eyepiece may be used as bifocals or a magnifying glass. The wearer may be able to increase zoom in the field of view or increase zoom within a partial field of view. In an embodiment, an associated camera may make an image of the object and then present the user with a zoomed picture. A user interface may allow a wearer to point at the area that he wants zoomed, such as with the control techniques described herein, so the image processing can stay on task as opposed to just zooming in on everything in the camera's field of view.

[00261] A rear-facing camera (not shown) may also be incorporated into the eyepiece in a further embodiment. In this embodiment, the rear-facing camera may enable eye control of the eyepiece, with the user making application or feature selection by directing his or her eyes to a specific item displayed on the eyepiece.

[00262] A further embodiment of a device for capturing biometric data about individuals may incorporate a microcassegain telescoping folded optic camera into the device. The microcassegain telescoping folded optic camera may be mounted on a handheld device, such as the bio-print device, the bio-phone, and could also be mounted on glasses used as part of a bio-kit to collect biometric data.

[00263] A cassegain reflector is a combination of a primary concave mirror and a secondary convex mirror. These reflectors are often used in optical telescopes and radio antennas because they deliver good light (or sound) collecting capability in a shorter, smaller package.

[00264] In a symmetrical cassegain both mirrors are aligned about the optical axis and the primary mirror usually has a hole in the center, allowing light to reach the

eyepiece or a camera chip or light detection device, such as a CCD chip. An alternate design, often used in radio telescopes, places the final focus in front of the primary reflector. A further alternate design may tilt the mirrors to avoid obstructing the primary or secondary mirror and may eliminate the need for a hole in the primary mirror or secondary mirror. The microcassegain telescoping folded optic camera may use any of the above variations, with the final selection determined by the desired size of the optic device.

[00265] The classic cassegain configuration uses a parabolic reflector as the primary mirror and a hyperbolic mirror as the secondary mirror. Further embodiments of the microcassegain telescoping folded optic camera may use a hyperbolic primary mirror and/or a spherical or elliptical secondary mirror. In operation the classic cassegain with a parabolic primary mirror and a hyperbolic secondary mirror reflects the light back down through a hole in the primary 6000, as shown in Fig. 60. Folding the optical path makes the design more compact, and in a “micro” size, suitable for use with the bio-print sensor and bio-print kit described herein. In a folded optic system, the beam is bent to make the optical path much longer than the physical length of the system. One common example of folded optics is prismatic binoculars. In a camera lens the secondary mirror may be mounted on an optically flat, optically clear glass plate that closes the lens tube. This support eliminates “star-shaped” diffraction effects that are caused by a straight-vented support spider. This allows for a sealed closed tube and protects the primary mirror, albeit at some loss of light collecting power.

[00266] The cassegain design also makes use of the special properties of parabolic and hyperbolic reflectors. A concave parabolic reflector will reflect all incoming light rays parallel to its axis of symmetry to a single focus point. A convex hyperbolic reflector has two foci and reflects all light rays directed at one focus point toward the other focus point. Mirrors in this type of lens are designed and positioned to share one focus, placing the second focus of the hyperbolic mirror at the same point as where the image is observed, usually just outside the eyepiece. The parabolic mirror reflects parallel light rays entering the lens to its focus, which is coincident with the focus of the hyperbolic mirror. The hyperbolic mirror then reflects those light rays to the other focus point, where the camera records the image.

[00267] Fig. 61 shows the configuration of the microcassegain telescoping folded optic camera 6100. The camera may be mounted on augmented reality glasses, a bio-phone, or other biometric collection device. The assembly, 6100 has multiple telescoping segments that allow the camera to extend with cassegain optics providing for a longer optical path. Threads 3602 allow the camera to be mounted on a device, such as augmented reality glasses or other biometric collection device. While the embodiment depicted in Fig. 61 uses threads, other mounting schemes such as bayonet mount, knobs, or press-fit, may also be used. A first telescoping section 3604 also acts as an external housing when the lens is in the fully retracted position. The camera may also incorporate a motor to drive the extension and retraction of the camera. A second telescoping section 3606 may also be included. Other embodiments may incorporate varying numbers of telescoping sections, depending on the length of optical path needed for the selected task or data to be collected. A third telescoping section 3608 includes the lens and a reflecting mirror. The reflecting mirror may be a primary reflector if the camera is designed following classic cassegain design. The secondary mirror may be contained in first telescoping section 3604.

[00268] Further embodiments may utilize microscopic mirrors to form the camera, while still providing for a longer optical path through the use of folded optics. The same principles of cassegain design are used.

[00269] Lens 3610 provides optics for use in conjunction with the folded optics of the cassegain design. The lens 3610 may be selected from a variety of types, and may vary depending on the application. The threads 3602 permit a variety of cameras to be interchanged depending on the needs of the user.

[00270] Eye control of feature and option selection may be controlled and activated by object recognition software loaded on the system processor. Object recognition software may enable augmented reality, combine the recognition output with querying a database, combine the recognition output with a computational tool to determine dependencies / likelihoods, and the like.

[00271] Three-dimensional viewing is also possible in an additional embodiment that incorporates a 3D projector. Two stacked picoprojectors (not shown) may be used to create the three dimensional image output.

[00272] Referring to Fig. 10, a plurality of digital CMOS Sensors with redundant micros and DSPs for each sensor array and projector detect visible, near infrared, and short wave infrared light to enable passive day and night operations, such as real-time image enhancement 1002, real-time keystone correction 1004, and real-time virtual perspective correction 1008.

[00273] The augmented reality eyepiece or glasses may be powered by any stored energy system, such as battery power, solar power, line power, and the like. A solar energy collector may be placed on the frame, on a belt clip, and the like. Battery charging may occur using a wall charger, car charger, on a belt clip, in a glasses case, and the like. In one embodiment, the eyepiece may be rechargeable and be equipped with a mini-USB connector for recharging. In another embodiment, the eyepiece may be equipped for remote inductive recharging by one or more remote inductive power conversion technologies, such as those provided by Powercast, Ligonier, PA, USA; and Fulton Int'l. Inc., Ada, MI, USA, which also owns another provider, Splashpower, Inc., Cambridge, UK.

[00274] The augmented reality eyepiece also includes a camera and any interface necessary to connect the camera to the circuit. The output of the camera may be stored in memory and may also be displayed on the display available to the wearer of the glasses. A display driver may also be used to control the display. The augmented reality device also includes a power supply, such as a battery, as shown, power management circuits and a circuit for recharging the power supply. As noted elsewhere, recharging may take place via a hard connection, e.g., a mini-USB connector, or by means of an inductor, a solar panel input, and so forth.

[00275] The control system for the eyepiece or glasses may include a control algorithm for conserving power when the power source, such as a battery, indicates low power. This conservation algorithm may include shutting power down to applications that are energy intensive, such as lighting, a camera, or sensors that require high levels of energy, such as any sensor requiring a heater, for example. Other conservation steps may include slowing down the power used for a sensor or for a camera, e.g., slowing the sampling or frame rates, going to a slower sampling or frame rate when the power is low; or shutting down the sensor or camera at an even lower level. Thus, there may be at least

three operating modes depending on the available power: a normal mode; a conserve power mode; and an emergency or shutdown mode.

[00276] Applications of the present disclosure may be controlled through movements and direct actions of the wearer, such as movement of his or her hand, finger, feet, head, eyes, and the like, enabled through facilities of the eyepiece (e.g. accelerometers, gyros, cameras, optical sensors, GPS sensors, and the like) and/or through facilities worn or mounted on the wearer (e.g. body mounted sensor control facilities). In this way, the wearer may directly control the eyepiece through movements and/or actions of their body without the use of a traditional hand-held remote controller. For instance, the wearer may have a sense device, such as a position sense device, mounted on one or both hands, such as on at least one finger, on the palm, on the back of the hand, and the like, where the position sense device provides position data of the hand, and provides wireless communications of position data as command information to the eyepiece. In embodiments, the sense device of the present disclosure may include a gyroscopic device (e.g. electronic gyroscope, MEMS gyroscope, mechanical gyroscope, quantum gyroscope, ring laser gyroscope, fiber optic gyroscope), accelerometers, MEMS accelerometers, velocity sensors, force sensors, optical sensors, proximity sensor, RFID, and the like, in the providing of position information. For example, a wearer may have a position sense device mounted on their right index finger, where the device is able to sense motion of the finger. In this example, the user may activate the eyepiece either through some switching mechanism on the eyepiece or through some predetermined motion sequence of the finger, such as moving the finger quickly, tapping the finger against a hard surface, and the like. Note that tapping against a hard surface may be interpreted through sensing by accelerometers, force sensors, and the like. The position sense device may then transmit motions of the finger as command information, such as moving the finger in the air to move a cursor across the displayed or projected image, moving in quick motion to indicate a selection, and the like. In embodiments, the position sense device may send sensed command information directly to the eyepiece for command processing, or the command processing circuitry may be co-located with the position sense device, such as in this example, mounted on the finger as part of an assembly including the sensors of the position sense device.

[00277] In embodiments, the wearer may have a plurality of position sense devices mounted on their body. For instance, and in continuation of the preceding example, the wearer may have position sense devices mounted on a plurality of points on the hand, such as with individual sensors on different fingers, or as a collection of devices, such as in a glove. In this way, the aggregate sense command information from the collection of sensors at different locations on the hand may be used to provide more complex command information. For instance, the wearer may use a sensor device glove to play a game, where the glove senses the grasp and motion of the user's hands on a ball, bat, racket, and the like, in the use of the present disclosure in the simulation and play of a simulated game. In embodiments, the plurality of position sense devices may be mounted on different parts of the body, allowing the wearer to transmit complex motions of the body to the eyepiece for use by an application.

[00278] In embodiments, the sense device may have a force sensor, such as for detecting when the sense device comes in contact with an object. For instance, a sense device may include a force sensor at the tip of a wearer's finger. In this case, the wearer may tap, multiple tap, sequence taps, swipe, touch, and the like to generate a command to the eyepiece. Force sensors may also be used to indicate degrees of touch, grip, push, and the like, where predetermined or learned thresholds determine different command information. In this way, commands may be delivered as a series of continuous commands that constantly update the command information being used in an application through the eyepiece. In an example, a wearer may be running a simulation, such as a game application, military application, commercial application, and the like, where the movements and contact with objects, such as through at least one of a plurality of sense devices, are fed to the eyepiece as commands that influence the simulation displayed through the eyepiece.

[00279] In embodiments, the sense device may include an optical sensor or optical transmitter as a way for movement to be interpreted as a command. For instance, a sense device may include an optical sensor mounted on the hand of the wearer, and the eyepiece housing may include an optical transmitter, such that when a user moves their hand past the optical transmitter on the eyepiece, the motions may be interpreted as commands. A motion detected through an optical sensor may include swiping past at

different speeds, with repeated motions, combinations of dwelling and movement, and the like. In embodiments, optical sensors and/or transmitters may be located on the eyepiece, mounted on the wearer (e.g. on the hand, foot, in a glove, piece of clothing), or used in combinations between different areas on the wearer and the eyepiece, and the like.

[00280] In one embodiment, a number of sensors useful for monitoring the condition of the wearer or a person in proximity to the wearer are mounted within the augmented reality glasses. Sensors have become much smaller, thanks to advances in electronics technology. Signal transducing and signal processing technologies have also made great progress in the direction of size reduction and digitization. Accordingly, it is possible to have not merely a temperature sensor in the AR glasses, but an entire sensor array. These sensors may include, as noted, a temperature sensor, and also sensor to detect: pulse rate; beat-to-beat heart variability; EKG or ECG; respiration rate; core body temperature; heat flow from the body; galvanic skin response or GSR; EMG; EEG; EOG; blood pressure; body fat; hydration level; activity level; oxygen consumption; glucose or blood sugar level; body position; and UV radiation exposure or absorption. In addition, there may also be a retinal sensor and a blood oxygenation sensor (such as an SpO₂ sensor), among others. Such sensors are available from a variety of manufacturers, including Vermed, Bellows Falls, VT, USA; VTI, Ventaa, Finland; and ServoFlow, Lexington, MA, USA.

[00281] In some embodiments, it may be more useful to have sensors mounted on the person or on equipment of the person, rather than on the glasses themselves. For example, accelerometers, motion sensors and vibration sensors may be usefully mounted on the person, on clothing of the person, or on equipment worn by the person. These sensors may maintain continuous or periodic contact with the controller of the AR glasses through a Bluetooth® radio transmitter or other radio device adhering to IEEE 802.11 specifications. For example, if a physician wishes to monitor motion or shock experienced by a patient during a foot race, the sensors may be more useful if they are mounted directly on the person's skin, or even on a T-shirt worn by the person, rather than mounted on the glasses. In these cases, a more accurate reading may be obtained by a sensor placed on the person or on the clothing rather than on the glasses. Such sensors

need not be as tiny as the sensors which would be suitable for mounting on the glasses themselves, and be more useful, as seen.

[00282] The AR glasses or goggles may also include environmental sensors or sensor arrays. These sensors are mounted on the glasses and sample the atmosphere or air in the vicinity of the wearer. These sensors or sensor array may be sensitive to certain substances or concentrations of substances. For example, sensors and arrays are available to measure concentrations of carbon monoxide, oxides of nitrogen (“NO_x”), temperature, relative humidity, noise level, volatile organic chemicals (VOC), ozone, particulates, hydrogen sulfide, barometric pressure and ultraviolet light and its intensity. Vendors and manufacturers include: Sensares, Crolles, FR; Cairpol, Ales, FR; Critical Environmental Technologies of Canada, Delta, B.C., Canada; Apollo Electronics Co., Shenzhen, China; and AV Technology Ltd., Stockport, Cheshire, UK. Many other sensors are well known. If such sensors are mounted on the person or on clothing or equipment of the person, they may also be useful. These environmental sensors may include radiation sensors, chemical sensors, poisonous gas sensors, and the like.

[00283] In one embodiment, environmental sensors, health monitoring sensors, or both, are mounted on the frames of the augmented reality glasses. In another embodiment, the sensors may be mounted on the person or on clothing or equipment of the person. For example, a sensor for measuring electrical activity of a heart of the wearer may be implanted, with suitable accessories for transducing and transmitting a signal indicative of the person’s heart activity. The signal may be transmitted a very short distance via a Bluetooth® radio transmitter or other radio device adhering to IEEE 802.15.1 specifications. Other frequencies or protocols may be used instead. The signal may then be processed by the signal-monitoring and processing equipment of the augmented reality glasses, and recorded and displayed on the virtual screen available to the wearer. In another embodiment, the signal may also be sent via the AR glasses to a friend or squad leader of the wearer. Thus, the health and well-being of the person may be monitored by the person and by others, and may also be tracked over time.

[00284] In another embodiment, environmental sensors may be mounted on the person or on equipment of the person. For example, radiation or chemical sensors may be more useful if worn on outer clothing or a web-belt of the person, rather than mounted

directly on the glasses. As noted above, signals from the sensors may be monitored locally by the person through the AR glasses. The sensor readings may also be transmitted elsewhere, either on demand or automatically, perhaps at set intervals, such as every quarter-hour or half-hour. Thus, a history of sensor readings, whether of the person's body readings or of the environment, may be made for tracking or trending purposes.

[00285] In an embodiment, an RF/micropower impulse radio (MIR) sensor may be associated with the eyepiece and serve as a short-range medical radar. The sensor may operate on an ultra-wide band. The sensor may include an RF/impulse generator, receiver, and signal processor, and may be useful for detecting and measuring cardiac signals by measuring ion flow in cardiac cells within 3 mm of the skin. The receiver may be a phased array antenna to enable determining a location of the signal in a region of space. The sensor may be used to detect and identify cardiac signals through blockages, such as walls, water, concrete, dirt, metal, wood, and the like. For example, a user may be able to use the sensor to determine how many people are located in a concrete structure by how many heart rates are detected. In another embodiment, a detected heart rate may serve as a unique identifier for a person so that they may be recognized in the future. In an embodiment, the RF/impulse generator may be embedded in one device, such as the eyepiece or some other device, while the receiver is embedded in a different device, such as another eyepiece or device. In this way, a virtual "tripwire" may be created when a heart rate is detected between the transmitter and receiver. In an embodiment, the sensor may be used as an in-field diagnostic or self-diagnosis tool. EKG's may be analyzed and stored for future use as a biometric identifier. A user may receive alerts of sensed heart rate signals and how many heart rates are present as displayed content in the eyepiece.

[00286] Fig. 29 depicts an embodiment of an augmented reality eyepiece or glasses with a variety of sensors and communication equipment. One or more than one environmental or health sensors are connected to a sensor interface locally or remotely through a short range radio circuit and an antenna, as shown. The sensor interface circuit includes all devices for detecting, amplifying, processing and sending on or transmitting the signals detected by the sensor(s). The remote sensors may include, for example, an

implanted heart rate monitor or other body sensor (not shown). The other sensors may include an accelerometer, an inclinometer, a temperature sensor, a sensor suitable for detecting one or more chemicals or gasses, or any of the other health or environmental sensors discussed in this disclosure. The sensor interface is connected to the microprocessor or microcontroller of the augmented reality device, from which point the information gathered may be recorded in memory, such as random access memory (RAM) or permanent memory, read only memory (ROM), as shown.

[00287] In an embodiment, a sense device enables simultaneous electric field sensing through the eyepiece. Electric field (EF) sensing is a method of proximity sensing that allows computers to detect, evaluate and work with objects in their vicinity. Physical contact with the skin, such as a handshake with another person or some other physical contact with a conductive or a non-conductive device or object, may be sensed as a change in an electric field and either enable data transfer to or from the eyepiece or terminate data transfer. For example, videos captured by the eyepiece may be stored on the eyepiece until a wearer of the eyepiece with an embedded electric field sensing transceiver touches an object and initiates data transfer from the eyepiece to a receiver. The transceiver may include a transmitter that includes a transmitter circuit that induces electric fields toward the body and a data sense circuit, which distinguishes transmitting and receiving modes by detecting both transmission and reception data and outputs control signals corresponding to the two modes to enable two-way communication. An instantaneous private network between two people may be generated with a contact, such as a handshake. Data may be transferred between an eyepiece of a user and a data receiver or eyepiece of the second user. Additional security measures may be used to enhance the private network, such as facial or audio recognition, detection of eye contact, fingerprint detection, biometric entry, and the like.

[00288] In embodiments, there may be an authentication facility associated with accessing functionality of the eyepiece, such as access to displayed or projected content, access to restricted projected content, enabling functionality of the eyepiece itself (e.g. as through a login to access functionality of the eyepiece) either in whole or in part, and the like. Authentication may be provided through recognition of the wearer's voice, iris, retina, fingerprint, and the like, or other biometric identifier. The

authentication system may provide for a database of biometric inputs for a plurality of users such that access control may be provided for use of the eyepiece based on policies and associated access privileges for each of the users entered into the database. The eyepiece may provide for an authentication process. For instance, the authentication facility may sense when a user has taken the eyepiece off, and require re-authentication when the user puts it back on. This better ensures that the eyepiece only provides access to those users that are authorized, and for only those privileges that the wearer is authorized for. In an example, the authentication facility may be able to detect the presence of a user's eye or head as the eyepiece is put on. In a first level of access, the user may only be able to access low-sensitivity items until authentication is complete. During authentication, the authentication facility may identify the user, and look up their access privileges. Once these privileges have been determined, the authentication facility may then provide the appropriate access to the user. In the case of an unauthorized user being detected, the eyepiece may maintain access to low-sensitivity items, further restrict access, deny access entirely, and the like.

[00289] In an embodiment, a receiver may be associated with an object to enable control of that object via touch by a wearer of the eyepiece, wherein touch enables transmission or execution of a command signal in the object. For example, a receiver may be associated with a car door lock. When a wearer of the eyepiece touches the car, the car door may unlock. In another example, a receiver may be embedded in a medicine bottle. When the wearer of the eyepiece touches the medicine bottle, an alarm signal may be initiated. In another example, a receiver may be associated with a wall along a sidewalk. As the wearer of the eyepiece passes the wall or touches the wall, advertising may be launched either in the eyepiece or on a video panel of the wall.

[00290] In an embodiment, when a wearer of the eyepiece initiates a physical contact, a WiFi exchange of information with a receiver may provide an indication that the wearer is connected to an online activity such as a game or may provide verification of identity in an online environment. In the embodiment, a representation of the person could change color or undergo some other visual indication in response to the contact. In embodiments, the eyepiece may include tactile interface as in Fig. 14, such as to enable haptic control of the eyepiece, such as with a swipe, tap, touch, press, click, roll of a

rollerball, and the like. For instance, the tactile interface 1402 may be mounted on the frame of the eyepiece, such as on an arm, both arms, the nosepiece, the top of the frame, the bottom of the frame, and the like. The wearer may then touch the tactile interface in a plurality of ways to be interpreted by the eyepiece as commands, such as by tapping one or multiple times on the interface, by brushing a finger across the interface, by pressing and holding, by pressing more than one interface at a time, and the like. In embodiments, the tactile interface may be attached to the wearer's body, their clothing, as an attachment to their clothing, as a ring 1500, as a bracelet, as a necklace, and the like. For example, the interface may be attached on the body, such as on the back of the wrist, where touching different parts of the interface provides different command information (e.g. touching the front portion, the back portion, the center, holding for a period of time, tapping, swiping, and the like). In another example, the wearer may have an interface mounted in a ring as shown in Fig. 15, a hand piece, and the like, where the interface may have at least one of a plurality of command interface types, such as a tactile interface, a position sensor device, and the like with wireless command connection to the eyepiece. In an embodiment, the ring 1500 may have controls that mirror a computer mouse, such as buttons 1504 (e.g. functioning as a one-button, multi-button, and like mouse functions), a 2D position control 1502, scroll wheel, and the like. The buttons 1504 and 2D position control 1502 may be as shown in Fig. 15, where the buttons are on the side facing the thumb and the 2D position controller is on the top. Alternately, the buttons and 2D position control may be in other configurations, such as all facing the thumb side, all on the top surface, or any other combination. The 2D position control 1502 may be a 2D button position controller (e.g. such as the TrackPoint pointing device embedded in some laptop keyboards to control the position of the mouse), a pointing stick, joystick, an optical track pad, an opto touch wheel, a touch screen, touch pad, track pad, scrolling track pad, trackball, any other position or pointing controller, and the like. In embodiments, control signals from the tactile interface (such as the ring tactile interface 1500) may be provided with a wired or wireless interface to the eyepiece, where the user is able to conveniently supply control inputs, such as with their hand, thumb, finger, and the like. For example, the user may be able to articulate the controls with their thumb, where the ring is worn on the user's index finger. In embodiments, a method or system

may provide an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, a processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated projector facility for projecting the content to the optical assembly, and a control device worn on a hand of the user, including at least one control component actuated by a digit of a hand of the user, and providing a control command from the actuation of the at least one control component to the processor as a command instruction. The command instruction may be directed to the manipulation of content for display to the user. The control device may be worn on a first digit of the hand of the user, and the at least one control component may be actuated by a second digit of a hand of the user. The first digit may be the index finger, the second digit the thumb, and the first and second digit on the same hand of the user. The control device may have at least one control component mounted on the index finger side facing the thumb. The at least one control component may be a button. The at least one control component may be a 2D position controller. The control device may have at least one button actuated control component mounted on the index finger side facing the thumb, and a 2D position controller actuated control component mounted on the top facing side of the index finger. The control components may be mounted on at least two digits of the user's hand. The control device may be worn as a glove on the hand of the user. The control device may be worn on the wrist of the user. The at least one control component may be worn on at least one digit of the hand, and a transmission facility may be worn separately on the hand. The transmission facility may be worn on the wrist. The transmission facility may be worn on the back of the hand. The control component may be at least one of a plurality of buttons. The at least one button may provide a function substantially similar to a conventional computer mouse button. Two of the plurality of buttons may function substantially similar to primary buttons of a conventional two-button computer mouse. The control component may be a scrolling wheel. The control component may be a 2D position control component. The 2D position control component may be a button position controller, pointing stick, joystick, optical track pad, opto-touch wheel, touch screen, touch pad, track pad, scrolling track pad, trackball, capacitive touch screen, and the like. The 2D position control component may be controlled with the user's thumb.

The control component may be a touch-screen capable of implementing touch controls including button-like functions and 2D manipulation functions. The control component may be actuated when the user puts on the projected processor content pointing and control device. A surface-sensing component in the control device for detecting motion across a surface may also be provided. The surface sensing component may be disposed on the palmar side of the user's hand. The surface may be at least one of a hard surface, a soft surface, surface of the user's skin, surface of the user's clothing, and the like. Providing control commands may be transmitted wirelessly, through a wired connection, and the like. The control device may control a pointing function associated with the displayed processor content. The pointing function may be control of a cursor position; selection of displayed content, selecting and moving displayed content; control of zoom, pan, field of view, size, position of displayed content; and the like. The control device may control a pointing function associated with the viewed surrounding environment. The pointing function may be placing a cursor on a viewed object in the surrounding environment. The viewed object's location position may be determined by the processor in association with a camera integrated with the eyepiece. The viewed object's identification may be determined by the processor in association with a camera integrated with the eyepiece. The control device may control a function of the eyepiece. The function may be associated with the displayed content. The function may be a mode control of the eyepiece. The control device may be foldable for ease of storage when not worn by the user. In embodiments, the control device may be used with external devices, such as to control the external device in association with the eyepiece. External devices may be entertainment equipment, audio equipment, portable electronic devices, navigation devices, weapons, automotive controls, and the like.

[00291] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; and a tactile control interface mounted on the eyepiece that accepts control inputs from

the user through at least one of a user touching the interface and the user being proximate to the interface.

[00292] In embodiments, control of the eyepiece, and especially control of a cursor associated with displayed content to the user, may be enabled through hand control, such as with a worn device 1500 as in Fig. 15, as a virtual computer mouse 1500A as in Fig. 15A, and the like. For instance, the worn device 1500 may transmit commands through physical interfaces (e.g. a button 1502, scroll wheel 1504), and the virtual computer mouse 1500A may be able interpret commands though detecting motion and actions of the user's thumb, fist, hand, and the like. In computing, a physical mouse is a pointing device that functions by detecting two-dimensional motion relative to its supporting surface. A physical mouse traditionally consists of an object held under one of the user's hands, with one or more buttons. It sometimes features other elements, such as "wheels", which allow the user to perform various system-dependent operations, or extra buttons or features that can add more control or dimensional input. The mouse's motion translates into the motion of a cursor on a display, which allows for fine control of a graphical user interface. In the case of the eyepiece, the user may be able to utilize a physical mouse, a virtual mouse, or combinations of the two. In embodiments, a virtual mouse may involve one or more sensors attached to the user's hand, such as on the thumb 1502A, finger 1504A, palm 1508A, wrist 1510A, and the like, where the eyepiece receives signals from the sensors and translates the received signals into motion of a cursor on the eyepiece display to the user. In embodiments, the signals may be received through an exterior interface, such as the tactile interface 1402, through a receiver on the interior of the eyepiece, at a secondary communications interface, on an associated physical mouse or worn interface, and the like. The virtual mouse may also include actuators or other output type elements attached to the user's hand, such as for haptic feedback to the user through vibration, force, electrical impulse, temperature, and the like. Sensors and actuators may be attached to the user's hand by way of a wrap, ring, pad, glove, and the like. As such, the eyepiece virtual mouse may allow the user to translate motions of the hand into motion of the cursor on the eyepiece display, where 'motions' may include slow movements, rapid motions, jerky motions, position, change in position, and the like, and may allow users to work in three dimensions, without the

need for a physical surface, and including some or all of the six degrees of freedom. Note that because the 'virtual mouse' may be associated with multiple portions of the hand, the virtual mouse may be implemented as multiple 'virtual mouse' controllers, or as a distributed controller across multiple control members of the hand. In embodiments, the eyepiece may provide for the use of a plurality of virtual mice, such as for one on each of the user's hands, one or more of the user's feet, and the like.

[00293] In embodiments, the eyepiece virtual mouse may need no physical surface to operate, and detect motion such as through sensors, such as one of a plurality of accelerometer types (e.g. tuning fork, piezoelectric, shear mode, strain mode, capacitive, thermal, resistive, electromechanical, resonant, magnetic, optical, acoustic, laser, three dimensional, and the like), and through the output signals of the sensor(s) determine the translational and angular displacement of the hand, or some portion of the hand. For instance, accelerometers may produce output signals of magnitudes proportional to the translational acceleration of the hand in the three directions. Pairs of accelerometers may be configured to detect rotational accelerations of the hand or portions of the hand. Translational velocity and displacement of the hand or portions of the hand may be determined by integrating the accelerometer output signals and the rotational velocity and displacement of the hand may be determined by integrating the difference between the output signals of the accelerometer pairs. Alternatively, other sensors may be utilized, such as ultrasound sensors, imagers, IR/RF, magnetometer, gyro magnetometer, and the like. As accelerometers, or other sensors, may be mounted on various portions of the hand, the eyepiece may be able to detect a plurality of movements of the hand, ranging from simple motions normally associated with computer mouse motion, to more highly complex motion, such as interpretation of complex hand motions in a simulation application. In embodiments, the user may require only a small translational or rotational action to have these actions translated to motions associated with user intended actions on the eyepiece projection to the user.

[00294] In embodiments, the virtual mouse may have physical switches associated with it to control the device, such as an on/off switch mounted on the hand, the eyepiece, or other part of the body. The virtual mouse may also have on/off control and the like through pre-defined motions or actions of the hand. For example, the operation

of the virtual mouse may be enabled through a rapid back and forth motion of the hand. In another example, the virtual mouse may be disabled through a motion of the hand past the eyepiece, such as in front of the eyepiece. In embodiments, the virtual mouse for the eyepiece may provide for the interpretation of a plurality of motions to operations normally associated with physical mouse control, and as such, familiar to the user without training, such as single clicking with a finger, double clicking, triple clicking, right clicking, left clicking, click and drag, combination clicking, roller wheel motion, and the like. In embodiments, the eyepiece may provide for gesture recognition, such as in interpreting hand gestures via mathematical algorithms.

[00295] In embodiments, gesture control recognition may be provided through technologies that utilize capacitive changes resulting from changes in the distance of a user's hand from a conductor element as part of the eyepiece's control system, and so would require no devices mounted on the user's hand. In embodiments, the conductor may be mounted as part of the eyepiece, such as on the arm or other portion of the frame, or as some external interface mounted on the user's body or clothing. For example, the conductor may be an antenna, where the control system behaves in a similar fashion to the touch-less musical instrument known as the theremin. The theremin uses the heterodyne principle to generate an audio signal, but in the case of the eyepiece, the signal may be used to generate a control input signal. The control circuitry may include a number of radio frequency oscillators, such as where one oscillator operates at a fixed frequency and another controlled by the user's hand, where the distance from the hand varies the input at the control antenna. In this technology, the user's hand acts as a grounded plate (the user's body being the connection to ground) of a variable capacitor in an L-C (inductance-capacitance) circuit, which is part of the oscillator and determines its frequency. In another example, the circuit may use a single oscillator, two pairs of heterodyne oscillators, and the like. In embodiments, there may be a plurality of different conductors used as control inputs. In embodiments, this type of control interface may be ideal for control inputs that vary across a range, such as a volume control, a zoom control, and the like. However, this type of control interface may also be used for more discrete control signals (e.g. on/off control) where a predetermined threshold determines the state change of the control input.

[00296] In embodiments, the eyepiece may interface with a physical remote control device, such as a wireless track pad mouse, hand held remote control, body mounted remote control, remote control mounted on the eyepiece, and the like. The remote control device may be mounted on an external piece of equipment, such as for personal use, gaming, professional use, military use, and the like. For example, the remote control may be mounted on a weapon for a soldier, such as mounted on a pistol grip, on a muzzle shroud, on a fore grip, and the like, providing remote control to the soldier without the need to remove their hands from the weapon. The remote control may be removably mounted to the eyepiece.

[00297] In embodiments, a remote control for the eyepiece may be activated and/or controlled through a proximity sensor. A proximity sensor may be a sensor able to detect the presence of nearby objects without any physical contact. For example, a proximity sensor may emit an electromagnetic or electrostatic field, or a beam of electromagnetic radiation (infrared, for instance), and look for changes in the field or return signal. The object being sensed is often referred to as the proximity sensor's target. Different proximity sensor targets may demand different sensors. For example, a capacitive or photoelectric sensor might be suitable for a plastic target; an inductive proximity sensor requires a metal target. Other examples of proximity sensor technologies include, capacitive displacement sensors, eddy-current, magnetic, photocell (reflective), laser, passive thermal infrared, passive optical, CCD, reflection of ionizing radiation, and the like. In embodiments, the proximity sensor may be integral to any of the control embodiments described herein, including physical remote controls, virtual mouse, interfaces mounted on the eyepiece, controls mounted on an external piece of equipment (e.g. a game controller, a weapon), and the like.

[00298] In embodiments, control of the eyepiece, and especially control of a cursor associated with displayed content to the user, may be enabled through the sensing of the motion of a facial feature, the tensing of a facial muscle, the clicking of the teeth, the motion of the jaw, and the like, of the user wearing the eyepiece through a facial actuation sensor 1502B. For instance, as shown in Fig. 15B, the eyepiece may have a facial actuation sensor as an extension from the eyepiece earphone assembly 1504B, from the arm 1508B of the eyepiece, and the like, where the facial actuation sensor may sense

a force, a vibration, and the like associated with the motion of a facial feature. The facial actuation sensor may also be mounted separate from the eyepiece assembly, such as part of a standalone earpiece, where the sensor output of the earpiece and the facial actuation sensor may be either transferred to the eyepiece by either wired or wireless communication (e.g. Bluetooth or other communications protocol known to the art). The facial actuation sensor may also be attached to around the ear, in the mouth, on the face, on the neck, and the like. The facial actuation sensor may also be comprised of a plurality of sensors, such as to optimize the sensed motion of different facial or interior motions or actions. In embodiments, the facial actuation sensor may detect motions and interpret them as commands, or the raw signals may be sent to the eyepiece for interpretation. Commands may be commands for the control of eyepiece functions, controls associated with a cursor or pointer as provided as part of the display of content to the user, and the like. For example, a user may click their teeth once or twice to indicate a single or double click, such as normally associated with the click of a computer mouse. In another example, the user may tense a facial muscle to indicate a command, such as a selection associated with the projected image. In embodiments, the facial actuation sensor may utilize noise reduction processing to minimize the background motions of the face, the head, and the like, such as through adaptive signal processing technologies. A voice activity sensor may also be utilized to reduce interference, such as from the user, from other individuals nearby, from surrounding environmental noise, and the like. In an example, the facial actuation sensor may also improve communications and eliminate noise by detecting vibrations in the cheek of the user during speech, such as with multiple microphones to identify the background noise and eliminate it through noise cancellation, volume augmentation, and the like.

[00299] In embodiments, the user of the eyepiece may be able to obtain information on some environmental feature, location, object, and the like, viewed through the eyepiece by raising their hand into the field of view of the eyepiece and pointing at the object or position. For instance, the pointing finger of the user may indicate an environmental feature, where the finger is not only in the view of the eyepiece but also in the view of an embedded camera. The system may now be able to correlate the position of the pointing finger with the location of the environmental feature as seen by the

camera. Additionally, the eyepiece may have position and orientation sensors, such as GPS and a magnetometer, to allow the system to know the location and line of sight of the user. From this, the system may be able to extrapolate the position information of the environmental feature, such as to provide the location information to the user, to overlay the position of the environmental information onto a 2D or 3D map, to further associate the established position information to correlate that position information to secondary information about that location (e.g. address, names of individuals at the address, name of a business at that location, coordinates of the location), and the like. Referring to Fig. 15C, in an example, the user is looking through the eyepiece 1502C and pointing with their hand 1504C at a house 1508C in their field of view, where an embedded camera 1510C has both the pointed hand 1504C and the house 1508C in its field of view. In this instance, the system is able to determine the location of the house 1508C and provide location information 1514C and a 3D map superimposed onto the user's view of the environment. In embodiments, the information associated with an environmental feature may be provided by an external facility, such as communicated with through a wireless communication connection, stored internal to the eyepiece, such as downloaded to the eyepiece for the current location, and the like.

[00300] In embodiments, the user may be able to control their view perspective relative to a 3D projected image, such as a 3D projected image associated with the external environment, a 3D projected image that has been stored and retrieved, a 3D displayed movie (such as downloaded for viewing), and the like. For instance, and referring again to Fig. 15C, the user may be able to change the view perspective of the 3D displayed image 1512C, such as by turning their head, and where the live external environment and the 3D displayed image stay together even as the user turns their head, moves their position, and the like. In this way, the eyepiece may be able to provide an augmented reality by overlaying information onto the user's viewed external environment, such as the overlaid 3D displayed map 1512C, the location information 1514C, and the like, where the displayed map, information, and the like, may change as the user's view changes. In another instance, with 3D movies or 3D converted movies, the perspective of the viewer may be changed to put the viewer 'into' the movie environment with some control of the viewing perspective, where the user may be able to

move their head around and have the view change in correspondence to the changed head position, where the user may be able to ‘walk into’ the image when they physically walk forward, have the perspective change as the user moves the gazing view of their eyes, and the like. In addition, additional image information may be provided, such as at the sides of the user’s view that could be accessed by turning the head.

[00301] Referring to Fig. 15D, in embodiments the user of the eyepiece 1502D may be able to use multiple hand/finger points from of their hand 1504D to define the field of view (FOV) 1508D of the camera 1510D relative to the see-thru view, such as for augmented reality applications. For instance, in the example shown, the user is utilizing their first finger and thumb to adjust the FOV 1508D of the camera 1510D of the eyepiece 1502D. The user may utilize other combinations to adjust the FOV 1508D, such as with combinations of fingers, fingers and thumb, combinations of fingers and thumbs from both hands, use of the palm(s), cupped hand(s), and the like. The use of multiple hand/finger points may enable the user to alter the FOV 1508 of the camera 1510D in much the same way as users of touch screens, where different points of the hand/finger establish points of the FOV to establish the desired view. In this instance however, there is no physical contact made between the user’s hand(s) and the eyepiece. Here, the camera may be commanded to associate portions of the user’s hand(s) to the establishing or changing of the FOV of the camera. The command may be any command type described herein, including and not limited to hand motions in the FOV of the camera, commands associated with physical interfaces on the eyepiece, commands associated with sensed motions near the eyepiece, commands received from a command interface on some portion of the user, and the like. The eyepiece may be able to recognize the finger/hand motions as the command, such as in some repetitive motion. In embodiments, the user may also utilize this technique to adjust some portion of the projected image, where the eyepiece relates the viewed image by the camera to some aspect of the projected image, such as the hand/finger points in view to the projected image of the user. For example, the user may be simultaneously viewing the external environment and a projected image, and the user utilizes this technique to change the projected viewing area, region, magnification, and the like. In embodiments, the user may perform a change of FOV for a plurality of reasons, including zooming in or out

from a viewed scene in the live environment, zoom in or out from a viewed portion of the projected image, to change the viewing area allocated to the projected image, to change the perspective view of the environment or projected image, and the like.

[00302] In embodiments the eyepiece may be able to determine where the user is gazing, or the motion of the user's eye, by tracking the eye through reflected light off the user's eye. This information may then be used to help correlate the user's line of sight with respect to the projected image, a camera view, the external environment, and the like, and used in control techniques as described herein. For instance, the user may gaze at a location on the projected image and make a selection, such as with an external remote control or with some detected eye movement (e.g. blinking). In an example of this technique, and referring to Fig. 15E, transmitted light 1508E, such as infrared light, may be reflected 1510E from the eye 1504E and sensed at the optical display 502 (e.g. with a camera or other optical sensor). The information may then be analyzed to extract eye rotation from changes in reflections. In embodiments, an eye tracking facility may use the corneal reflection and the center of the pupil as features to track over time; use reflections from the front of the cornea and the back of the lens as features to track; image features from inside the eye, such as the retinal blood vessels, and follow these features as the eye rotates; and the like. Alternatively, the eyepiece may use other techniques to track the motions of the eye, such as with components surrounding the eye, mounted in contact lenses on the eye, and the like. For instance, a special contact lens may be provided to the user with an embedded optical component, such as a mirror, magnetic field sensor, and the like, for measuring the motion of the eye. In another instance, electric potentials may be measured and monitored with electrodes placed around the eyes, utilizing the steady electric potential field from the eye as a dipole, such as with its positive pole at the cornea and its negative pole at the retina. In this instance, the electric signal may be derived using contact electrodes placed on the skin around the eye, on the frame of the eyepiece, and the like. If the eye moves from the centre position towards the periphery, the retina approaches one electrode while the cornea approaches the opposing one. This change in the orientation of the dipole and consequently the electric potential field results in a change in the measured signal. By analyzing these changes, eye movement can be tracked.

[00303] In embodiments, the eyepiece may have a plurality of modes of operation where control of the eyepiece is controlled at least in part by positions, shapes, motions of the hand, and the like. To provide this control the eyepiece may utilize hand recognition algorithms to detect the shape of the hand/fingers, and to then associate those hand configurations, possibly in combination with motions of the hand, as commands. Realistically, as there may be only a limited number of hand configurations and motions available to command the eyepiece, these hand configurations may need to be reused depending upon the mode of operation of the eyepiece. In embodiments, certain hand configurations or motions may be assigned for transitioning the eyepiece from one mode to the next, thereby allowing for the reuse of hand motions. For instance, and referring to Fig. 15F, the user's hand 1504F may be moved in view of a camera on the eyepiece, and the movement may then be interpreted as a different command depending upon the mode, such as a circular motion 1508F, a motion across the field of view 1510F, a back and forth motion 1512F, and the like. In a simplistic example, suppose there are two modes of operation, mode one for panning a view from the projected image and mode two for zooming the projected image. In this example the user may want to use a left-to-right finger-pointed hand motion to command a panning motion to the right. However, the user may also want to use a left-to-right finger-pointed hand motion to command a zooming of the image to greater magnification. To allow the dual use of this hand motion for both command types, the eyepiece may be configured to interpret the hand motion differently depending upon the mode the eyepiece is currently in, and where specific hand motions have been assigned for mode transitions. For instance, a clockwise rotational motion may indicate a transition from pan to zoom mode, and a counter-clockwise rotational motion may indicate a transition from zoom to pan mode. This example is meant to be illustrative and not limiting in anyway, where one skilled in the art will recognize how this general technique could be used to implement a variety of command/mode structures using the hand(s) and finger(s), such as hand-finger configurations-motions, two-hand configuration-motions, and the like.

[00304] In embodiments, a system may comprise an interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the

optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; and an integrated camera facility that images a gesture, wherein the integrated processor identifies and interprets the gesture as a command instruction. The control instruction may provide manipulation of the content for display, a command communicated to an external device, and the like.

[00305] In embodiments, control of the eyepiece may be enabled through eye movement, an action of the eye, and the like. For instance, there may be a camera on the eyepiece that views back to the wearer's eye(s), where eye movements or actions may be interpreted as command information, such as through blinking, repetitive blinking, blink count, blink rate, eye open-closed, gaze tracking, eye movements to the side, up and down, side to side, through a sequence of positions, to a specific position, dwell time in a position, gazing toward a fixed object (e.g. the corner of the lens of the eyepiece), through a certain portion of the lens, at a real-world object, and the like. In addition, eye control may enable the viewer to focus on a certain point on the displayed image from the eyepiece, and because the camera may be able to correlate the viewing direction of the eye to a point on the display, the eyepiece may be able to interpret commands through a combination of where the wearer is looking and an action by the wearer (e.g. blinking, touching an interface device, movement of a position sense device, and the like). For example, the viewer may be able to look at an object on the display, and select that object through the motion of a finger enabled through a position sense device.

[00306] In some embodiments, the glasses may be equipped with eye tracking devices for tracking movement of the user's eye, or preferably both eyes; alternatively, the glasses may be equipped with sensors for six-degree freedom of movement tracking, i.e., head movement tracking. These devices or sensors are available, for example, from Chronos Vision GmbH, Berlin, Germany and ISCAN, Woburn, MA. Retinal scanners are also available for tracking eye movement. Retinal scanners may also be mounted in the augmented reality glasses and are available from a variety of companies, such as Tobii, Stockholm, Sweden, and SMI, Teltow, Germany, and ISCAN.

[00307] The augmented reality eyepiece also includes a user input interface, as shown, to allow a user to control the device. Inputs used to control the device may include any of the sensors discussed above, and may also include a trackpad, one or more function keys and any other suitable local or remote device. For example, an eye tracking device may be used to control another device, such as a video game or external tracking device. As an example, Fig. 30 depicts a user with an augmented reality eyepiece equipped with an eye tracking device, discussed elsewhere in this document. The eye tracking device allows the eyepiece to track the direction of the user's eye or preferably, eyes, and send the movements to the controller of the eyepiece. Control system 3000 includes the augmented reality eyepiece and a control device for the weapon. The movements may then be transmitted to the control device for a weapon controlled by the control device, which may be within sight of the user. The weapon may be large caliber, such as a howitzer or mortar, or may small caliber, such as a machine gun.

[00308] The movement of the user's eyes is then converted by suitable software to signals for controlling movement of the weapon, such as quadrant (range) and azimuth (direction) of the weapon. Additional controls may be used for single or continuous discharges of the weapon, such as with the user's trackpad or function keys. Alternatively, the weapon may be stationary and non-directional, such as an implanted mine or shape charge, and may be protected by safety devices, such as by requiring specific encoded commands. The user of the augmented reality device may activate the weapon by transmitting the appropriate codes and commands, without using eye-tracking features.

[00309] In embodiments, control of the eyepiece may be enabled through gestures by the wearer. For instance, the eyepiece may have a camera that views outward (e.g. forward, to the side, down) and interprets gestures or movements of the hand of the wearer as control signals. Hand signals may include passing the hand past the camera, hand positions or sign language in front of the camera, pointing to a real-world object (such as to activate augmentation of the object), and the like. Hand motions may also be used to manipulate objects displayed on the inside of the translucent lens, such as moving an object, rotating an object, deleting an object, opening-closing a screen or window in

the image, and the like. Although hand motions have been used in the preceding examples, any portion of the body or object held or worn by the wearer may also be utilized for gesture recognition by the eyepiece.

[00310] In embodiments, head motion control may be used to send commands to the eyepiece, where motion sensors such as accelerometers, gyros, or any other sensor described herein, may be mounted on the wearer's head, on the eyepiece, in a hat, in a helmet, and the like. Referring to Fig. 14A, head motions may include quick motions of the head, such as jerking the head in a forward and/or backward motion 1412, in an up and/or down motion 1410, in a side to side motion as a nod, dwelling in a position, such as to the side, moving and holding in position, and the like. Motion sensors may be integrated into the eyepiece, mounted on the user's head or in a head covering (e.g. hat, helmet) by wired or wireless connection to the eyepiece, and the like. In embodiments, the user may wear the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, where the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may include a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. At least one of a plurality of head motion sensing control devices may be integrated or in association with the eyepiece that provide control commands to the processor as command instructions based upon sensing a predefined head motion characteristic. The head motion characteristic may be a nod of the user's head such that the nod is an overt motion dissimilar from ordinary head motions. The overt motion may be a jerking motion of the head. The control instructions may provide manipulation of the content for display, be communicated to control an external device, and the like. Head motion control may be used in combination with other control mechanisms, such as using another control mechanism as discussed herein to activate a command and for the head motion to execute it. For example, a wearer may want to move an object to the right, and through eye control, as discussed herein, select the object and activate head motion control. Then, by tipping their head to the right, the object may be commanded to move to the right, and the command terminated through eye control.

[00311] In embodiments, the eyepiece may be controlled through audio, such as through a microphone. Audio signals may include speech recognition, voice recognition, sound recognition, sound detection, and the like. Audio may be detected through a microphone on the eyepiece, a throat microphone, a jaw bone microphone, a boom microphone, a headphone, ear bud with microphone, and the like.

[00312] In embodiments, command inputs may provide for a plurality of control functions, such as turning on/off the eyepiece projector, turn on/off audio, turn on/off a camera, turn on/off augmented reality projection, turn on/off GPS, interaction with display (e.g. select / accept function displayed, replay of captured image or video, and the like), interaction with the real-world (e.g. capture image or video, turn a page of a displayed book, and the like), perform actions with an embedded or external mobile device (e.g. mobile phone, navigation device, music device, VoIP, and the like), browser controls for the Internet (e.g. submit, next result, and the like), email controls (e.g. read email, display text, text-to-speech, compose, select, and the like), GPS and navigation controls (e.g. save position, recall saved position, show directions, view location on map), and the like.

[00313] In embodiments, the eyepiece may provide 3D display imaging to the user, such as through conveying a stereoscopic, auto-stereoscopic, computer-generated holography, volumetric display image, stereograms / stereoscopes, view-sequential displays, electro-holographic displays, parallax "two view" displays and parallax panoramagrams, re-imaging systems, and the like, creating the perception of 3D depth to the viewer. Display of 3D images to the user may employ different images presented to the user's left and right eyes, such as where the left and right optical paths have some optical component that differentiates the image, where the projector facility is projecting different images to the user's left and right eye's, and the like. The optical path, including from the projector facility through the optical path to the user's eye, may include a graphical display device that forms a visual representation of an object in three physical dimensions. A processor, such as the integrated processor in the eyepiece or one in an external facility, may provide 3D image processing as at least a step in the generation of the 3D image to the user.

[00314] In embodiments, holographic projection technologies may be employed in the presentation of a 3D imaging effect to the user, such as computer-generated holography (CGH), a method of digitally generating holographic interference patterns. For instance, a holographic image may be projected by a holographic 3D display, such as a display that operates on the basis of interference of coherent light. Computer generated holograms have the advantage that the objects which one wants to show do not have to possess any physical reality at all, that is, they may be completely generated as a 'synthetic hologram'. There are a plurality of different methods for calculating the interference pattern for a CGH, including from the fields of holographic information and computational reduction as well as in computational and quantization techniques. For instance, the Fourier transform method and point source holograms are two examples of computational techniques. The Fourier transformation method may be used to simulate the propagation of each plane of depth of the object to the hologram plane, where the reconstruction of the image may occur in the far field. In an example process, there may be two steps, where first the light field in the far observer plane is calculated, and then the field is Fourier transformed back to the lens plane, where the wavefront to be reconstructed by the hologram is the superposition of the Fourier transforms of each object plane in depth. In another example, a target image may be multiplied by a phase pattern to which an inverse Fourier transform is applied. Intermediate holograms may then be generated by shifting this image product, and combined to create a final set. The final set of holograms may then be approximated to form kinoforms for sequential display to the user, where the kinoform is a phase hologram in which the phase modulation of the object wavefront is recorded as a surface-relief profile. In the point source hologram method the object is broken down in self-luminous points, where an elementary hologram is calculated for every point source and the final hologram is synthesized by superimposing all the elementary holograms.

[00315] In an embodiment, 3-D or holographic imagery may be enabled by a dual projector system where two projectors are stacked on top of each other for a 3D image output. Holographic projection mode may be entered by a control mechanism described herein or by capture of an image or signal, such as an outstretched hand with palm up, an SKU, an RFID reading, and the like. For example, a wearer of the eyepiece

may view a letter 'X' on a piece of cardboard which causes the eyepiece to enter holographic mode and turning on the second, stacked projector. Selecting what hologram to display may be done with a control technique. The projector may project the hologram onto the cardboard over the letter 'X'. Associated software may track the position of the letter 'X' and move the projected image along with the movement of the letter 'X'. In another example, the eyepiece may scan a SKU, such as a SKU on a toy construction kit, and a 3-D image of the completed toy construction may be accessed from an online source or non-volatile memory. Interaction with the hologram, such as rotating it, zooming in/out, and the like, may be done using the control mechanisms described herein. Scanning may be enabled by associated bar code / SKU scanning software. In another example, a keyboard may be projected in space or on a surface. The holographic keyboard may be used in or to control any of the associated applications / functions.

[00316] In embodiments, eyepiece facilities may provide for locking the position of a virtual keyboard down relative to a real environmental object (e.g. a table, a wall, a vehicle dashboard, and the like) where the virtual keyboard then does not move as the wearer moves their head. In an example, and referring to Fig. 24, the user may be sitting at a table and wearing the eyepiece 2402, and wish to input text into an application, such as a word processing application, a web browser, a communications application, and the like. The user may be able to bring up a virtual keyboard 2408, or other interactive control element (e.g. virtual mouse, calculator, touch screen, and the like), to use for input. The user may provide a command for bringing up the virtual keyboard 2408, and use a hand gesture 2404 for indicating the fixed location of the virtual keyboard 2408. The virtual keyboard 2408 may then remain fixed in space relative to the outside environment, such as fixed to a location on the table 2410, where the eyepiece facilities keep the location of the virtual keyboard 2408 on the table 2410 even when the user turns their head. That is, the eyepiece 2402 may compensate for the user's head motion in order to keep the user's view of the virtual keyboard 2408 located on the table 2410. In embodiments, the user may wear the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, where the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may include a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an

integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. An integrated camera facility may be provided that images the surrounding environment, and identifies a user hand gesture as an interactive control element location command, such as a hand-finger configuration moved in a certain way, positioned in a certain way, and the like. The location of the interactive control element then may remain fixed in position with respect to an object in the surrounding environment, in response to the interactive control element location command, regardless of a change in the viewing direction of the user. In this way, the user may be able to utilize a virtual keyboard in much the same way they would a physical keyboard, where the virtual keyboard remains in the same location. However, in the case of the virtual keyboard there are not 'physical limitations', such as gravity, to limit where the user may locate the keyboard. For instance, the user could be standing next to a wall, and place the keyboard location on the wall, and the like.

[00317] In embodiments, eyepiece facilities may provide for removing the portions of a virtual keyboard projection where intervening obstructions appear (e.g. the user's hand getting in the way, where it is not desired to project the keyboard onto the user's hand). In an example, and referring to Fig. 62, the eyepiece 6202 may provide a projected virtual keyboard 6208 to the wearer, such as onto a tabletop. The wearer may then reach 'over' the virtual keyboard 6208 to type. As the keyboard is merely a projected virtual keyboard, rather than a physical keyboard, without some sort of compensation to the projected image the projected virtual computer would be projected 'onto' the back of the user's hand. However, as in this example, the eyepiece may provide compensation to the projected image such that the portion of the wearer's hand 6204 that is obstructing the intended projection of the virtual keyboard onto the table may be removed from the projection. That is, it may not be desirable for portions of the keyboard projection 6208 to be visualized onto the user's hand, and so the eyepiece subtracts the portion of the virtual keyboard projection that is co-located with the wearer's hand 6204. In embodiments, the user may wear the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, where the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may include a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an

integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. The displayed content may include an interactive control element (e.g. virtual keyboard, virtual mouse, calculator, touch screen, and the like). An integrated camera facility may image a user's body part as it interacts with the interactive control element, wherein the processor removes a portion of the interactive control element by subtracting the portion of the interactive control element that is determined to be co-located with the imaged user body part based on the user's view. In embodiments, this technique of partial projected image removal may be applied to other projected images and obstructions, and is not meant to be restricted to this example of a hand over a virtual keyboard.

[00318] In embodiments, eyepiece facilities may provide for the ability to determine an intended text input from a sequence of character contacts swiped across a virtual keypad, such as with the finger, a stylus, and the like. For example, and referring to Fig. 63, the eyepiece may be projecting a virtual keyboard 6302, where the user wishes to input the word 'wind'. Normally, the user would discretely press the key positions for 'w', then 'i', then 'n', and finally 'd', and a facility (camera, accelerometer, and the like, such as described herein) associated with the eyepiece would interpret each position as being the letter for that position. However, the system may also be able to monitor the movement, or swipe, of the user's finger or other pointing device across the virtual keyboard and determine best fit matches for the pointer movement. In the figure, the pointer has started at the character 'w' and swept a path 6304 through the characters e, r, t, y, u, i, k, n, b, v, f, and d where it stops. The eyepiece may observe this sequence and determine the sequence through an input path analyzer, feed the sensed sequence into a word matching search facility, and output a best fit word, in this case 'wind' as text 6308. In embodiments, the eyepiece may provide the best-fit word, a listing of best-fit words, and the like. In embodiments, the user may wear the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, where the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may include a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. The displayed content may

comprise an interactive keyboard control element (e.g. a virtual keyboard, calculator, touch screen, and the like), and where the keyboard control element is associated with an input path analyzer, a word matching search facility, and a keyboard input interface. The user may input text by sliding a pointing device (e.g. a finger, a stylus, and the like) across character keys of the keyboard input interface in a sliding motion through an approximate sequence of a word the user would like to input as text, wherein the input path analyzer determines the characters contacted in the input path, the word matching facility finds a best word match to the sequence of characters contacted and inputs the best word match as input text.

[00319] In embodiments, eyepiece facilities may provide for presenting displayed content corresponding to an identified marker indicative of the intention to display the content. That is, the eyepiece may be commanded to display certain content based upon sensing a predetermined external visual cue. The visual cue may be an image, an icon, a picture, face recognition, a hand configuration, a body configuration, and the like. The displayed content may be an interface device that is brought up for use, a navigation aid to help the user find a location once they get to some travel location, an advertisement when the eyepiece views a target image, an informational profile, and the like. In embodiments, visual marker cues and their associated content for display may be stored in memory on the eyepiece, in an external computer storage facility and imported as needed (such as by geographic location, proximity to a trigger target, command by the user, and the like), generated by a third-party, and the like. In embodiments, the user may wear the interactive head-mounted eyepiece, where the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content. The optical assembly may include a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly. An integrated camera facility may be provided that images an external visual cue, wherein the integrated processor identifies and interprets the external visual cue as a command to display content associated with the visual cue. Referring to Fig. 64, in embodiments the visual cue 6412 may be included in a sign 6414 in the surrounding environment, where the projected content is associated with an advertisement. The sign

may be a billboard, and the advertisement for a personalized advertisement based on a preferences profile of the user. The visual cue 6402, 6410 may be a hand gesture, and the projected content a projected virtual keyboard 6404, 6408. For instance, the hand gesture may be a thumb and index finger gesture 6402 from a first user hand, and the virtual keyboard 6404 projected on the palm of the first user hand, and where the user is able to type on the virtual keyboard with a second user hand. The hand gesture 6410 may be a thumb and index finger gesture combination of both user hands, and the virtual keyboard 6408 projected between the user hands as configured in the hand gesture, where the user is able to type on the virtual keyboard using the thumbs of the user's hands. Visual cues may provide the wearer of the eyepiece with an automated resource for associating a predetermined external visual cue with a desired outcome in the way of projected content, thus freeing the wearer from searching for the cues themselves.

[00320] The eyepiece may be useful for various applications and markets. It should be understood that the control mechanisms described herein may be used to control the functions of the applications described herein. The eyepiece may run a single application at a time or multiple applications may run at a time. Switching between applications may be done with the control mechanisms described herein. The eyepiece may be used in military applications, gaming, image recognition applications, to view / order e-books, GPS Navigation (Position, Direction, Speed and ETA), Mobile TV, athletics (view pacing, ranking, and competition times; receive coaching), telemedicine, industrial inspection, aviation, shopping, inventory management tracking, firefighting (enabled by VIS/NIRSWIR sensor that sees through fog, haze, dark), outdoor / adventure, custom advertising, and the like. In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be used with e-mail, such as GMAIL in Fig. 7, the Internet, web browsing, viewing sports scores, video chat, and the like. In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be used for educational / training purposes, such as by displaying step by step guides, such as hands-free, wireless maintenance and repair instructions. For example, a video manual and/or instructions may be displayed in the field of view. In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be used in Fashion, Health, and Beauty. For example, potential outfits, hairstyles, or makeup may be projected onto a mirror image of a user. In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be used in Business Intelligence, Meetings, and Conferences. For example, a user's name tag can

be scanned, their face run through a facial recognition system, or their spoken name searched in database to obtain biographical information. Scanned name tags, faces, and conversations may be recorded for subsequent viewing or filing.

[00321] In an embodiment, a “Mode” may be entered by the eyepiece. In the mode, certain applications may be available. For example, a consumer version of the eyepiece may have a Tourist Mode, Educational Mode, Internet Mode, TV Mode, Gaming Mode, Exercise Mode, Stylist Mode, Personal Assistant Mode, and the like.

[00322] A user of the augmented reality glasses may wish to participate in video calling or video conferencing while wearing the glasses. Many computers, both desktop and laptop have integrated cameras to facilitate using video calling and conferencing. Typically, software applications are used to integrate use of the camera with calling or conferencing features. With the augmented reality glasses providing much of the functionality of laptops and other computing devices, many users may wish to utilize video calling and video conferencing while on the move wearing the augmented reality glasses.

[00323] In an embodiment, a video calling or video conferencing application may work with a WiFi connection, or may be part of a 3G or 4G calling network associated with a user’s cell phone. The camera for video calling or conferencing is placed on a device controller, such as a watch or other separate electronic computing device. Placing the video calling or conferencing camera on the augmented reality glasses is not feasible, as such placement would provide the user with a view only of themselves, and would not display the other participants in the conference or call. However, the user may choose to use the forward-facing camera to display their surroundings or another individual in the video call.

[00324] FIG. 58 depicts a typical camera 5800 for use in video calling or conferencing. Such cameras are typically small and could be mounted on a watch 5802, as shown in FIG. 58, cell phone or other portable computing device, including a laptop computer. Video calling works by connecting the device controller with the cell phone or other communications device. The devices utilize software compatible with the operating system of the glasses and the communications device or computing device. In an embodiment, the screen of the augmented reality glasses may display a list of options for

making the call and the user may gesture using a pointing control device or use any other control technique described herein to select the video calling option on the screen of the augmented reality glasses.

[00325] FIG. 59 illustrates an embodiment of a block diagram of a video calling camera 5900. The camera incorporates a lens 3302, a CCD/CMOS sensor 3304, analog to digital converters for video signals, 3306, and audio signals, 3314. Microphone 3312 collects audio input. Both analog to digital converters 3306 and 3314 send their output signals to a signal enhancement module 3308. The signal enhancement module 3308 forwards the enhanced signal, which is a composite of both video and audio signals to interface 3310. Interface 3310 is connected to an IEEE 1394 standard bus interface, along with a control module 3316.

[00326] In operation, the video call camera depends on the signal capture which transforms the incident light, as well as incident sound into electrons. For light this process is performed by CCD or CMOS chip 3304. The microphone transforms sound into electrical impulses.

[00327] The first step in the process of generating an image for a video call is to digitize the image. The CCD or CMOS chip 3304 dissects the image and converts it into pixels. If a pixel has collected many photons, the voltage will be high. If the pixel has collected few photons, the voltage will be low. This voltage is an analog value. During the second step of digitization, the voltage is transformed into a digital value by the analog to digital converter 3306, which handles image processing. At this point, a raw digital image is available.

[00328] Audio captured by the microphone 3312 is also transformed into a voltage. This voltage is sent to the analog to digital converter 3314 where the analog values are transformed into digital values.

[00329] The next step is to enhance the signal so that it may be sent to viewers of the video call or conference. Signal enhancement includes creating color in the image using a color filter, located in front of the CCD or CMOS chip 3304. This filter is red, green, or blue and changes its color from pixel to pixel, and in an embodiment, may be a color filter array, or Bayer filter. These raw digital images are then enhanced by the filter

to meet aesthetic requirements. Audio data may also be enhanced for a better calling experience.

[00330] In the final step before transmission, the image and audio data are compressed and output as a digital video stream, in an embodiment using a digital video camera. If a photo camera is used, single images may be output, and in a further embodiment, voice comments may be appended to the files. The enhancement of the raw digital data takes place away from the camera, and in an embodiment may occur in the device controller or computing device that the augmented reality glasses communicate with during a video call or conference.

[00331] Further embodiments may provide for portable cameras for use in industry, medicine, astronomy, microscopy, and other fields requiring specialized camera use. These cameras often forgo signal enhancement and output the raw digital image. These cameras may be mounted on other electronic devices or the user's hand for ease of use.

[00332] The camera interfaces to the augmented reality glasses and the device controller or computing device using an IEEE 1394 interface bus. This interface bus transmits time critical data, such as a video and data whose integrity is critically important, including parameters or files to manipulate data or transfer images.

[00333] In addition to the interface bus, protocols define the behavior of the devices associated with the video call or conference. The camera for use with the augmented reality glasses, may, in embodiments, employ one of the following protocols: AV/C, DCAM, or SBP-2.

[00334] AV/C is a protocol for Audio Video Control and defines the behavior of digital video devices, including video cameras and video recorders.

[00335] DCAM refers to the 1394 based Digital Camera Specification and defines the behavior of cameras that output uncompressed image data without audio.

[00336] SBP-2 refers to Serial Bus Protocol and defines the behavior of mass storage devices, such as hard drives or disks.

[00337] Devices that use the same protocol are able to communicate with each other. Thus, for video calling using the augmented reality glasses, the same protocol may be used by the video camera on the device controller and the augmented reality glasses.

Because the augmented reality glasses, device controller, and camera use the same protocol, data may be exchanged among these devices. Files that may be transferred among devices include: image and audio files, image and audio data flows, parameters to control the camera, and the like.

[00338] In an embodiment, a user desiring to initiate a video call may select a video call option from a screen presented when the call process is initiated. The user selects by making a gesture using a pointing device, or gesture to signal the selection of the video call option. The user then positions the camera located on the device controller, wristwatch, or other separable electronic device so that the user's image is captured by the camera. The image is processed through the process described above and is then streamed to the augmented reality glasses and the other participants for display to the users.

[00339] In embodiments, the camera may be mounted on a cell phone, personal digital assistant, wristwatch, pendant, or other small portable device capable of being carried, worn, or mounted. The images or video captured by the camera may be streamed to the eyepiece. For example, when a camera is mounted on a rifle, a wearer may be able to image targets not in the line of sight and wirelessly receive imagery as a stream of displayed content to the eyepiece.

[00340] In embodiments, the present disclosure may provide the wearer with GPS-based content reception, as in Fig. 6. As noted, augmented reality glasses of the present disclosure may include memory, a global positioning system, a compass or other orienting device, and a camera. GPS-based computer programs available to the wearer may include a number of applications typically available from the Apple Inc. App Store for iPhone use. Similar versions of these programs are available for other brands of Smartphone and may be applied to embodiments of the present disclosure. These programs include, for example, SREngine (scene recognition engine), NearestTube, TAT Augmented ID, Yelp, Layar, and TwittARound, as well as other more specialized applications, such as RealSki.

[00341] SREngine is a scene recognition engine that is able to identify objects viewed by the user's camera. It is a software engine able to recognize static scenes, such as scenes of architecture, structures, pictures, objects, rooms, and the like. It is then able

to automatically apply a virtual “label” to the structures or objects according to what it recognizes. For example, the program may be called up by a user of the present disclosure when viewing a street scene, such as Fig. 6. Using a camera of the augmented reality glasses, the engine will recognize the Fontaines de la Concorde in Paris. The program will then summon a virtual label, shown in Fig. 6 as part of a virtual image 618 projected onto the lens 602. The label may be text only, as seen at the bottom of the image 618. Other labels applicable to this scene may include “fountain,” “museum,” “hotel,” or the name of the columned building in the rear. Other programs of this type may include the Wikitude AR Travel Guide, Yelp and many others.

[00342] NearestTube, for example, uses the same technology to direct a user to the closest subway station in London, and other programs may perform the same function, or similar, in other cities. Layar is another application that uses the camera, a compass or direction, and GPS data to identify a user’s location and field of view. With this information, an overlay or label may appear virtually to help orient and guide the user. Yelp and Monocle perform similar functions, but their databases are somewhat more specialized, helping to direct users in a similar manner to restaurants or to other service providers.

[00343] The user may control the glasses, and call up these functions, using any of the controls described in this patent. For example, the glasses may be equipped with a microphone to pick up voice commands from a user and process them using software contained with a memory of the glasses. The user may then respond to prompts from small speakers or earbuds also contained within the glasses frame. The glasses may also be equipped with a tiny track pad, similar to those found on smartphones. The trackpad may allow a user to move a pointer or indicator on the virtual screen within the AR glasses, similar to a touch screen. When the user reaches a desired point on the screen, the user depresses the track pad to indicate his or her selection. Thus, a user may call up a program, e.g., a travel guide, and then find his or her way through several menus, perhaps selecting a country, a city and then a category. The category selections may include, for example, hotels, shopping, museums, restaurants, and so forth. The user makes his or her selections and is then guided by the AR program. In one embodiment,

the glasses also include a GPS locator, and the present country and city provides default locations that may be overridden.

[00344] In an embodiment, the eyepiece's object recognition software may process the images being received by the eyepiece's forward facing camera in order to determine what is in the field of view. In other embodiments, the GPS coordinates of the location as determined by the eyepiece's GPS may be enough to determine what is in the field of view. In other embodiments, an RFID or other beacon in the environment may be broadcasting a location. Any one or combination of the above may be used by the eyepiece to identify the location and the identity of what is in the field of view.

[00345] When an object is recognized, the resolution for imaging that object may be increased or images or video may be captured at low compression. Additionally, the resolution for other objects in the user's view may be decreased, or captured at a higher compression rate in order to decrease the needed bandwidth.

[00346] Once determined, content related to points of interest in the field of view may be overlaid on the real world image, such as social networking content, interactive tours, local information, and the like. Information and content related to movies, local information, weather, restaurants, restaurant availability, local events, local taxis, music, and the like may be accessed by the eyepiece and projected on to the lens of the eyepiece for the user to view and interact with. For example, as the user looks at the Eiffel Tower, the forward facing camera may take an image and send it for processing to the eyepiece's associated processor. Object recognition software may determine that the structure in the wearer's field of view is the Eiffel Tower. Alternatively, the GPS coordinates determined by the eyepiece's GPS may be searched in a database to determine that the coordinates match those of the Eiffel Tower. In any event, content may then be searched relating to the Eiffel Tower visitor's information, restaurants in the vicinity and in the Tower itself, local weather, local Metro information, local hotel information, other nearby tourist spots, and the like. Interacting with the content may be enabled by the control mechanisms described herein. In an embodiment, GPS-based content reception may be enabled when a Tourist Mode of the eyepiece is entered.

[00347] In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be used to view streaming video. For example, videos may be identified via search by GPS location, search by object

recognition of an object in the field of view, a voice search, a holographic keyboard search, and the like. Continuing with the example of the Eiffel Tower, a video database may be searched via the GPS coordinates of the Tower or by the term 'Eiffel Tower' once it has been determined that is the structure in the field of view. Search results may include geo-tagged videos or videos associated with the Eiffel Tower. The videos may be scrolled or flipped through using the control techniques described herein. Videos of interest may be played using the control techniques described herein. The video may be laid over the real world scene or may be displayed on the lens out of the field of view. In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be darkened via the mechanisms described herein to enable higher contrast viewing. In another example, the eyepiece may be able to utilize a camera and network connectivity, such as described herein, to provide the wearer with streaming video conferencing capabilities.

[00348] As noted, the user of augmented reality may receive content from an abundance of sources. A visitor or tourist may desire to limit the choices to local businesses or institutions; on the other hand, businesses seeking out visitors or tourists may wish to limit their offers or solicitations to persons who are in their area or location but who are visiting rather than local residents. Thus, in one embodiment, the visitor or tourist may limit his or her search only to local businesses, say those within certain geographic limits. These limits may be set via GPS criteria or by manually indicating a geographic restriction. For example, a person may require that sources of streaming content or ads be limited to those within a certain radius (a set number or km or miles) of the person. Alternatively, the criteria may require that the sources are limited to those within a certain city or province. These limits may be set by the augmented reality user just as a user of a computer at a home or office would limit his or her searches using a keyboard or a mouse; the entries for augmented reality users are simply made by voice, by hand motion, or other ways described elsewhere in the portions of this disclosure discussing controls.

[00349] In addition, the available content chosen by a user may be restricted or limited by the type of provider. For example, a user may restrict choices to those with a website operated by a government institution (.gov) or by a non-profit institution or organization (.org). In this way, a tourist or visitor who may be more interested in

visiting government offices, museums, historical sites and the like, may find his or her choices less cluttered. The person may be more easily able to make decisions when the available choices have been pared down to a more reasonable number. The ability to quickly cut down the available choices is desirable in more urban areas, such as Paris or Washington, D.C., where there are many choices.

[00350] The user controls the glasses in any of the manners or modes described elsewhere in this patent. For example, the user may call up a desired program or application by voice or by indicating a choice on the virtual screen of the augmented reality glasses. The augmented glasses may respond to a track pad mounted on the frame of the glasses, as described above. Alternatively, the glasses may be responsive to one or more motion or position sensors mounted on the frame. The signals from the sensors are then sent to a microprocessor or microcontroller within the glasses, the glasses also providing any needed signal transducing or processing. Once the program of choice has begun, the user makes selections and enters a response by any of the methods discussed herein, such as signaling “yes” or “no” with a head movement, a hand gesture, a trackpad depression, or a voice command.

[00351] At the same time, content providers, that is, advertisers, may also wish to restrict their offerings to persons who are within a certain geographic area, e.g., their city limits. At the same time, an advertiser, perhaps a museum, may not wish to offer content to local persons, but may wish to reach visitors or out-of-towners. The augmented reality devices discussed herein are desirably equipped with both GPS capability and telecommunications capability. It will be a simple matter for the museum to provide streaming content within a limited area by limiting its broadcast power. The museum, however, may provide the content through the Internet and its content may be available world-wide. In this instance, a user may receive content through an augmented reality device advising that the museum is open today and is available for touring.

[00352] The user may respond to the content by the augmented reality equivalent of clicking on a link for the museum. The augmented reality equivalent may be a voice indication, a hand or eye movement, or other sensory indication of the user's choice, or by using an associated body-mounted controller. The museum then receives a cookie indicating the identity of the user or at least the user's internet service provider

(ISP). If the cookie indicates or suggests an internet service provider other than local providers, the museum server may then respond with advertisements or offers tailored to visitors. The cookie may also include an indication of a telecommunications link, e.g., a telephone number. If the telephone number is not a local number, this is an additional clue that the person responding is a visitor. The museum or other institution may then follow up with the content desired or suggested by its marketing department.

[00353] Another application of the augmented reality eyepiece takes advantage of a user's ability to control the eyepiece and its tools with a minimum use of the user's hands, using instead voice commands, gestures or motions. As noted above, a user may call upon the augmented reality eyepiece to retrieve information. This information may already be stored in a memory of the eyepiece, but may instead be located remotely, such as a database accessible over the Internet or perhaps via an intranet which is accessible only to employees of a particular company or organization. The eyepiece may thus be compared to a computer or to a display screen which can be viewed and heard at an extremely close range and generally controlled with a minimal use of one's hands.

[00354] Applications may thus include providing information on-the-spot to a mechanic or electronics technician. The technician can don the glasses when seeking information about a particular structure or problem encountered, for example, when repairing an engine or a power supply. Using voice commands, he or she may then access the database and search within the database for particular information, such as manuals or other repair and maintenance documents. The desired information may thus be promptly accessed and applied with a minimum of effort, allowing the technician to more quickly perform the needed repair or maintenance and to return the equipment to service. For mission-critical equipment, such time savings may also save lives, in addition to saving repair or maintenance costs.

[00355] The information imparted may include repair manuals and the like, but may also include a full range of audio-visual information, i.e., the eyepiece screen may display to the technician or mechanic a video of how to perform a particular task at the same time the person is attempting to perform the task. The augmented reality device also includes telecommunications capabilities, so the technician also has the ability to call

on others to assist if there is some complication or unexpected difficulty with the task. This educational aspect of the present disclosure is not limited to maintenance and repair, but may be applied to any educational endeavor, such as secondary or post-secondary classes, continuing education courses or topics, seminars, and the like.

[00356] In an embodiment, a Wi-Fi enabled eyepiece may run a location-based application for geo-location of opted-in users. Users may opt-in by logging into the application on their phone and enabling broadcast of their location, or by enabling geo-location on their own eyepiece. As a wearer of the eyepiece scans people, and thus their opted-in device, the application may identify opted-in users and send an instruction to the projector to project an augmented reality indicator on an opted-in user in the user's field of view. For example, green rings may be placed around people who have opted-in to have their location seen. In another example, yellow rings may indicate people who have opted-in but don't meet some criteria, such as they do not have a FACEBOOK account, or that there are no mutual friends if they do have a FACEBOOK account.

[00357] Some social networking, career networking, and dating applications may work in concert with the location-based application. Software resident on the eyepiece may coordinate data from the networking and dating sites and the location-based application. For example, TwittARound is one such program which makes use of a mounted camera to detect and label location-stamped tweets from other tweeters nearby. This will enable a person using the present disclosure to locate other nearby Twitter users. Alternatively, users may have to set their devices to coordinate information from various networking and dating sites. For example, the wearer of the eyepiece may want to see all E-HARMONY users who are broadcasting their location. If an opted-in user is identified by the eyepiece, an augmented reality indicator may be laid over the opted-in user. The indicator may take on a different appearance if the user has something in common with the wearer, many things in common with the user, and the like. For example, and referring to Fig. 16, two people are being viewed by the wearer. Both of the people are identified as E-HARMONY users by the rings placed around them. However, the woman shown with solid rings has more than one item in common with the wearer while the woman shown with dotted rings has no items in common with the wearer. Any available profile information may get accessed and displayed to the user.

[00358] In an embodiment, when the wearer directs the eyepiece in the direction of a user who has a networking account, such as FACEBOOK, TWITTER, BLIPPY, LINKEDIN, GOOGLE, WIKIPEDIA, and the like, the user's recent posts or profile information may be displayed to the wearer. For example, recent status updates, "tweets", "blips", and the like may get displayed, as mentioned above for TwittARound. In an embodiment, when the wearer points the eyepiece in a target user's direction, they may indicate interest in the user if the eyepiece is pointed for a duration of time and/or a gesture, head, eye, or audio control is activated. The target user may receive an indication of interest on their phone or in their glasses. If the target user had marked the wearer as interesting but was waiting on the wearer to show interest first, an indication may immediately pop up in the eyepiece of the target user's interest. A control mechanism may be used to capture an image and store the target user's information on associated non-volatile memory or in an online account.

[00359] In other applications for social networking, a facial recognition program, such as TAT Augmented ID, from TAT – The Astonishing Tribe, Malmö, Sweden, may be used. Such a program may be used to identify a person by his or her facial characteristics. This software uses facial recognition software to identify a person. Using other applications, such as photo identifying software from Flickr, one can then identify the particular nearby person, and one can then download information from social networking sites with information about the person. This information may include the person's name and the profile the person has made available on sites such as Facebook, Twitter, and the like. This application may be used to refresh a user's memory of a person or to identify a nearby person, as well as to gather information about the person.

[00360] In other applications for social networking, the wearer may be able to utilize location-based facilities of the eyepiece to leave notes, comments, reviews, and the like, at locations, in association with people, places, products, and the like. For example, a person may be able to post a comment on a place they visited, where the posting may then be made available to others through the social network. In another example, a person may be able to post that comment at the location of the place such that the comment is available when another person comes to that location. In this way, a wearer may be able to access comments left by others when they come to the location. For

instance, a wearer may come to the entrance to a restaurant, and be able to access reviews for the restaurant, such as sorted by some criteria (e.g. most recent review, age of reviewer, and the like).

[00361] A user may initiate the desired program by voice, by selecting a choice from a virtual touchscreen, as described above, by using a trackpad to select and choose the desired program, or by any of the control techniques described herein. Menu selections may then be made in a similar or complementary manner. Sensors or input devices mounted in convenient locations on the user's body may also be used, e.g., sensors and a track pad mounted on a wrist pad, on a glove, or even a discreet device, perhaps of the size of a smart phone or a personal digital assistant.

[00362] Applications of the present disclosure may provide the wearer with Internet access, such as for browsing, searching, shopping, entertainment, and the like, such as through a wireless communications interface to the eyepiece. For instance, a wearer may initiate a web search with a control gesture, such as through a control facility worn on some portion of the wearer's body (e.g. on the hand, the head, the foot), on some component being used by the wearer (e.g. a personal computer, a smart phone, a music player), on a piece of furniture near the wearer (e.g. a chair, a desk, a table, a lamp), and the like, where the image of the web search is projected for viewing by the wearer through the eyepiece. The wearer may then view the search through the eyepiece and control web interaction through the control facility.

[00363] In an example, a user may be wearing an embodiment configured as a pair of glasses, with the projected image of an Internet web browser provided through the glasses while retaining the ability to simultaneously view at least portions of the surrounding real environment. In this instance, the user may be wearing a motion sensitive control facility on their hand, where the control facility may transmit relative motion of the user's hand to the eyepiece as control motions for web control, such as similar to that of a mouse in a conventional personal computer configuration. It is understood that the user would be enabled to perform web actions in a similar fashion to that of a conventional personal computer configuration. In this case, the image of the web search is provided through the eyepiece while control for selection of actions to carry out the search is provided through motions of the hand. For instance, the overall

motion of the hand may move a cursor within the projected image of the web search, the flick of the finger(s) may provide a selection action, and so forth. In this way, the wearer may be enabled to perform the desired web search, or any other Internet browser-enabled function, through an embodiment connected to the Internet. In one example, a user may have downloaded computer programs Yelp or Monocle, available from the App Store, or a similar product, such as NRU (“near you”), an application from Zagat to locate nearby restaurants or other stores, Google Earth, Wikipedia, or the like. The person may initiate a search, for example, for restaurants, or other providers of goods or services, such as hotels, repairmen, and the like, or information. When the desired information is found, locations are displayed or a distance and direction to a desired location is displayed. The display may take the form of a virtual label co-located with the real world object in the user’s view.

[00364] Other applications from Layar (Amsterdam, the Netherlands) include a variety of “layers” tailored for specific information desired by a user. A layer may include restaurant information, information about a specific company, real estate listings, gas stations, and so forth. Using the information provided in a software application, such as a mobile application and a user’s global positioning system (GPS), information may be presented on a screen of the glasses with tags having the desired information. Using the haptic controls or other control discussed elsewhere in this disclosure, a user may pivot or otherwise rotate his or her body and view buildings tagged with virtual tags containing information. If the user seeks restaurants, the screen will display restaurant information, such as name and location. If a user seeks a particular address, virtual tags will appear on buildings in the field of view of the wearer. The user may then make selections or choices by voice, by trackpad, by virtual touch screen, and so forth.

[00365] Applications of the present disclosure may provide a way for advertisements to be delivered to the wearer. For example, advertisements may be displayed to the viewer through the eyepiece as the viewer is going about his or her day, while browsing the Internet, conducting a web search, walking through a store, and the like. For instance, the user may be performing a web search, and through the web search the user is targeted with an advertisement. In this example, the advertisement may be projected in the same space as the projected web search, floating off to the side, above, or

below the view angle of the wearer. In another example, advertisements may be triggered for delivery to the eyepiece when some advertising providing facility, perhaps one in proximity to the wearer, senses the presence of the eyepiece (e.g. through a wireless connection, RFID, and the like), and directs the advertisement to the eyepiece.

[00366] For example, the wearer may be window-shopping in Manhattan, where stores are equipped with such advertising providing facilities. As the wearer walks by the stores, the advertising providing facilities may trigger the delivery of an advertisement to the wearer based on a known location of the user determined by an integrated location sensor of the eyepiece, such as a GPS. In an embodiment, the location of the user may be further refined via other integrated sensors, such as a magnetometer to enable hyperlocal augmented reality advertising. For example, a user on a ground floor of a mall may receive certain advertisements if the magnetometer and GPS readings place the user in front of a particular store. When the user goes up one flight in the mall, the GPS location may remain the same, but the magnetometer reading may indicate a change in elevation of the user and a new placement of the user in front of a different store. In embodiments, one may store personal profile information such that the advertising providing facility is able to better match advertisements to the needs of the wearer, the wearer may provide preferences for advertisements, the wearer may block at least some of the advertisements, and the like. The wearer may also be able to pass advertisements, and associated discounts, on to friends. The wearer may communicate them directly to friends that are in close proximity and enabled with their own eyepiece; they may also communicate them through a wireless Internet connection, such as to a social network of friends, though email, SMS, and the like. The wearer may be connected to facilities and/or infrastructure that enables the communication of advertisements from a sponsor to the wearer; feedback from the wearer to an advertisement facility, the sponsor of the advertisement, and the like; to other users, such as friends and family, or someone in proximity to the wearer; to a store, such as locally on the eyepiece or in a remote site, such as on the Internet or on a user's home computer; and the like. These interconnectivity facilities may include integrated facilities to the eyepiece to provide the user's location and gaze direction, such as through the use of GPS, 3-axis sensors, magnetometer, gyros, accelerometers, and the like, for determining direction, speed,

attitude (e.g. gaze direction) of the wearer. Interconnectivity facilities may provide telecommunications facilities, such as cellular link, a WiFi/MiFi bridge, and the like. For instance, the wearer may be able to communicate through an available WiFi link, through an integrated MiFi (or any other personal or group cellular link) to the cellular system, and the like. There may be facilities for the wearer to store advertisements for a later use. There may be facilities integrated with the wearer's eyepiece or located in local computer facilities that enable caching of advertisements, such as within a local area, where the cached advertisements may enable the delivery of the advertisements as the wearer nears the location associated with the advertisement. For example, local advertisements may be stored on a server that contains geo-located local advertisements and specials, and these advertisements may be delivered to the wearer individually as the wearer approaches a particular location, or a set of advertisements may be delivered to the wearer in bulk when the wearer enters a geographic area that is associated with the advertisements so that the advertisements are available when the user nears a particular location. The geographic location may be a city, a part of the city, a number of blocks, a single block, a street, a portion of the street, sidewalk, and the like, representing regional, local, hyper-local areas. Note that the preceding discussion uses the term advertisement, but one skilled in the art will appreciate that this can also mean an announcement, a broadcast, a circular, a commercial, a sponsored communication, an endorsement, a notice, a promotion, a bulletin, a message, and the like.

[00367] Figs. 18-20A depict ways to deliver custom messages to persons within a short distance of an establishment that wishes to send a message, such as a retail store. Referring to Fig. 18 now, embodiments may provide for a way to view custom billboards, such as when the wearer of the eyepiece is walking or driving, by applications as mentioned above for searching for providers of goods and services. As depicted in Fig. 18, the billboard 1800 shows an exemplary augmented reality-based advertisement displayed by a seller or a service provider. The exemplary advertisement, as depicted, may relate to an offer on drinks by a bar. For example, two drinks may be provided for the cost of just one drink. With such augmented reality-based advertisements and offers, the wearer's attention may be easily directed towards the billboards. The billboards may also provide details about location of the bar such as street address, floor number, phone

number, and the like. In accordance with other embodiments, several devices other than eyepiece may be utilized to view the billboards. These devices may include without limitations smartphones, IPHONES, IPADs, car windshields, user glasses, helmets, wristwatches, headphones, vehicle mounts, and the like. In accordance with an embodiment, a user (wearer in case the augmented reality technology is embedded in the eyepiece) may automatically receive offers or view a scene of the billboards as and when the user passes or drives by the road. In accordance with another embodiment, the user may receive offers or view the scene of the billboards based on his request.

[00368] FIG. 19 illustrates two exemplary roadside billboards 1900 containing offers and advertisements from sellers or service providers that may be viewed in the augmented reality manner. The augmented advertisement may provide a live and near-to-reality perception to the user or the wearer.

[00369] As illustrated in Fig. 20, the augmented reality enabled device such as the camera lens provided in the eyepiece may be utilized to receive and/or view graffiti 2000, slogans, drawings, and the like, that may be displayed on the roadside or on top, side, front of the buildings and shops. The roadside billboards and the graffiti may have a visual (e.g. a code, a shape) or wireless indicator that may link the advertisement, or advertisement database, to the billboard. When the wearer nears and views the billboard, a projection of the billboard advertisement may then be provided to the wearer. In embodiments, one may also store personal profile information such that the advertisements may better match the needs of the wearer, the wearer may provide preferences for advertisements, the wearer may block at least some of the advertisements, and the like. In embodiments, the eyepiece may have brightness and contrast control over the eyepiece projected area of the billboard so as to improve readability for the advertisement, such as in a bright outside environment.

[00370] In other embodiments, users may post information or messages on a particular location, based on its GPS location or other indicator of location, such as a magnetometer reading. The intended viewer is able to see the message when the viewer is within a certain distance of the location, as explained with Fig. 20A. In a first step 2001 of the method Fig. 20A, a user decides the location where the message is to be received by persons to whom the message is sent. The message is then posted 2003, to

be sent to the appropriate person or persons when the recipient is close to the intended “viewing area.” Location of the wearers of the augmented reality eyepiece is continuously updated 2005 by the GPS system which forms a part of the eyepiece. When the GPS system determines that the wearer is within a certain distance of the desired viewing area, e.g., 10 meters, the message is then sent 2007 to the viewer. In one embodiment, the message then appears as e-mail or a text message to the recipient, or if the recipient is wearing an eyepiece, the message may appear in the eyepiece. Because the message is sent to the person based on the person’s location, in one sense, the message may be displayed as “graffiti” on a building or feature at or near the specified location. Specific settings may be used to determine if all passersby to the “viewing area” can see the message or if only a specific person or group of people or devices with specific identifiers. For example, a soldier clearing a village may virtually mark a house as cleared by associating a message or identifier with the house, such as a big X marking the location of the house. The soldier may indicate that only other American soldiers may be able to receive the location-based content. When other American soldiers pass the house, they may receive an indication automatically, such as by seeing the virtual ‘X’ on the side of the house if they have an eyepiece or some other augmented reality-enabled device, or by receiving a message indicating that the house has been cleared. In another example, content related to safety applications may be streamed to the eyepiece, such as alerts, target identification, communications, and the like.

[00371] Embodiments may provide for a way to view information associated with products, such as in a store. Information may include nutritional information for food products, care instructions for clothing products, technical specifications for consumer electronics products, e-coupons, promotions, price comparisons with other like products, price comparisons with other stores, and the like. This information may be projected in relative position with the product, to the periphery of sight to the wearer, in relation to the store layout, and the like. The product may be identified visually through a SKU, a brand tag, and the like; transmitted by the product packaging, such as through an RFID tag on the product; transmitted by the store, such as based on the wearer’s position in the store, in relative position to the products; and the like. For example, a viewer may be walking through a clothing store, and as they walk are provided with information on

the clothes on the rack, where the information is provided through the product's RFID tag. In embodiments, the information may be delivered as a list of information, as a graphic representation, as audio and/or video presentation, and the like. In another example, the wearer may be food shopping, and advertisement providing facilities may be providing information to the wearer in association with products in the wearer's proximity, the wearer may be provided information when they pick up the product and view the brand, product name, SKU, and the like. In this way, the wearer may be provided a more informative environment in which to effectively shop.

[00372] One embodiment may allow a user to receive or share information about shopping or an urban area through the use of the augmented reality enabled devices such as the camera lens fitted in the eyepiece of exemplary sunglasses. These embodiments will use augmented reality (AR) software applications such as those mentioned above in conjunction with searching for providers of goods and services. In one scenario, the wearer of the eyepiece may walk down a street or a market for shopping purposes. Further, the user may activate various modes that may assist in defining user preferences for a particular scenario or environment. For example the user may enter navigation mode through which the wearer may be guided across the streets and the market for shopping of the preferred accessories and products. The mode may be selected and various directions may be given by the wearer through various methods such as through text commands, voice commands, and the like. In an embodiment, the wearer may give a voice command to select the navigation mode which may result in the augmented display in front of the wearer. The augmented information may depict information pertinent to the location of various shops and vendors in the market, offers in various shops and by various vendors, current happy hours, current date and time and the like. Various sorts of options may also be displayed to the wearer. The wearer may scroll the options and walk down the street guided through the navigation mode. Based on options provided, the wearer may select a place that suits him the best for shopping based on such as offers and discounts and the like. The wearer may give a voice command to navigate toward the place and the wearer may then be guided toward it. The wearer may also receive advertisements and offers automatically or based on request regarding current deals, promotions and events in the interested location such as a nearby

shopping store. The advertisements, deals and offers may appear in proximity of the wearer and options may be displayed for purchasing desired products based on the advertisements, deals and offers. The wearer may for example select a product and purchase it through a Google checkout. A message or an email may appear on the eyepiece, similar to the one depicted in FIG. 7, with information that the transaction for the purchase of the product has been completed. A product delivery status/information may also be displayed. The wearer may further convey or alert friends and relatives regarding the offers and events through social networking platforms and may also ask them to join.

[00373] In embodiments, the user may wear the head-mounted eyepiece wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user may view a surrounding environment and displayed content. The displayed content may comprise one or more local advertisements. The location of the eyepiece may be determined by an integrated location sensor and the local advertisement may have a relevance to the location of the eyepiece. By way of example, the user's location may be determined via GPS, RFID, manual input, and the like. Further, the user may be walking by a coffee shop, and based on the user's proximity to the shop, an advertisement, similar to that depicted in Fig. 19, showing the store's brand of coffee may appear in the user's field of view. The user may experience similar types of local advertisements as he or she moves about the surrounding environment.

[00374] In other embodiments, the eyepiece may contain a capacitive sensor capable of sensing whether the eyepiece is in contact with human skin. Such sensor or group of sensors may be placed on the eyepiece and or eyepiece arm in such a manner that allows detection of when the glasses are being worn by a user. In other embodiments, sensors may be used to determine whether the eyepiece is in a position such that they may be worn by a user, for example, when the earpiece is in the unfolded position. Furthermore, local advertisements may be sent only when the eyepiece is in contact with human skin, in a wearable position, a combination of the two, actually worn by the user and the like. In other embodiments, the local advertisement may be sent in response to the eyepiece being powered on or in response to the eyepiece being powered on and worn by the user and the like. By way of example, an advertiser may choose to only send local

advertisements when a user is in proximity to a particular establishment and when the user is actually wearing the glasses and they are powered on allowing the advertiser to target the advertisement to the user at the appropriate time.

[00375] In accordance with other embodiments, the local advertisement may be displayed to the user as a banner advertisement, two-dimensional graphic, text and the like. Further, the local advertisement may be associated with a physical aspect of the user's view of the surrounding environment. The local advertisement may also be displayed as an augmented reality advertisement wherein the advertisement is associated with a physical aspect of the surrounding environment. Such advertisement may be two or three-dimensional. By way of example, a local advertisement may be associated with a physical billboard as described further in Fig. 18 wherein the user's attention may be drawn to displayed content showing a beverage being poured from a billboard 1800 onto an actual building in the surrounding environment. The local advertisement may also contain sound that is displayed to the user through an earpiece, audio device or other means. Further, the local advertisement may be animated in embodiments. For example, the user may view the beverage flow from the billboard onto an adjacent building and, optionally, into the surrounding environment. Similarly, an advertisement may display any other type of motion as desired in the advertisement. Additionally, the local advertisement may be displayed as a three-dimensional object that may be associated with or interact with the surrounding environment. In embodiments where the advertisement is associated with an object in the user's view of the surrounding environment, the advertisement may remain associated with or in proximity to the object even as the user turns his head. For example, if an advertisement, such as the coffee cup as described in Fig. 19, is associated with a particular building, the coffee cup advertisement may remain associated with and in place over the building even as the user turns his head to look at another object in his environment.

[00376] In other embodiments, local advertisements may be displayed to the user based on a web search conducted by the user where the advertisement is displayed in the content of the web search results. For example, the user may search for "happy hour" as he is walking down the street, and in the content of the search results, a local advertisement may be displayed advertising a local bar's beer prices.

[00377] Further, the content of the local advertisement may be determined based on the user's personal information. The user's information may be made available to a web application, an advertising facility and the like. Further, a web application, advertising facility or the user's eyepiece may filter the advertising based on the user's personal information. Generally, for example, a user may store personal information about his likes and dislikes and such information may be used to direct advertising to the user's eyepiece. By way of specific example, the user may store data about his affinity for a local sports team, and as advertisements are made available, those advertisements with his favorite sports team may be given preference and pushed to the user. Similarly, a user's dislikes may be used to exclude certain advertisements from view. In various embodiments, the advertisements may be cached on a server where the advertisement may be accessed by at least one of an advertising facility, web application and eyepiece and displayed to the user.

[00378] In various embodiments, the user may interact with any type of local advertisement in numerous ways. The user may request additional information related to a local advertisement by making at least one action of an eye movement, body movement and other gesture. For example, if an advertisement is displayed to the user, he may wave his hand over the advertisement in his field of view or move his eyes over the advertisement in order to select the particular advertisement to receive more information relating to such advertisement. Moreover, the user may choose to ignore the advertisement by any movement or control technology described herein such as through an eye movement, body movement, other gesture and the like. Further, the user may chose to ignore the advertisement by allowing it to be ignored by default by not selecting the advertisement for further interaction within a given period of time. For example, if the user chooses not to gesture for more information from the advertisement within five seconds of the advertisement being displayed, the advertisement may be ignored by default and disappear from the users view. Furthermore, the user may select to not allow local advertisements to be displayed whereby said user selects such an option on a graphical user interface or by turning such feature off via a control on said eyepiece.

[00379] In other embodiments, the eyepiece may include an audio device. Accordingly, the displayed content may comprise a local advertisement and audio such

that the user is also able to hear a message or other sound effects as they relate to the local advertisement. By way of example, and referring again to Fig. 18, while the user sees the beer being poured, he will actually be able to hear an audio transmission corresponding to the actions in the advertisement. In this case, the user may hear the bottle open and then the sound of the liquid pouring out of the bottle and onto the rooftop. In yet other embodiments, a descriptive message may be played, and or general information may be given as part of the advertisement. In embodiments, any audio may be played as desired for the advertisement.

[00380] In accordance with another embodiment, social networking may be facilitated with the use of the augmented reality enabled devices such as a camera lens fitted in the eyepiece. This may be utilized to connect several users or other persons that may not have the augmented reality enabled device together who may share thoughts and ideas with each other. For instance, the wearer of the eyepiece may be sitting in a school campus along with other students. The wearer may connect with and send a message to a first student who may be present in a coffee shop. The wearer may ask the first student regarding persons interested in a particular subject such as environmental economics for example. As other students pass through the field of view of the wearer, the camera lens fitted inside the eyepiece may track and match the students to a networking database such as 'Google me' that may contain public profiles. Profiles of interested and relevant persons from the public database may appear and pop-up in front of the wearer on the eyepiece. Some of the profiles that may not be relevant may either be blocked or appear blocked to the user. The relevant profiles may be highlighted for quick reference of the wearer. The relevant profiles selected by the wearer may be interested in the subject environmental economics and the wearer may also connect with them. Further, they may also be connected with the first student. In this manner, a social network may be established by the wearer with the use of the eyepiece enabled with the feature of the augmented reality. The social networks managed by the wearer and the conversations therein may be saved for future reference.

[00381] The present disclosure may be applied in a real estate scenario with the use of the augmented reality enabled devices such as a camera lens fitted in an eyepiece. The wearer, in accordance with this embodiment, may want to get information about a

place in which the user may be present at a particular time such as during driving, walking, jogging and the like. The wearer may, for instance, want to understand residential benefits and loss in that place. He may also want to get detailed information about the facilities in that place. Therefore, the wearer may utilize a map such as a Google online map and recognize the real estate that may be available there for lease or purchase. As noted above, the user may receive information about real estate for sale or rent using mobile Internet applications such as Layar. In one such application, information about buildings within the user's field of view is projected onto the inside of the glasses for consideration by the user. Options may be displayed to the wearer on the eyepiece lens for scrolling, such as with a trackpad mounted on a frame of the glasses. The wearer may select and receive information about the selected option. The augmented reality enabled scenes of the selected options may be displayed to the wearer and the wearer may be able to view pictures and take a facility tour in the virtual environment. The wearer may further receive information about real estate agents and fix an appointment with one of those. An email notification or a call notification may also be received on the eyepiece for confirmation of the appointment. If the wearer finds the selected real estate of worth, a deal may be made and that may be purchased by the wearer.

[00382] In accordance with another embodiment, customized and sponsored tours and travels may be enhanced through the use of the augmented reality-enabled devices, such as a camera lens fitted in the eyepiece. For instance, the wearer (as a tourist) may arrive in a city such as Paris and wants to receive tourism and sightseeing related information about the place to accordingly plan his visit for the consecutive days during his stay. The wearer may put on his eyepiece or operate any other augmented reality enabled device and give a voice or text command regarding his request. The augmented reality enabled eyepiece may locate wearer position through geo-sensing techniques and decide tourism preferences of the wearer. The eyepiece may receive and display customized information based on the request of the wearer on a screen. The customized tourism information may include information about art galleries and museums, monuments and historical places, shopping complexes, entertainment and nightlife spots, restaurants and bars, most popular tourist destinations and

centers/attractions of tourism, most popular local/cultural/regional destinations and attractions, and the like without limitations. Based on user selection of one or more of these categories, the eyepiece may prompt the user with other questions such as time of stay, investment in tourism and the like. The wearer may respond through the voice command and in return receive customized tour information in an order as selected by the wearer. For example the wearer may give a priority to the art galleries over monuments. Accordingly, the information may be made available to the wearer. Further, a map may also appear in front of the wearer with different sets of tour options and with different priority rank such as:

Priority Rank 1: First tour Option (Champs Elyse, Louvre, Rodin, Museum, Famous Café)

Priority Rank 2: Second option

Priority Rank 3: Third Option

[00383] The wearer, for instance, may select the first option since it is ranked as highest in priority based on wearer indicated preferences. Advertisements related to sponsors may pop up right after selection. Subsequently, a virtual tour may begin in the augmented reality manner that may be very close to the real environment. The wearer may for example take a 30 seconds tour to a vacation special to the Atlantis Resort in the Bahamas. The virtual 3D tour may include a quick look at the rooms, beach, public spaces, parks, facilities, and the like. The wearer may also experience shopping facilities in the area and receive offers and discounts in those places and shops. At the end of the day, the wearer might have experienced a whole day tour sitting in his chamber or hotel. Finally, the wearer may decide and schedule his plan accordingly.

[00384] Another embodiment may allow information concerning auto repairs and maintenance services with the use of the augmented reality enabled devices such as a camera lens fitted in the eyepiece. The wearer may receive advertisements related to auto repair shops and dealers by sending a voice command for the request. The request may, for example include a requirement of oil change in the vehicle/car. The eyepiece may receive information from the repair shop and display to the wearer. The eyepiece may

pull up a 3D model of the wearer's vehicle and show the amount of oil left in the car through an augmented reality enabled scene/view. The eyepiece may show other relevant information also about the vehicle of the wearer such as maintenance requirements in other parts like brake pads. The wearer may see 3D view of the wearing brake pads and may be interested in getting those repaired or changed. Accordingly, the wearer may schedule an appointment with a vendor to fix the problem via using the integrated wireless communication capability of the eyepiece. The confirmation may be received through an email or an incoming call alert on the eyepiece camera lens.

[00385] In accordance with another embodiment, gift shopping may benefit through the use of the augmented reality enabled devices such as a camera lens fitted in the eyepiece. The wearer may post a request for a gift for some occasion through a text or voice command. The eyepiece may prompt the wearer to answer his preferences such as type of gifts, age group of the person to receive the gift, cost range of the gift and the like. Various options may be presented to the user based on the received preferences. For instance, the options presented to the wearer may be: Cookie basket, Wine and cheese basket, Chocolate assortment, Golfer's gift basket, and the like.

[00386] The available options may be scrolled by the wearer and the best fit option may be selected via the voice command or text command. For example, the wearer may select the Golfer's gift basket. A 3D view of the Golfer's gift basket along with a golf course may appear in front of the wearer. The virtual 3D view of the Golfer's gift basket and the golf course enabled through the augmented reality may be perceived very close to the real world environment. The wearer may finally respond to the address, location and other similar queries prompted through the eyepiece. A confirmation may then be received through an email or an incoming call alert on the eyepiece camera lens.

[00387] Another application that may appeal to users is mobile on-line gaming using the augmented reality glasses. These games may be computer video games, such as those furnished by Electronic Arts Mobile, UbiSoft and Activision Blizzard, e.g., World of Warcraft® (WoW). Just as games and recreational applications are played on computers at home (rather than computers at work), augmented reality glasses may also use gaming applications. The screen may appear on an inside of the glasses so that a user may observe the game and participate in the game. In addition, controls for playing the

game may be provided through a virtual game controller, such as a joystick, control module or mouse, described elsewhere herein. The game controller may include sensors or other output type elements attached to the user's hand, such as for feedback from the user through acceleration, vibration, force, electrical impulse, temperature, electric field sensing, and the like. Sensors and actuators may be attached to the user's hand by way of a wrap, ring, pad, glove, bracelet, and the like. As such, an eyepiece virtual mouse may allow the user to translate motions of the hand, wrist, and/or fingers into motions of the cursor on the eyepiece display, where "motions" may include slow movements, rapid motions, jerky motions, position, change in position, and the like, and may allow users to work in three dimensions, without the need for a physical surface, and including some or all of the six degrees of freedom.

[00388] As seen in Fig. 27, gaming applications may use both the internet and a GPS. In one embodiment, a game is downloaded from a customer database via a game provider, perhaps using their web services and the internet as shown, to a user computer or augmented reality glasses. At the same time, the glasses, which also have telecommunication capabilities, receive and send telecommunications and telemetry signals via a cellular tower and a satellite. Thus, an on-line gaming system has access to information about the user's location as well as the user's desired gaming activities.

[00389] Games may take advantage of this knowledge of the location of each player. For example, the games may build in features that use the player's location, via a GPS locator or magnetometer locator, to award points for reaching the location. The game may also send a message, e.g., display a clue, or a scene or images, when a player reaches a particular location. A message, for example, may be to go to a next destination, which is then provided to the player. Scenes or images may be provided as part of a struggle or an obstacle which must be overcome, or as an opportunity to earn game points. Thus, in one embodiment, augmented reality eyepieces or glasses may use the wearer's location to quicken and enliven computer-based video games.

[00390] One method of playing augmented reality games is depicted in Fig. 28. In this method, a user logs into a website whereby access to a game is permitted. The game is selected. In one example, the user may join a game, if multiple player games are available and desired; alternatively, the user may create a custom game, perhaps using

special roles the user desired. The game may be scheduled, and in some instances, players may select a particular time and place for the game, distribute directions to the site where the game will be played, etc. Later, the players meet and check into the game, with one or more players using the augmented reality glasses. Participants then play the game and if applicable, the game results and any statistics (scores of the players, game times, etc.) may be stored. Once the game has begun, the location may change for different players in the game, sending one player to one location and another player or players to a different location. The game may then have different scenarios for each player or group of players, based on their GPS or magnetometer-provided locations. Each player may also be sent different messages or images based on his or her role, his or her location, or both. Of course, each scenario may then lead to other situations, other interactions, directions to other locations, and so forth. In one sense, such a game mixes the reality of the player's location with the game in which the player is participating.

[00391] Games can range from simple games of the type that would be played in a palm of a player's hand, such as small, single player games. Alternatively, more complicated, multi-player games may also be played. In the former category are games such as SkySiege, AR Drone and Fire Fighter 360. In addition, multiplayer games are also easily envisioned. Since all players must log into the game, a particular game may be played by friends who log in and specify the other person or persons. The location of the players is also available, via GPS or other method. Sensors in the augmented reality glasses or in a game controller as described above, such as accelerometers, gyroscopes or even a magnetic compass, may also be used for orientation and game playing. An example is AR Invaders, available for iPhone applications from the App Store. Other games may be obtained from other vendors and for non-iPhone type systems, such as Layar, of Amsterdam and Paris SA, Paris, France, supplier of AR Drone, AR Flying Ace and AR Pursuit.

[00392] In embodiments, games may also be in 3D such that the user can experience 3D gaming. For example, when playing a 3D game, the user may view a virtual, augmented reality or other environment where the user is able to control his view perspective. The user may turn his head to view various aspects of the virtual environment or other environment. As such, when the user turns his head or makes other

movements, he may view the game environment as if he were actually in such environment. For example, the perspective of the user may be such that the user is put 'into' a 3D game environment with at least some control over the viewing perspective where the user may be able to move his head and have the view of the game environment change in correspondence to the changed head position. Further, the user may be able to 'walk into' the game when he physically walks forward, and have the perspective change as the user moves. Further, the perspective may also change as the user moves the gazing view of his eyes, and the like. Additional image information may be provided, such as at the sides of the user's view that could be accessed by turning the head.

[00393] In embodiments, the 3D game environment may be projected onto the lenses of the glasses or viewed by other means. Further, the lenses may be opaque or transparent. In embodiments, the 3D game image may be associated with and incorporate the external environment of the user such that the user may be able to turn his head and the 3D image and external environment stay together. Further, such 3D gaming image and external environment associations may change such that the 3D image associates with more than one object or more than one part of an object in the external environment at various instances such that it appears to the user that the 3D image is interacting with various aspects or objects of the actual environment. By way of example, the user may view a 3D game monster climb up a building or on to an automobile where such building or automobile is an actual object in the user's environment. In such a game, the user may interact with the monster as part of the 3D gaming experience. The actual environment around the user may be part of the 3D gaming experience. In embodiments where the lenses are transparent, the user may interact in a 3D gaming environment while moving about his or her actual environment. The 3D game may incorporate elements of the user's environment into the game, it may be wholly fabricated by the game, or it may be a mixture of both.

[00394] In embodiments, the 3D images may be associated with or generated by an augmented reality program, 3D game software and the like or by other means. In embodiments where augmented reality is employed for the purpose of 3D gaming, a 3D image may appear or be perceived by the user based on the user's location or other data. Such an augmented reality application may provide for the user to interact with such 3D

image or images to provide a 3D gaming environment when using the glasses. As the user changes his location, for example, play in the game may advance and various 3D elements of the game may become accessible or inaccessible to the viewer. By way of example, various 3D enemies of the user's game character may appear in the game based on the actual location of the user. The user may interact with or cause reactions from other users playing the game and or 3D elements associated with the other users playing the game. Such elements associated with users may include weapons, messages, currency, a 3D image of the user and the like. Based on a user's location or other data, he or she may encounter, view, or engage, by any means, other users and 3D elements associated with other users. In embodiments, 3D gaming may also be provided by software installed in or downloaded to the glasses where the user's location is or is not used.

[00395] In embodiments, the lenses may be opaque to provide the user with a virtual reality or other virtual 3D gaming experience where the user is 'put into' the game where the user's movements may change the viewing perspective of the 3D gaming environment for the user. The user may move through or explore the virtual environment through various body, head, and or eye movements, use of game controllers, one or more touch screens, or any of the control techniques described herein which may allow the user to navigate, manipulate, and interact with the 3D environment, and thereby play the 3D game.

[00396] In various embodiments, the user may navigate, interact with and manipulate the 3D game environment and experience 3D gaming via body, hand, finger, eye, or other movements, through the use of one or more wired or wireless controllers, one or more touch screens, any of the control techniques described herein, and the like.

[00397] In embodiments, internal and external facilities available to the eyepiece may provide for learning the behavior of a user of the eyepiece, and storing that learned behavior in a behavioral database to enable location-aware control, activity-aware control, predictive control, and the like. For example, a user may have events and/or tracking of actions recorded by the eyepiece, such as commands from the user, images sensed through a camera, GPS location of the user, sensor inputs over time, triggered actions by the user, communications to and from the user, user requests, web activity,

music listened to, directions requested, recommendations used or provided, and the like. This behavioral data may be stored in a behavioral database, such as tagged with a user identifier or autonomously. The eyepiece may collect this data in a learn mode, collection mode, and the like. The eyepiece may utilize past data taken by the user to inform or remind the user of what they did before, or alternatively, the eyepiece may utilize the data to predict what eyepiece functions and applications the user may need based on past collected experiences. In this way, the eyepiece may act as an automated assistant to the user, for example, launching applications at the usual time the user launches them, turning off augmented reality and the GPS when nearing a location or entering a building, streaming in music when the user enters the gym, and the like. Alternately, the learned behavior and/or actions of a plurality of eyepiece users may be autonomously stored in a collective behavior database, where learned behaviors amongst the plurality of users are available to individual users based on similar conditions. For example, a user may be visiting a city, and waiting for a train on a platform, and the eyepiece of the user accesses the collective behavior database to determine what other users have done while waiting for the train, such as getting directions, searching for points of interest, listening to certain music, looking up the train schedule, contacting the city website for travel information, connecting to social networking sites for entertainment in the area, and the like. In this way, the eyepiece may be able to provide the user with an automated assistant with the benefit of many different user experiences. In embodiments, the learned behavior may be used to develop preference profiles, recommendations, advertisement targeting, social network contacts, behavior profiles for the user or groups of users, and the like, for/to the user.

[00398] In an embodiment, the augmented reality eyepiece or glasses may include one or more acoustic sensors for detecting sound. An example is depicted above in Fig. 29. In one sense, acoustic sensors are similar to microphones, in that they detect sounds. Acoustic sensors typically have one or more frequency bandwidths at which they are more sensitive, and the sensors can thus be chosen for the intended application. Acoustic sensors are available from a variety of manufacturers and are available with appropriate transducers and other required circuitry. Manufacturers include ITT Electronic Systems, Salt Lake City, Utah, USA; Meggitt Sensing Systems, San Juan

Capistrano, CA, USA; and National Instruments, Austin, TX, USA. Suitable microphones include those which comprise a single microphone as well as those which comprise an array of microphones, or a microphone array.

[00399] Acoustic sensors may include those using micro electromechanical systems (MEMS) technology. Because of the very fine structure in a MEMS sensor, the sensor is extremely sensitive and typically has a wide range of sensitivity. MEMS sensors are typically made using semiconductor manufacturing techniques. An element of a typical MEMS accelerometer is a moving beam structure composed of two sets of fingers. One set is fixed to a solid ground plane on a substrate; the other set is attached to a known mass mounted on springs that can move in response to an applied acceleration. This applied acceleration changes the capacitance between the fixed and moving beam fingers. The result is a very sensitive sensor. Such sensors are made, for example, by STMicroelectronics, Austin, TX and Honeywell International, Morristown NJ, USA.

[00400] In addition to identification, sound capabilities of the augmented reality devices may also be applied to locating an origin of a sound. As is well known, at least two sound or acoustic sensors are needed to locate a sound. The acoustic sensor will be equipped with appropriate transducers and signal processing circuits, such as a digital signal processor, for interpreting the signal and accomplishing a desired goal. One application for sound locating sensors may be to determine the origin of sounds from within an emergency location, such as a burning building, an automobile accident, and the like. Emergency workers equipped with embodiments described herein may each have one or more than one acoustic sensors or microphones embedded within the frame. Of course, the sensors could also be worn on the person's clothing or even attached to the person. In any event, the signals are transmitted to the controller of the augmented reality eyepiece. The eyepiece or glasses are equipped with GPS technology and may also be equipped with direction-finding capabilities; alternatively, with two sensors per person, the microcontroller can determine a direction from which the noise originated.

[00401] If there are two or more firefighters, or other emergency responders, their location is known from their GPS capabilities. Either of the two, or a fire chief, or the control headquarters, then knows the position of two responders and the direction from each responder to the detected noise. The exact point of origin of the

noise can then be determined using known techniques and algorithms. See e.g., *Acoustic Vector-Sensor Beamforming and Capon Direction Estimation*, M. Hawkes and A. Nehorai, IEEE Transactions on Signal Processing, vol. 46, no. 9, Sept. 1998, at 2291-2304; see also *Cramér-Rao Bounds for Direction Finding by an Acoustic Vector Sensor Under Nonideal Gain-Phase Responses, Noncollocation or Nonorthogonal Orientation*, P.K. Tam and K.T. Wong, IEEE Sensors Journal, vol. 9, No. 8, August 2009, at 969-982. The techniques used may include timing differences (differences in time of arrival of the parameter sensed), acoustic velocity differences, and sound pressure differences. Of course, acoustic sensors typically measure levels of sound pressure (e.g., in decibels), and these other parameters may be used in appropriate types of acoustic sensors, including acoustic emission sensors and ultrasonic sensors or transducers.

[00402] The appropriate algorithms and all other necessary programming may be stored in the microcontroller of the eyepiece, or in memory accessible to the eyepiece. Using more than one responder, or several responders, a likely location may then be determined, and the responders can attempt to locate the person to be rescued. In other applications, responders may use these acoustic capabilities to determine the location of a person of interest to law enforcement. In still other applications, a number of people on maneuvers may encounter hostile fire, including direct fire (line of sight) or indirect fire (out of line of sight, including high angle fire). The same techniques described here may be used to estimate a location of the hostile fire. If there are several persons in the area, the estimation may be more accurate, especially if the persons are separated at least to some extent, over a wider area. This may be an effective tool to direct counter-battery or counter-mortar fire against hostiles. Direct fire may also be used if the target is sufficiently close.

[00403] An example using embodiments of the augmented reality eyepieces is depicted in Fig. 31. In this example, numerous soldiers are on patrol, each equipped with augmented reality eyepieces, and are alert for hostile fire. The sounds detected by their acoustic sensors or microphones may be relayed to a squad vehicle as shown, to their platoon leader, or to a remote tactical operations center (TOC) or command post (CP). Alternatively, or in addition to these, the signals may also be sent to a mobile device, such as an airborne platform, as shown. Communications among the soldiers and the

additional locations may be facilitated using a local area network, or other network. In addition, all the transmitted signals may be protected by encryption or other protective measures. One or more of the squad vehicle, the platoon commander, the mobile platform, the TOC or the CP will have an integration capability for combining the inputs from the several soldiers and determining a possible location of the hostile fire. The signals from each soldier will include the location of the soldier from a GPS capability inherent in the augmented reality glasses or eyepiece. The acoustic sensors on each soldier may indicate a possible direction of the noise. Using signals from several soldiers, the direction and possibly the location of the hostile fire may be determined. The soldiers may then neutralize the location.

[00404] In addition to microphones, the augmented reality eyepiece may be equipped with ear buds, which may be articulating ear buds, as mentioned else where herein, and may be removably attached 1403, or may be equipped with an audio output jack 1401. The eyepiece and ear buds may be equipped to deliver noise-cancelling interference, allowing the user to better hear sounds delivered from the audio-video communications capabilities of the augmented reality eyepiece or glasses and may feature automatic gain control. The speakers or ear buds of the augmented reality eyepiece may also connect with the full audio and visual capabilities of the device, with the ability to deliver high quality and clear sound from the included telecommunications device. As noted elsewhere herein, this includes radio or cellular telephone (smart phone) audio capabilities, and may also include complementary technologies, such as Bluetooth™ capabilities or related technologies, such as IEEE 802.11, for wireless personal area networks (WPAN).

[00405] Another aspect of the augmented audio capabilities includes speech recognition and identification capabilities. Speech recognition concerns understanding what is said while speech identification concerns understanding who the speaker is. Speech identification may work hand in hand with the facial recognition capabilities of these devices to more positively identify persons of interest. As described elsewhere in this document, a camera connected as part of the augmented reality eyepiece can unobtrusively focus on desired personnel, such as a single person in a crowd or multiple faces in a crowd. Using the camera and appropriate facial recognition software, an image

of the person or people may be taken. The features of the image are then broken down into any number of measurements and statistics, and the results are compared to a database of known persons. An identity may then be made. In the same manner, a voice or voice sampling from the person of interest may be taken. The sample may be marked or tagged, e.g., at a particular time interval, and labeled, e.g., a description of the person's physical characteristics or a number. The voice sample may be compared to a database of known persons, and if the person's voice matches, then an identification may be made.

[00406] In embodiments where the camera is used for biometric identification of multiple people in a crowd, control technologies described herein may be used to select faces or irises for imaging. For example, a cursor selection using the hand-worn control device may be used to select multiple faces in a view of the user's surrounding environment. In another example, gaze tracking may be used to select which faces to select for biometric identification. In another example, the hand-worn control device may sense a gesture used to select the individuals, such as pointing at each individual.

[00407] In one embodiment, important characteristics of a particular person's speech may be understood from a sample or from many samples of the person's voice. The samples are typically broken into segments, frames and subframes. Typically, important characteristics include a fundamental frequency of the person's voice, energy, formants, speaking rate, and the like. These characteristics are analyzed by software which analyses the voice according to certain formulae or algorithms. This field is constantly changing and improving. However, currently such classifiers may include algorithms such as neural network classifiers, k-classifiers, hidden Markov models, Gaussian mixture models and pattern matching algorithms, among others.

[00408] A general template 3200 for speech recognition and speaker identification is depicted in Fig. 32. A first step 3201 is to provide a speech signal. Ideally, one has a known sample from prior encounters with which to compare the signal. The signal is then digitized in step 3202 and is partitioned in step 3203 into fragments, such as segments, frames and subframes. Features and statistics of the speech sample are then generated and extracted in step 3204. The classifier, or more than one classifier, is then applied in step 3205 to determine general classifications of the sample. Post-processing of the sample may then be applied in step 3206, e.g., to compare the sample to

known samples for possible matching and identification. The results may then be output in step 3207. The output may be directed to the person requesting the matching, and may also be recorded and sent to other persons and to one or more databases.

[00409] In an embodiment, the audio capabilities of the eyepiece include hearing protection with the associated earbuds. The audio processor of the eyepiece may enable automatic noise suppression, such as if a loud noise is detected near the wearer's head. Any of the control technologies described herein may be used with automatic noise suppression.

[00410] In an embodiment, the eyepiece may include a nitinol head strap. The head strap may be a thin band of curved metal which may either pull out from the arms of the eyepiece or rotate out and extend out to behind the head to secure the eyepiece to the head. In one embodiment, the tip of the nitinol strap may have a silicone cover such that the silicone cover is grasped to pull out from the ends of the arms. In embodiments, only one arm has a nitinol band, and it gets secured to the other arm to form a strap. In other embodiments, both arms have a nitinol band and both sides get pulled out to either get joined to form a strap or independently grasp a portion of the head to secure the eyepiece on the wearer's head.

[00411] Referring to Fig. 21, the eyepiece may include one or more adjustable wrap around extendable arms 2134. The adjustable wrap around extendable arms 2134 may secure the position of the eyepiece to the user's head. One or more of the extendable arms 2134 may be made out of a shape memory material. In embodiments, one or both of the arms may be made of nitinol and/or any shape-memory material. In other instances, the end of at least one of the wrap around extendable arms 2134 may be covered with silicone. Further, the adjustable wrap around extendable arms 2134 may extend from the end of an eyepiece arm 2116. They may extend telescopically and/or they may slide out from an end of the eyepiece arms. They may slide out from the interior of the eyepiece arms 2116 or they may slide along an exterior surface of the eyepiece arms 2116. Further, the extendable arms 2134 may meet and secure to each other. The extendable arms may also attach to another portion of the head mounted eyepiece to create a means for securing the eyepiece to the user's head. The wrap around extendable arms 2134 may meet to secure to each other, interlock, connect, magnetically couple, or secure by other

means so as to provide a secure attachment to the user's head. In embodiments, the adjustable wrap around extendable arms 2134 may also be independently adjusted to attach to or grasp portions of the user's head. As such the independently adjustable arms may allow the user increased customizability for a personalized fit to secure the eyepiece to the user's head. Further, in embodiments, at least one of the wrap around extendable arms 2134 may be detachable from the head mounted eyepiece. In yet other embodiments, the wrap around extendable arms 2134 may be an add-on feature of the head mounted eyepiece. In such instances, the user may chose to put extendable, non-extendable or other arms on to the head mounted eyepiece. For example, the arms may be sold as a kit or part of a kit that allows the user to customize the eyepiece to his or her specific preferences. Accordingly, the user may customize that type of material from which the adjustable wrap around extendable arm 2134 is made by selecting a different kit with specific extendable arms suited to his preferences. Accordingly, the user may customize his eyepiece for his particular needs and preferences.

[00412] In yet other embodiments, an adjustable strap, 2142, may be attached to the eyepiece arms such that it extends around the back of the user's head in order to secure the eyepiece in place. The strap may be adjusted to a proper fit. It may be made out of any suitable material, including but not limited to rubber, silicone, plastic, cotton and the like.

[00413] In an embodiment, the eyepiece may include security features, such as M-Shield Security, Secure content, DSM, Secure Runtime, IPSec, and the like. Other software features may include: User Interface, Apps, Framework, BSP, Codecs, Integration, Testing, System Validation, and the like.

[00414] In an embodiment, the eyepiece materials may be chosen to enable ruggedization.

[00415] In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be able to access a 3G access point that includes a 3G radio, an 802.11b connection and a Bluetooth connection to enable hopping data from a device to a 3G-enable embodiment of the eyepiece.

[00416] The present disclosure also relates to methods and apparatus for the capture of biometric data about individuals. The methods and apparatus provide wireless capture of fingerprints, iris patterns, facial structure and other unique biometric features

of individuals and then send the data to a network or directly to the eyepiece. Data collected from an individual may also be compared with previously collected data and used to identify a particular individual.

[00417] A further embodiment of the eyepiece may be used to provide biometric data collection and result reporting. Biometric data may be visual biometric data, such as facial biometric data or iris biometric data, or may be audio biometric data. Fig. 66 depicts an embodiment providing biometric data capture. The assembly, 6600 incorporates the eyepiece 100, discussed above in connection with Fig. 1. Eyepiece 100 provides an interactive head-mounted eyepiece that includes an optical assembly. Other eyepieces providing similar functionality may also be used. Eyepieces may also incorporate global positioning system capability to permit location information display and reporting.

[00418] The optical assembly allows a user to view the surrounding environment, including individuals in the vicinity of the wearer. An embodiment of the eyepiece allows a user to biometrically identify nearby individuals using facial images and iris images or both facial and iris images or audio samples. The eyepiece incorporates a corrective element that corrects a user's view of the surrounding environment and also displays content provided to the user through an integrated processor and image source. The integrated image source introduces the content to be displayed to the user to the optical assembly.

[00419] The eyepiece also includes an optical sensor for capturing biometric data. The integrated optical sensor, in an embodiment may incorporate a camera mounted on the eyepiece. This camera is used to capture biometric images of an individual near the user of the eyepiece. The user directs the optical sensor or the camera toward a nearby individual by positioning the eyepiece in the appropriate direction, which may be done just by looking at the individual. The user may select whether to capture one or more of a facial image, an iris image, or an audio sample.

[00420] The biometric data that may be captured by the eyepiece illustrated in Fig. 66 includes facial images for facial recognition, iris images for iris recognition, and audio samples for voice identification. The eyepiece 100 incorporates multiple microphones 6602 in an endfire array disposed along both the right and left temples of

the eyepiece 100. The microphone arrays 6602 are specifically tuned to enable capture of human voices in an environment with a high level of ambient noise. Microphones 6602 provide selectable options for improved audio capture, including omni-directional operation, or directional beam operation. Directional beam operation allows a user to record audio samples from a specific individual by steering the microphone array in the direction of the subject individual.

[00421] Audio biometric capture is enhanced by incorporating phased array audio and video tracking for audio and video capture. Audio tracking allows for continuing to capture an audio sample when the target individual is moving in an environment with other noise sources.

[00422] To provide power for the display optics and biometric data collection the eyepiece 100 also incorporates a lithium-ion battery 6604, that is capable of operating for over twelve hours on a single charge. In addition, the eyepiece 100 also incorporates a processor and solid-state memory 6606 for processing the captured biometric data. The processor and memory are configurable to function with any software or algorithm used as part of a biometric capture protocol or format, such as the .wav format.

[00423] A further embodiment of the eyepiece assembly 6600 provides an integrated communications facility that transmits the captured biometric data to a remote facility that stores the biometric data in a biometric data database. The biometric data database interprets the captured biometric data, interprets the data, and prepares content for display on the eyepiece.

[00424] In operation, a wearer of the eyepiece desiring to capture biometric data from a nearby observed individual positions himself or herself so that the individual appears in the field of view of the eyepiece. Once in position the user initiates capture of biometric information. Biometric information that may be captured includes iris images, facial images, and audio data.

[00425] In operation, a wearer of the eyepiece desiring to capture audio biometric data from a nearby observed individual positions himself or herself so that the individual appears is near the eyepiece, specifically, near the microphone arrays located in the eyepiece temples. Once in position the user initiates capture of audio biometric information. This audio biometric information consists of a recorded sample of the target

individual speaking. Audio samples may be captured in conjunction with visual biometric data, such as iris and facial images.

[00426] To capture an iris image, the wearer/user observes the desired individual and positions the eyepiece such that the optical sensor assembly or camera may collect an image of the biometric parameters of the desired individual. Once captured the eyepiece processor and solid-state memory prepare the captured image for transmission to the remote computing facility for further processing.

[00427] The remote computing facility receives the transmitted biometric image and compares the transmitted image to previously captured biometric data of the same type. Iris or facial images are compared with previously collected iris or facial images to determine if the individual has been previously encountered and identified.

[00428] Once the comparison has been made, the remote computing facility transmits a report of the comparison to the wearer/user's eyepiece, for display. The report may indicate that the captured biometric image matches previously captured images. In such cases, the user receives a report including the identity of the individual, along with other identifying information or statistics. Not all captured biometric data allows for an unambiguous determination of identity. In such cases, the remote computing facility provides a report of findings and may request the user to collect additional biometric data, possibly of a different type, to aid in the identification and comparison process. Visual biometric data may be supplemented with audio biometric data as a further aid to identification.

[00429] Facial images are captured in a similar manner as iris images. The field of view is necessarily larger, due to the size of the images collected. This also permits to user to stand further off from the subject whose facial biometric data is being captured.

[00430] In operation the user may have originally captured a facial image of the individual. However, the facial image may be incomplete or inconclusive because the individual may be wearing clothing or other apparel, such as a hat, that obscures facial features. In such a case, the remote computing facility may request that a different type of biometric capture be used and additional images or data be transmitted. In the case described above, the user may be directed to obtain an iris image to supplement the

captured facial image. In other instances, the additional requested data may be an audio sample of the individual's voice.

[00431] Fig. 67 illustrates capturing an iris image for iris recognition. The figure illustrates the focus parameters used to analyze the image and includes a geographical location of the individual at the time of biometric data capture. Fig. 67 also depicts a sample report that is displayed on the eyepiece.

[00432] Fig. 68 illustrates capture of multiple types of biometric data, in this instance, facial and iris images. The capture may be done at the same time, or by request of the remote computing facility if a first type of biometric data leads to an inconclusive result.

[00433] Fig. 69 shows the electrical configuration of the multiple microphone arrays contained in the temples of the eyepiece of Fig. 66. The endfire microphone arrays allow for greater discrimination of signals and better directionality at a greater distance. Signal processing is improved by incorporating a delay into the transmission line of the back microphone. The use of dual omni-directional microphones enables switching from an omni-directional microphone to a directional microphone. This allows for better direction finding for audio capture of a desired individual. Fig. 70 illustrates the directionality improvements available with multiple microphones.

[00434] The multiple microphones may be arranged in a composite microphone array. Instead of using one standard high quality microphone to capture an audio sample, the eyepiece temple pieces house multiple microphones of different character. One example of multiple microphone use uses microphones from cut off cell phones to reproduce the exact electrical and acoustic properties of the individual's voice. This sample is stored for future comparison in a database. If the individual's voice is later captured, the earlier sample is available for comparison, and will be reported to the eyepiece user, as the acoustic properties of the two samples will match.

[00435] Fig. 71 shows the use of adaptive arrays to improve audio data capture. By modifying pre-existing algorithms for audio processing adaptive arrays can be created that allow the user to steer the directionality of the antenna in three dimensions. Adaptive array processing permits location of the source of the speech, thus tying the captured audio data to a specific individual. Array processing permits simple summing of the

cardioid elements of the signal to be done either digitally or using analog techniques. In normal use, a user should switch the microphone between the omni-directional pattern and the directional array. The processor allows for beamforming, array steering and adaptive array processing, to be performed on the eyepiece.

[00436] In an embodiment, the integrated camera may continuously record a video file, and the integrated microphone may continuously record an audio file. The integrated processor of the eyepiece may enable event tagging in long sections of the continuous audio or video recording. For example, a full day of passive recording may be tagged whenever an event, conversation, encounter, or other item of interest takes place. Tagging may be accomplished through the explicit press of a button, a noise or physical tap, a hand gesture, or any other control technique described herein. A marker may be placed in the audio or video file or stored in a metadata header. In embodiments, the marker may include the GPS coordinate of the event, conversation, encounter, or other item of interest. In other embodiments, the marker may be time-synced with a GPS log of the day. Other logic based triggers can also tag the audio or video file such as proximity relationships to other users, devices, locations, or the like.

[00437] In an embodiment, the eyepiece may be used as SigInt Glasses. Using one or more of an integrated WiFi, 3G or Bluetooth radios, the eyepiece may be used to conspicuously and passively gather signals intelligence for devices and individuals in the user's proximity. Signals intelligence may be gathered automatically or may be triggered when a particular device ID is in proximity, when a particular audio sample is detected, when a particular geo-location has been reached, and the like.

[00438] In an embodiment, a device for collection of fingerprints may be known as a bio-print device. The bio-print apparatus comprises a clear platen with two beveled edges. The platen is illuminated by a bank of LEDs and one or more cameras. Multiple cameras are used and are closely disposed and directed to the beveled edge of the platen. A finger or palm is disposed over the platen and pressed against an upper surface of the platen, where the cameras capture the ridge pattern. The image is recorded using frustrated total internal reflection (FTIR). In FTIR, light escapes the platen across the air gap created by the ridges and valleys of the fingers or palm pressed against the platen.

[00439] Other embodiments are also possible. In one embodiment, multiple cameras are placed in inverted 'V's of a sawtooth pattern. In another embodiment, a rectangle is formed and uses light directed through one side and an array of cameras capture the images produced. The light enters the rectangle through the side of the rectangle, while the cameras are directly beneath the rectangle, enabling the cameras to capture the ridges and valleys illuminated by the light passing through the rectangle.

[00440] After the images are captured, software is used to stitch the images from the multiple cameras together. A custom FPGA may be used for the digital image processing.

[00441] Once captured and processed, the images may be streamed to a remote display, such as a smart phone, computer, handheld device, or eyepiece, or other device.

[00442] The above description provides an overview of the operation of the methods and apparatus of the disclosure. Additional description and discussion of these and other embodiments is provided below.

[00443] Fig. 33 illustrates the construction and layout of an optics based finger and palm print system according to an embodiment. The optical array consists of approximately 60 wafer scale cameras. The optics based system uses sequential perimeter illumination for high resolution imaging of the whorls and pores that comprise a finger or palm print. This configuration provides a low profile, lightweight, and extremely rugged configuration. Durability is enhanced with a scratch proof, transparent platen.

[00444] The mosaic print sensor uses a frustrated total internal reflection (FTIR) optical faceplate provides images to an array of wafer scale cameras mounted on a PCB like substrate. The sensor may be scaled to any flat width and length with a depth of approximately 1/2". Size may vary from a plate small enough to capture just one finger roll print, up to a plate large enough to capture prints of both hands simultaneously.

[00445] The mosaic print sensor allows an operator to capture prints and compare the collected data against an on-board database. Data may also be uploaded and downloaded wirelessly. The unit may operate as a standalone unit or may be integrated with any biometric system.

[00446] In operation the mosaic print sensor offers high reliability in harsh environments with excessive sunlight. To provide this capability, multiple wafer scale

optical sensors are digitally stitched together using pixel subtraction. The resulting images are engineered to be over 500 dots per inch (dpi). Power is supplied by a battery or by parasitically drawing power from other sources using a USB protocol. Formatting is EFTS, EBTS NIST, ISO, and ITL 1-2007 compliant.

[00447] Fig. 34 illustrates the traditional optical approach used by other sensors. This approach is also based on FTIR. In the figure, the fringes contact the prism and scatter the light. The fringes on the finger being printed show as dark lines, while the valleys of the fingerprint show as bright lines.

[00448] Fig. 35 illustrates the approach used by the mosaic sensor 3500. The mosaic sensor also uses FTIR. However, the plate is illuminated from the side and the internal reflections are contained within the plate of the sensor. The fringes contact the prism and scatter the light, allowing the camera to capture the scattered light. The fringes on the finger show as bright lines, while the valleys show as dark lines.

[00449] Fig. 36 depicts the layout of the mosaic sensor 3600. The LED array is arranged around the perimeter of the plate. Underneath the plate are the cameras used to capture the fingerprint image. The image is captured on this bottom plate, known as the capture plane. The capture plane is parallel to the sensor plane, where the fingers are placed. The thickness of the plate, the number of the cameras, and the number of the LEDs may vary, depending on the size of the active capturing area of the plate. The thickness of the plate may be reduced by adding mirrors that fold the optical path of the camera, reducing the thickness needed. Each camera should cover one inch of space with some pixels overlapping between the cameras. This allows the mosaic sensor to achieve 500 ppi. The cameras may have a field of view of 60 degrees; however, there may be significant distortion in the image.

[00450] Fig. 37 shows the camera field of view and the interaction of the multiple cameras used in the mosaic sensor. Each camera covers a small capturing area. This area depends on the camera field of view and the distance between the camera and the top surface of the plate. α is one half of the camera's horizontal field of view and β is one half of the camera's vertical field of view.

[00451] The mosaic sensor may be incorporated into a bio-phone and tactical computer as illustrated in Fig. 38. The bio-phone and tactical computer uses a completed

mobile computer architecture that incorporates dual core processors, DSP, 3-D graphics accelerator, 3G-4G Wi-Lan (in accordance with 802.11 a/b/g/n), Bluetooth 3.0, and a GPS receiver. The bio-phone and tactical computer delivers power equivalent to a standard laptop in a phone size package.

[00452] Fig. 38 illustrates the components of the bio-phone and tactical computer. The bio-phone and tactical computer assembly, 3800 provides a display screen 3801, speaker 3802 and keyboard 3803 contained within case 3804. These elements are visible on the front of the bio-phone and tactical computer assembly 3800. On the rear of the assembly 3800 are located a camera for iris imaging 3805, a camera for facial imaging and video recording 3806 and a bio-print fingerprint sensor 3809.

[00453] To provide secure communications and data transmission, the device incorporates selectable 256-bit AES encryption with COTS sensors and software for biometric pre-qualification for POI acquisition. This software is matched and filed by any approved biometric matching software for sending and receiving secure “perishable” voice, video, and data communications. In addition, the bio-phone supports Windows Mobile, Linux, and Android operating systems.

[00454] The bio-phone is a 3G-4G enabled hand-held device for reach back to web portals and biometric enabled watch list (BEWL) databases. These databases allow for in-field comparison of captured biometric images and data. The device is designed to fit into a standard LBV or pocket.

[00455] The bio-phone can search, collect, enroll, and verify multiple types of biometric data, including face, iris, two-finger fingerprint, as well as biographic data. The device also records video, voice, gait, identifying marks, and pocket litter. Pocket litter includes a variety of small items normally carried in a pocket, wallet, or purse and may include such items as spare change, identification, passports, charge cards, and the like. Fig. 40 shows a typical collection of this type of information. Depicted in Fig. 40 are examples of a collection of pocket litter 4000. The types of items that may be included are personal documents and pictures 4101, books 4102, notebooks and paper, 4103, and documents, such as a passport 4104.

[00456] Fig. 39 illustrates the use of the bio-phone to capture latent fingerprints and palm prints. Fingerprints and palm prints are captured at 1000 dpi with active

illumination from an ultraviolet diode with scale overlay. Both fingerprint and palm prints 3900 may be captured using the bio-phone.

[00457] Data collected by the bio-phone is automatically geo-located and date and time stamped using the GPS capability. Data may be uploaded or downloaded and compared against onboard or networked databases. This data transfer is facilitated by the 3G-4G, Wi-Lan, and Bluetooth capabilities of the device. Data entry may be done with the QWERTY keyboard, or other methods that may be provided, such as stylus or touch screen, or the like. Biometric data is filed after collection using the most salient image. Manual entry allows for partial data capture. Fig. 41 illustrates the interplay 4100 between the digital dossier images and the biometric watch list held at a database. The biometric watch list is used for comparing data captured in the field with previously captured data

[00458] Formatting may use EFTS, EBTS NIST, ISO, and ITL 1-2007 formats to provide compatibility with a range and variety of databases for biometric data.

[00459] The specifications for the bio-phone and tactical computer are given below:

Operating Temperature: -22°C to +70°C

Connectivity I/O: 3G, 4G, WLAN a/b/g/n, Bluetooth 3.0, GPS, FM

Connectivity Output: USB 2.0, HDMI, Ethernet

Physical Dimensions: 6.875" (H) x 4.875" (W) x 1.2" (T)

Weight: 1.75 lbs.

Processor: Dual Core – 1 GHz Processors, 600MHz DSP, and 30M Polygon/sec

3-D Graphics Accelerator

Display: 3,8" WVGA (800 x 480) Sunlight Readable, Transreflective, Capacitive

Touch Screen, Scalable display output for connection to 3x 1080p

Hi-Def screens simultaneously.

Operating System: Windows Mobile, Linux, SE, Android

Storage: 128 GB solid-state drive

Additional Storage: Dual SD Card slots for additional 128 GB storage.

Memory: 4 GB RAM

Camera: 3 Hi-Def Still and Video Cameras: Face, Iris, and Conference

(User's Face)

3D Support: Capable of outputting stereoscopic 3D video.

Camera Sensor Support: Sensor dynamic range extension, Adaptive defect pixel correction, advanced sharpness enhancement, Geometric distortion correction, advanced color management, HW based face detection, Video stabilization

Biometrics: On-board optical, 2 fingerprint sensor, Face, DOMEX, and Iris cameras.

Sensors: Can accommodate the addition of accelerometer, compass, ambient light, proximity, barometric, and temperature sensors, depending on requirements.

Battery: <8hrs, 1400 Mah, rechargeable Li-ion, hot swap battery pack.

Power: Various power options for continuous operation.

Software Features: Face/gesture detection, noise filtering, pixel correction.

Powerful display processor with multi-overlay, rotation, and resizing capabilities.

Audio: On board microphone, speakers, and audio/video inputs.

Keyboard: Full tactile QWERTY keyboard with adjustable backlight.

[00460] Additional devices and kits may also incorporate the mosaic sensors and may operate in conjunction with the bio-phone and tactical computer to provide a complete field solution for collection biometric data.

[00461] One such device is the pocket bio-kit, illustrated in Fig. 42. The components of the pocket bio-kit 4200 include a GPS antenna 4201, a bio-print sensor 4202, keyboard 4204, all contained in case 4203. The specifications of the bio-kit are given below:

Size: 6" x 3" x 1.5"

Weight: 2 lbs. total

Processor and Memory: 1GHz OMAP processor

650 MHz core

3-D accelerator handling up to 18 million polygons/sec

64 KB L2 cache

166 MHz at 32 bit FSB

1 GB embedded PoP memory expandable with up to 4 GB NAND

64 GB solid state hard drive

Display: 75 mm x 50 mm, 640 x 480 (VGA) daylight readable LCD, anti-glare, anti-reflective, anti-scratch screen treatment

Interface: USB 2.0

10/100/1000 Ethernet

Power: Battery operation: approximately 8 hours of continuous enrollments at roughly 5 minutes per enrollment.

Embedded Capabilities: mosaic sensor optical fingerprint reader

Digital iris camera with active IR illumination

Digital face and DOMEX camera (visible) with flash

Fast lock GPS

[00462] The features of the bio-phone and tactical computer may also be provided in a bio-kit that provides for a biometric data collection system that folds into a rugged and compact case. Data is collected in biometric standard image and data formats that can be cross-referenced for near real-time data communication with Department of Defense Biometric Authoritative Databases.

[00463] The pocket bio-kit shown in Fig. 43 can capture latent fingerprints and palm prints at 1,000 dpi with active illumination from an ultraviolet diode with scale overlay. The bio-kit holds 32 GB memory storage cards that are capable of interoperation with combat radios or computers for upload and download of data in real-time field conditions. Power is provided by lithium ion batteries. Components of the bio-kit assembly 4200 include a GPS antenna 4201, a bio-print sensor 4202, and a case 4203 with a base bottom 4205.

[00464] Biometric data collect is geo-located for monitoring and tracking individual movement. Finger and palm prints, iris images, face images, latent fingerprints, and video may be collected and enrolled in a database using the bio-kit. Algorithms for finger and palm prints, iris images, and face images facilitate these types of data collection. To aid in capturing iris images and latent fingerprint images

simultaneously, the bio-kit has IR and UV diodes that actively illuminate an iris or latent fingerprint. In addition, the pocket bio-kit is also fully EFTS/EBTS compliant, including ITL 1-2007 and WSQ. The bio-kit meets MIL-STD-810 for operation in environmental extremes and uses a Linux operating system.

[00465] For capturing images, the bio-kit uses a high dynamic range camera with wave front coding for maximum depth of field, ensuring detail in latent fingerprints and iris images is captured. Once captured, real-time image enhancement software and image stabilization act to improve readability and provide superior visual discrimination.

[00466] The bio-kit is also capable of recording video and stores full-motion (30 fps) color video in an onboard “camcorder on chip.”

[00467] In addition to the bio-kit, the mosaic sensor may be incorporated into a wrist mounted fingerprint, palm print, geo-location, and POI enrollment device, shown in Fig. 44. The wrist mounted assembly 4400 includes the following elements in case 4401: straps 4402, setting and on/off buttons 4403, protective cover for sensor 4404, pressure-driven sensor 4405, and a keyboard and LCD screen 4406.

[00468] The fingerprint, palm print, geo-location, and POI enrollments device includes an integrated computer, QWERTY keyboard, and display. The display is designed to allow easy operation in strong sunlight and uses an LCD screen or LED indicator to alert the operator of successful fingerprint and palm print capture. The display uses transfective QVGA color, with a backlit LCD screen to improve readability. The device is lightweight and compact, weighing 16 oz. and measuring 5” x 2.5” at the mosaic sensor. This compact size and weight allows the device to slip into an LBV pocket or be strapped to a user’s forearm, as shown in Fig. 44. As with other devices incorporating the mosaic sensor, all POIs are tagged with geo-location information at the time of capture.

[00469] The size of the sensor screen allows 10 fingers, palm, four-finger slap, and finger tip capture. The sensor incorporates a large pressure driven print sensor for rapid enrollment in any weather conditions as specified in MIL-STD-810, at a rate of 500 dpi. Software algorithms support both fingerprint and palm print capture modes and uses a Linux operating system for device management. Capture is rapid, due to the 720 MHz processor with 533 MHZ DSP. This processing capability delivers correctly formatted,

salient images to any existing approved system software. In addition, the device is also fully EFTS/EBTS compliant, including ITL 1-2007 and WSQ.

[00470] As with other mosaic sensor devices, communication in wireless mode is possible using a removable UWB wireless 256-bit AES transceiver. This also provides secure upload and download to and from biometric databases stored off the device.

[00471] Power is supplied using lithium polymer or AA alkaline batteries.

[00472] The wrist-mounted device described above may also be used in conjunction with other devices, including augmented reality eyepieces with data and video display, shown in Fig. 45. The assembly 4500 includes the following components: an eyepiece 100, and a bio-print sensor device 4400. The augmented reality eyepiece provide redundant, binocular, stereo sensors and display and provides the ability to see in a variety of lighting conditions, from glaring sun at midday, to the extremely low light levels found at night. Operation of the eyepiece is simple with a rotary switch located on the temple of the eyepiece a user can access data from a forearm computer or sensor, or a laptop device. The eyepiece also provides omni-directional earbuds for hearing protection and improved hearing. A noise cancelling boom microphone may also be integrated into the eyepiece to provide better communication of phonetically differentiated commands.

[00473] The eyepiece is capable of communicating wirelessly with the bio-phone sensor and forearm mounted devices using a 256-bit AES encrypted UWB. This also allows the device to communicate with a laptop or combat radio, as well as network to CPs, TOCs, and biometric databases. The eyepiece is ABIS, EBTS, EFTS, and JPEG 2000 compatible.

[00474] Similar to other mosaic sensor devices described above, the eyepiece uses a networked GPS to provide highly accurate geo-location of POIs, as well as a RF filter array.

[00475] In operation the low profile forearm mounted computer and tactical display integrate face, iris, fingerprint, palm print, and fingertip collection and identification. The device also records video, voice, gait, and other distinguishing characteristics. Facial and iris tracking is automatic, allowing the device to assist in recognizing non-cooperative POIs. With the transparent display provided by the

eyepiece, the operator may also view sensor imagery, moving maps, and data as well as the individual whose biometric data is being captured.

[00476] Fig. 46 illustrates a further embodiment of the fingerprint, palm print, geo-location, and POI enrollment device. The device is 16 oz and uses a 5" x 2.5" active fingerprint and palm print capacitance sensor. The sensor is capable of enrolling 10 fingers, a palm, 4 finger slap, and finger tip prints at 500 dpi. A 0.6 – 1 GHz processor with 430 MHz DSP provides rapid enrollment and data capture. The device is ABIS, EBTS, EFTS, and JPEG 2000 compatible and features networked GPS for highly accurate location of persons of interest. In addition, the device communicates wirelessly over a 256-bit AES encrypted UWB, laptop, or combat radio. Database information may also be stored on the device, allowing in the field comparison without uploading information. This onboard data may also be shared wirelessly with other devices, such as a laptop or combat radio.

[00477] A further embodiment of the wrist mounted bio-print sensor assembly 4600 includes the following elements: a bio-print sensor 4601, wrist strap 4602, keyboard 4603, and combat radio connector interface 4404.

[00478] Data may be stored on the forearm device since the device can utilize Mil-con data storage caps for increased storage capacity. Data entry is performed on the QWERTY keyboard and may be done wearing gloves.

[00479] The display is a transfective QVGA, color, backlit LCD display designed to be readable in sunlight. In addition to operation in strong sunlight, the device may be operated in a wide range of environments, as the device meets the requirements of MIL-STD-810 operation in environmental extremes.

[00480] The mosaic sensor described above may also be incorporated into a mobile, folding biometric enrollment kit, as shown in Fig. 47. The mobile folding biometric enrollment kit 4700 folds into itself and is sized to fit into a tactical vest pocket, having dimensions of 8 x 12 x 4 inches when unfolded.

[00481] Fig. 48 illustrates how the eyepiece and forearm mounted device interface to provide a complete system for biometric data collection.

[00482] Fig. 49 provides a system diagram for the mobile folding biometric enrollment kit.

[00483] In operation the mobile folding biometric enrollment kit allows a user to search, collect, identify, verify, and enroll face, iris, palm print, fingertip, and biographic data for a subject and may also record voice samples, pocket litter, and other visible identifying marks. Once collected, the data is automatically geo-located, date, and time stamped. Collected data may be searched and compared against onboard and networked databases. For communicating with databases not onboard the device, wireless data up/download using combat radio or laptop computer with standard networking interface is provided. Formatting is compliant with EFTS, EBTS, NIST, ISO, and ITL 1-2007. Prequalified images may be sent directly to matching software as the device may use any matching and enrollment software.

[00484] The devices and systems incorporating described above provide a comprehensive solution for mobile biometric data collection, identification, and situational awareness. The devices are capable of collecting fingerprints, palm prints, fingertips, faces, irises, voice, and video data for recognition of uncooperative persons of interest (POI). Video is captured using high speed video to enable capture in unstable situations, such as from a moving video. Captured information may be readily shared and additional data entered via the keyboard. In addition, all data is tagged with date, time, and geo-location. This facilitates rapid dissemination of information necessary for situational awareness in potentially volatile environments. Additional data collection is possible with more personnel equipped with the devices, thus, demonstrating the idea that “every soldier is a sensor.” Sharing is facilitated by integration of biometric devices with combat radios and battlefield computers.

[00485] Fig. 50 illustrates a thin-film finger and palm print collection device. The device can record four fingerprint slaps and rolls, palm prints, and fingerprints to the NIST standard. Superior quality finger print images can be captured with either wet or dry hands. The device is reduced in weight and power consumption compared to other large sensors. In addition, the sensor is self-contained and is hot swappable. The configuration of the sensor may be varied to suit a variety of needs, and the sensor may be manufactured in various shapes and dimensions.

[00486] Fig. 51 depicts a finger, palm, and enrollment data collection device. This device records fingertip, roll, slap, and palm prints. A built in QWERTY keyboard

allows entry of written enrollment data. As with the devices described above, all data is tagged with date, time, and geo-location of collection. A built in database provides on board matching of potential POIs against the built in database. Matching may also be performed with other databases over a battlefield network. This device can be integrated with the optical biometric collection eyepiece described above to support face and iris recognition.

[00487] The specifications for the finger, palm, and enrollment device are given below:

- Weight & Size: 16 oz. forearm straps or inserts into LBV pocket
 - 5" x 2.5" finger/palm print sensor
 - 5.75" x 2.75" QWERTY keyboard
 - 3.5" x 2.25" LCD display
 - One-handed operation
- Environmental: Sensor operates in all weather conditions, -20°C to +70°C
 - Waterproofing: 1m for 4 hours, operates without degradation
- Biometric Collection: fingerprint and palm print collection, identification
 - Keyboard & LCD display for enrollment of POIs
 - Retains >30,000 full template portfolios (2 iris, 10 fingerprint, facial image, 35 fields of biographic information) for on board matching of POIs.
 - Tags all collected biometric data with time, date, and location
 - Pressure capacitance finger/palm print sensor
 - 30 fps high contrast bitmap image
 - 1000 dpi
- Wireless: fully interoperable with combat radios, hand held or lap top computers and 256-bit AES encryption
- Battery: dual 2000 mAh lithium polymer batteries
 - > 12 hours, quick change battery in < 15 seconds
- Processing & Memory: 256 MB flash and 128 MB SDRAM supports 3 SD cards up to 32 GB each
 - 600-1GHZ ARM Cortex A8 processor
 - 1 GB RAM

[00488] Figs. 52-54 depict use of the devices incorporating a sensor for collecting biometric data. Fig. 52 shows capture of a two stage palm print. Fig. 53 shows collection using a fingertip tap. Fig. 54 demonstrates a slap and roll print being collected.

[00489] The discussion above pertains to methods of gathering biometric data, such as fingerprints or palmprints using a platen or touchscreen, as shown in Figs. 44 and 50-54. This disclosure also includes methods and systems for touchless or contactless fingerprinting using polarized light. In one embodiment, fingerprints may be taken by persons using a polarized light source and retrieving images of the fingerprints using reflected polarized light in two planes. In another embodiment, fingerprints may be taken by persons using a light source and retrieving images of the fingerprints using multispectral processing, e.g., using two imagers at two different locations with different inputs. The different inputs may be caused by using different filters or different sensors/imagers. Applications of this technology may include biometric checks of unknown persons or subjects in which the safety of the persons doing the checking may be at issue.

[00490] In this method, an unknown person or subject may approach a checkpoint, for example, to be allowed further travel to his or her destination. As depicted in the system 550 shown in Fig. 55, the person P and an appropriate body part, such as a hand, a palm P, or other part, are illuminated by a source of polarized light 551. As is well known to those with skill in optical arts, the source of polarized light may simply be a lamp or other source of illumination with a polarizing filter to emit light that is polarized in one plane. The light travels to the person in an area which has been specified for non-contact fingerprinting, so that the polarized light impinges on the fingers or other body part of the person P. The incident polarized light is then reflected from the fingers or other body part and passes in all directions from the person. Two imagers or cameras 554 receive the reflected light after the light has passed through optical elements such as a lens 552 and a polarizing filter 553. The cameras or imagers may be mounted on the augmented reality glasses, as discussed above with respect to Fig. 9.

[00491] The light then passes from palm or finger or fingers of the person of interest to two different polarizing filters 554a, 554b and then to the imagers or cameras 555. Light which has passed through the polarizing filters may have a 90° orientation

difference (horizontal and vertical) or other orientation difference, such as 30°, 45°, 60° or 120°. The cameras may be digital cameras with appropriate digital imaging sensors to convert the incident light into appropriate signals. The signals are then processed by appropriate processing circuitry 556, such as digital signal processors. The signals may then be combined in a conventional manner, such as by a digital microprocessor with memory 557. The digital processor with appropriate memory is programmed to produce data suitable for an image of a palm, fingerprint, or other image as desired. The digital data from the imagers may then be combined in this process, for example, using the techniques of U.S. Pat. No. 6,249,616 and others. As noted above in the present disclosure, the combined “image” may then be checked against a database to determine an identity of the person. The augmented reality glasses may include such a database in the memory, or may refer the signals data elsewhere 558 for comparison and checking.

[00492] A process for taking contactless fingerprints, palmprints or other biometric prints is disclosed in the flowchart of Fig. 56. In one embodiment, a polarized light source is provided 561. In a second step 562, the person of interest and the selected body part is positioned for illumination by the light. In another embodiment, it may be possible to use incident white light rather than using a polarized light source. When the image is ready to be taken, light is reflected 563 from the person to two cameras or imagers. A polarizing filter is placed in front of each of the two cameras, so that the light received by the cameras is polarized 564 in two different planes, such as in a horizontal and vertical plane. Each camera then detects 565 the polarized light. The cameras or other sensors then convert the incidence of light into signals or data 566 suitable for preparation of images. Finally, the images are then combined 567 to form a very distinct, reliable print. The result is an image of very high quality that may be compared to digital databases to identify the person and to detect persons of interest.

[00493] It should be understood that while digital cameras are used in this contactless system, other imagers may be used, such as active pixel imagers, CMOS imagers, imagers that image in multiple wavelengths, CCD cameras, photo detector arrays, TFT imagers, and so forth. It should also be understood that while polarized light has been used to create two different images, other variations in the reflected light may also be used. For example, rather than using polarized light, white light may be used and

then different filters applied to the imagers, such as a Bayer filter, a CYGM filter, or an RGBE filter. In other embodiments, it may be possible to dispense with a source of polarized light and instead use natural or white light rather than a source of polarized light.

[00494] The use of touchless or contactless fingerprinting has been under development for some time, as evidenced by earlier systems. For example, U.S. Pat. Appl. 2002/0106115 used polarized light in a non-contact system, but required a metallic coating on the fingers of the person being fingerprinted. Later systems, such as those described in U.S. Pat. 7,651,594 and U.S. Pat. Appl. Publ. 2008/0219522, required contact with a platen or other surface. The contactless system described herein does not require contact at the time of imaging, nor does it require prior contact, e.g., placing a coating or a reflective coating on the body part of interest. Of course, the positions of the imagers or cameras with respect to each other should be known for easier processing.

[00495] In use, the contactless fingerprint system may be employed at a checkpoint, such as a compound entrance, a building entrance, a roadside checkpoint or other convenient location. Such a location may be one where it is desirable to admit some persons and to refuse entrance or even detain other persons of interest. In practice, the system may make use of an external light source, such as a lamp, if polarized light is used. The cameras or other imagers used for the contactless imaging may be mounted on opposite sides of one set of augmented reality glasses (for one person). For example, a two-camera version is shown in Fig. 9, with two cameras 920 mounted on frame 914. In this embodiment, the software for at least processing the image may be contained within a memory of the augmented reality glasses. Alternatively, the digital data from the cameras/imagers may be routed to a nearby datacenter for appropriate processing. This processing may include combining the digital data to form an image of the print. The processing may also include checking a database of known persons to determine whether the subject is of interest.

[00496] Alternatively, one camera on each of two persons may be used, as seen in the camera 908 in Fig. 9. In this configuration, the two persons would be relatively near so that their respective images would be suitably similar for combining by the appropriate software. For example, the two cameras 555 in Fig. 55 may be mounted on two different

pairs of augmented reality glasses, such as on two soldiers manning a checkpoint. Alternatively, the cameras may be mounted on a wall or on stationary parts of the checkpoint itself. The two images may then be combined by a remote processor with memory 557, such as a computer system at the building checkpoint.

[00497] As discussed above, persons using the augmented reality glasses may be in constant contact with each other through at least one of many wireless technologies, especially if they are both on duty at a checkpoint. Accordingly, the data from the single cameras or from the two-camera version may be sent to a data center or other command post for the appropriate processing, followed by checking the database for a match of the palm print, fingerprint, iris print, and so forth. The data center may be conveniently located near the checkpoint. With the availability of modern computers and storage, the cost of providing multiple datacenters and wirelessly updating the software will not be a major cost consideration in such systems.

[00498] The touchless or contactless biometric data gathering discussed above may be controlled in several ways, such as the control techniques discussed else in this disclosure. For example, in one embodiment, a user may initiate a data-gathering session by pressing a touch pad on the glasses, or by giving a voice command. In another embodiment, the user may initiate a session by a hand movement or gesture or using any of the control techniques described herein. Any of these techniques may bring up a menu, from which the user may select an option, such as “begin data gathering session,” “terminate data-gathering session,” or “continue session.” If a data-gathering session is selected, the computer-controlled menu may then offer menu choices for number of cameras, which cameras, and so forth, much as a user selects a printer. There may also be modes, such as a polarized light mode, a color filter mode, and so forth. After each selection, the system may complete a task or offer another choice, as appropriate. User intervention may also be required, such as turning on a source of polarized light or other light source, applying filters or polarizers, and so forth.

[00499] After fingerprints, palmprints, iris images or other desired data has been acquired, the menu may then offer selections as to which database to use for comparison, which device(s) to use for storage, etc. The touchless or contactless

biometric data gathering system may be controlled by any of the methods described herein.

[00500] While the system and sensors have obvious uses in identifying potential persons of interest, there are positive battlefield uses as well. The fingerprint sensor may be used to call up a soldier's medical history, giving information immediately on allergies, blood type, and other time sensitive and treatment determining data quickly and easily, thus allowing proper treatment to be provided under battlefield conditions. This is especially helpful for patients who may be unconscious when initially treated and who may be missing identification tags.

[00501] A further embodiment of a device for capturing biometric data from individuals may incorporate a server to store and process biometric data collected. The biometric data captured may include a hand image with multiple fingers, a palm print, a face camera image, an iris image, an audio sample of an individual's voice, and a video of the individual's gait or movement. The collected data must be accessible to be useful.

[00502] Processing of the biometric data may be done locally or remotely at a separate server. Local processing may offer the option to capture raw images and audio and make the information available on demand from a computer host over a WiFi or USB link. As an alternative, another local processing method processes the images and then transmits the processed data over the internet. This local processing includes the steps of finding the finger prints, rating the finger prints, finding the face and then cropping it, finding and then rating the iris, and other similar steps for audio and video data. While processing the data locally requires more complex code, it does offer the advantage of reduced data transmission over the internet.

[00503] A scanner associated with the biometric data collection devices may use code that is compliant with the USB Image Device protocol that is a commonly used scanner standard. Other embodiments may use different scanner standards, depending on need.

[00504] When a WiFi network is used to transfer the data, the Bio-Print device, which is further described herein, can function or appear like a web server to the network. Each of the various types of images may be available by selecting or clicking on a web

page link or button from a browser client. This web server functionality may be part of the Bio-Print device, specifically, included in the microcomputer functionality.

[00505] A web server may be a part of the Bio-Print microcomputer host, allowing for the Bio-Print device to author a web page that exposes captured data and also provides some controls. An additional embodiment of the browser application could provide controls to capture high resolution hand prints, face images, iris images, set the camera resolution, set the capture time for audio samples, and also enable a streaming connection, using a web cam, Skype, or similar mechanism. This connection could be attached to the audio and face camera.

[00506] A further embodiment provides a browser application that gives access to images and audio captured via file transfer protocol (FTP) or other protocol. A still further embodiment of the browser application may provide for automatic refreshes at a selectable rate to repeatedly grab preview images.

[00507] An additional embodiment provides local processing of captured biometric data using a microcomputer and provides additional controls to display a rating of the captured image, allowing a user to rate each of the prints found, retrieve faces captured, and also to retrieve cropped iris images and allow a user to rate each of the iris prints.

[00508] Yet another embodiment provides a USB port compatible with the Open Multimedia Application Platform (OMAP3) system. OMAP3 is a proprietary system on a chip for portable multimedia applications. The OMAP3 device port is equipped with a Remote Network Driver Interface Specification (RNDIS), a proprietary protocol that may be used on top of USB. These systems provide the capability that when a Bio-Print device is plugged into a Windows PC USB host port, the device shows up as an IP interface. This IP interface would be the same as over WiFi (TCP/IP web server). This allows for moving data off the microcomputer host and provides for display of the captured print.

[00509] An application on the microcomputer may implement the above by receiving data from an FPGA over the USB bus. Once received, JPEG content is created. This content may be written over a socket to a server running on a laptop, or be written to a file. Alternately, the server could receive the socket stream, pop the image, and leave it

open in a window, thus creating a new window for each biometric capture. If the microcomputer runs Network File System (NFS), a protocol for use with Sun-based systems or SAMBA, a free software reimplementation that provides file and print services for Windows clients, the files captured may be shared and accessed by any client running NFS or System Management Bus (SMB), a PC communication bus implementation. In this embodiment, a JPEG viewer would display the files. The display client could include a laptop, augmented reality glasses, or a phone running the Android platform.

[00510] An additional embodiment provides for a server-side application offering the same services described above.

[00511] An alternative embodiment to a server-side application displays the results on the augmented reality glasses.

[00512] A further embodiment provides the microcomputer on a removable platform, similar to a mass storage device or streaming camera. The removable platform also incorporates an active USB serial port.

[00513] The methods and systems described herein may be deployed in part or in whole through a machine that executes computer software, program codes, and/or instructions on a processor. The processor may be part of a server, client, network infrastructure, mobile computing platform, stationary computing platform, or other computing platform. A processor may be any kind of computational or processing device capable of executing program instructions, codes, binary instructions and the like. The processor may be or include a signal processor, digital processor, embedded processor, microprocessor or any variant such as a co-processor (math co-processor, graphic co-processor, communication co-processor and the like) and the like that may directly or indirectly facilitate execution of program code or program instructions stored thereon. In addition, the processor may enable execution of multiple programs, threads, and codes. The threads may be executed simultaneously to enhance the performance of the processor and to facilitate simultaneous operations of the application. By way of implementation, methods, program codes, program instructions and the like described herein may be implemented in one or more thread. The thread may spawn other threads that may have assigned priorities associated with them; the processor may execute these threads based

on priority or any other order based on instructions provided in the program code. The processor may include memory that stores methods, codes, instructions and programs as described herein and elsewhere. The processor may access a storage medium through an interface that may store methods, codes, and instructions as described herein and elsewhere. The storage medium associated with the processor for storing methods, programs, codes, program instructions or other type of instructions capable of being executed by the computing or processing device may include but may not be limited to one or more of a CD-ROM, DVD, memory, hard disk, flash drive, RAM, ROM, cache and the like.

[00514] A processor may include one or more cores that may enhance speed and performance of a multiprocessor. In embodiments, the process may be a dual core processor, quad core processors, other chip-level multiprocessor and the like that combine two or more independent cores (called a die).

[00515] The methods and systems described herein may be deployed in part or in whole through a machine that executes computer software on a server, client, firewall, gateway, hub, router, or other such computer and/or networking hardware. The software program may be associated with a server that may include a file server, print server, domain server, internet server, intranet server and other variants such as secondary server, host server, distributed server and the like. The server may include one or more of memories, processors, computer readable media, storage media, ports (physical and virtual), communication devices, and interfaces capable of accessing other servers, clients, machines, and devices through a wired or a wireless medium, and the like. The methods, programs or codes as described herein and elsewhere may be executed by the server. In addition, other devices required for execution of methods as described in this application may be considered as a part of the infrastructure associated with the server.

[00516] The server may provide an interface to other devices including, without limitation, clients, other servers, printers, database servers, print servers, file servers, communication servers, distributed servers, social networks, and the like. Additionally, this coupling and/or connection may facilitate remote execution of program across the network. The networking of some or all of these devices may facilitate parallel processing of a program or method at one or more location. In addition, any of the

devices attached to the server through an interface may include at least one storage medium capable of storing methods, programs, code and/or instructions. A central repository may provide program instructions to be executed on different devices. In this implementation, the remote repository may act as a storage medium for program code, instructions, and programs.

[00517] The software program may be associated with a client that may include a file client, print client, domain client, internet client, intranet client and other variants such as secondary client, host client, distributed client and the like. The client may include one or more of memories, processors, computer readable media, storage media, ports (physical and virtual), communication devices, and interfaces capable of accessing other clients, servers, machines, and devices through a wired or a wireless medium, and the like. The methods, programs or codes as described herein and elsewhere may be executed by the client. In addition, other devices required for execution of methods as described in this application may be considered as a part of the infrastructure associated with the client.

[00518] The client may provide an interface to other devices including, without limitation, servers, other clients, printers, database servers, print servers, file servers, communication servers, distributed servers and the like. Additionally, this coupling and/or connection may facilitate remote execution of program across the network. The networking of some or all of these devices may facilitate parallel processing of a program or method at one or more location. In addition, any of the devices attached to the client through an interface may include at least one storage medium capable of storing methods, programs, applications, code and/or instructions. A central repository may provide program instructions to be executed on different devices. In this implementation, the remote repository may act as a storage medium for program code, instructions, and programs.

[00519] The methods and systems described herein may be deployed in part or in whole through network infrastructures. The network infrastructure may include elements such as computing devices, servers, routers, hubs, firewalls, clients, personal computers, communication devices, routing devices and other active and passive devices, modules and/or components as known in the art. The computing and/or non-computing

device(s) associated with the network infrastructure may include, apart from other components, a storage medium such as flash memory, buffer, stack, RAM, ROM and the like. The processes, methods, program codes, instructions described herein and elsewhere may be executed by one or more of the network infrastructural elements.

[00520] The methods, program codes, and instructions described herein and elsewhere may be implemented on a cellular network having multiple cells. The cellular network may either be frequency division multiple access (FDMA) network or code division multiple access (CDMA) network. The cellular network may include mobile devices, cell sites, base stations, repeaters, antennas, towers, and the like. The cell network may be a GSM, GPRS, 3G, EVDO, mesh, or other networks types.

[00521] The methods, programs codes, and instructions described herein and elsewhere may be implemented on or through mobile devices. The mobile devices may include navigation devices, cell phones, mobile phones, mobile personal digital assistants, laptops, palmtops, netbooks, pagers, electronic books readers, music players and the like. These devices may include, apart from other components, a storage medium such as a flash memory, buffer, RAM, ROM and one or more computing devices. The computing devices associated with mobile devices may be enabled to execute program codes, methods, and instructions stored thereon. Alternatively, the mobile devices may be configured to execute instructions in collaboration with other devices. The mobile devices may communicate with base stations interfaced with servers and configured to execute program codes. The mobile devices may communicate on a peer to peer network, mesh network, or other communications network. The program code may be stored on the storage medium associated with the server and executed by a computing device embedded within the server. The base station may include a computing device and a storage medium. The storage device may store program codes and instructions executed by the computing devices associated with the base station.

[00522] The computer software, program codes, and/or instructions may be stored and/or accessed on machine readable media that may include: computer components, devices, and recording media that retain digital data used for computing for some interval of time; semiconductor storage known as random access memory (RAM); mass storage typically for more permanent storage, such as optical discs, forms of

magnetic storage like hard disks, tapes, drums, cards and other types; processor registers, cache memory, volatile memory, non-volatile memory; optical storage such as CD, DVD; removable media such as flash memory (e.g. USB sticks or keys), floppy disks, magnetic tape, paper tape, punch cards, standalone RAM disks, Zip drives, removable mass storage, off-line, and the like; other computer memory such as dynamic memory, static memory, read/write storage, mutable storage, read only, random access, sequential access, location addressable, file addressable, content addressable, network attached storage, storage area network, bar codes, magnetic ink, and the like.

[00523] The methods and systems described herein may transform physical and/or or intangible items from one state to another. The methods and systems described herein may also transform data representing physical and/or intangible items from one state to another.

[00524] The elements described and depicted herein, including in flow charts and block diagrams throughout the figures, imply logical boundaries between the elements. However, according to software or hardware engineering practices, the depicted elements and the functions thereof may be implemented on machines through computer executable media having a processor capable of executing program instructions stored thereon as a monolithic software structure, as standalone software modules, or as modules that employ external routines, code, services, and so forth, or any combination of these, and all such implementations may be within the scope of the present disclosure. Examples of such machines may include, but may not be limited to, personal digital assistants, laptops, personal computers, mobile phones, other handheld computing devices, medical equipment, wired or wireless communication devices, transducers, chips, calculators, satellites, tablet PCs, electronic books, gadgets, electronic devices, devices having artificial intelligence, computing devices, networking equipments, servers, routers, processor-embedded eyewear and the like. Furthermore, the elements depicted in the flow chart and block diagrams or any other logical component may be implemented on a machine capable of executing program instructions. Thus, while the foregoing drawings and descriptions set forth functional aspects of the disclosed systems, no particular arrangement of software for implementing these functional aspects should be inferred from these descriptions unless explicitly stated or otherwise clear from the

context. Similarly, it will be appreciated that the various steps identified and described above may be varied, and that the order of steps may be adapted to particular applications of the techniques disclosed herein. All such variations and modifications are intended to fall within the scope of this disclosure. As such, the depiction and/or description of an order for various steps should not be understood to require a particular order of execution for those steps, unless required by a particular application, or explicitly stated or otherwise clear from the context.

[00525] The methods and/or processes described above, and steps thereof, may be realized in hardware, software or any combination of hardware and software suitable for a particular application. The hardware may include a general purpose computer and/or dedicated computing device or specific computing device or particular aspect or component of a specific computing device. The processes may be realized in one or more microprocessors, microcontrollers, embedded microcontrollers, programmable digital signal processors or other programmable device, along with internal and/or external memory. The processes may also, or instead, be embodied in an application specific integrated circuit, a programmable gate array, programmable array logic, or any other device or combination of devices that may be configured to process electronic signals. It will further be appreciated that one or more of the processes may be realized as a computer executable code capable of being executed on a machine readable medium.

[00526] The computer executable code may be created using a structured programming language such as C, an object oriented programming language such as C++, or any other high-level or low-level programming language (including assembly languages, hardware description languages, and database programming languages and technologies) that may be stored, compiled or interpreted to run on one of the above devices, as well as heterogeneous combinations of processors, processor architectures, or combinations of different hardware and software, or any other machine capable of executing program instructions.

[00527] Thus, in one aspect, each method described above and combinations thereof may be embodied in computer executable code that, when executing on one or more computing devices, performs the steps thereof. In another aspect, the methods may be embodied in systems that perform the steps thereof, and may be distributed across

devices in a number of ways, or all of the functionality may be integrated into a dedicated, standalone device or other hardware. In another aspect, the means for performing the steps associated with the processes described above may include any of the hardware and/or software described above. All such permutations and combinations are intended to fall within the scope of the present disclosure.

[00528] While the present disclosure includes many embodiments shown and described in detail, various modifications and improvements thereon will become readily apparent to those skilled in the art. Accordingly, the spirit and scope of the present invention is not to be limited by the foregoing examples, but is to be understood in the broadest sense allowable by law.

[00529] All documents referenced herein are hereby incorporated by reference.

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

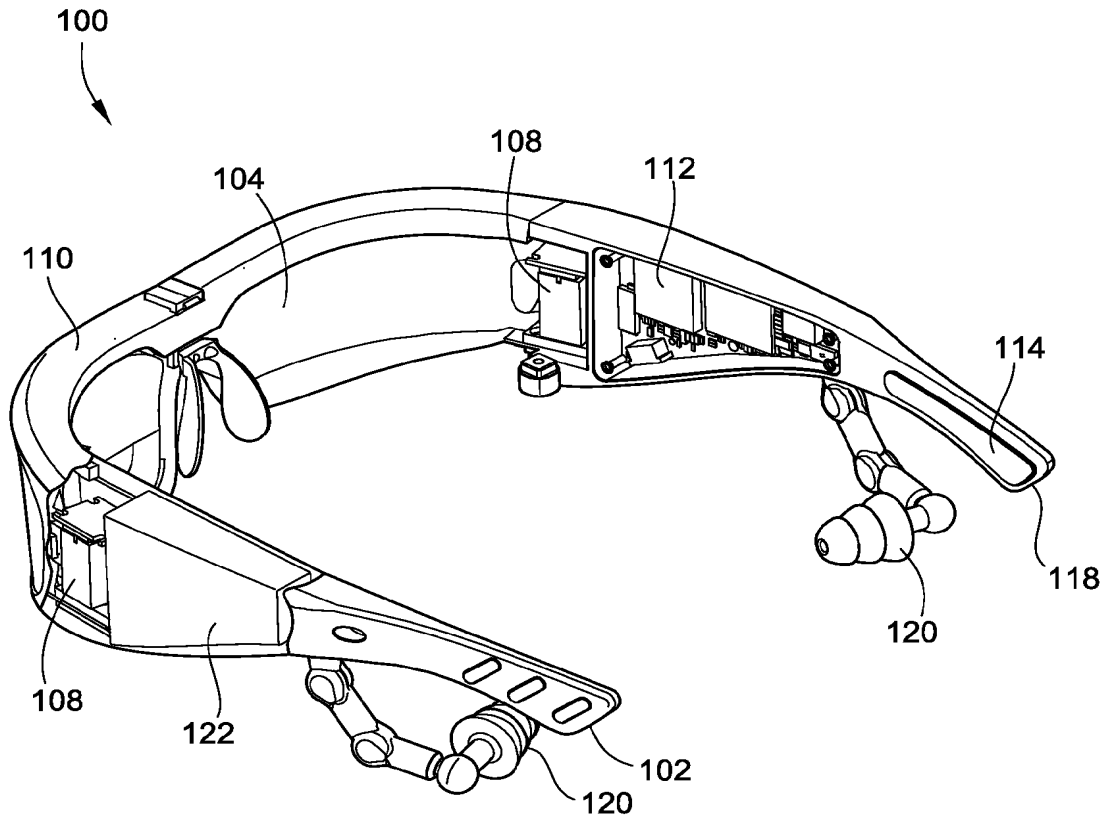
1. An interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly; and wherein the displayed content comprises a local advertisement, wherein the location of the eyepiece is determined by an integrated location sensor and wherein the local advertisement has a relevance to the location of the eyepiece.
2. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the eyepiece contains a capacitive sensor capable of sensing whether the eyepiece is in contact with human skin; and wherein a local advertisement is sent to the user based on whether said capacitive sensor senses that the eyepiece is in contact with human skin.
3. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the local advertisement is sent in response to the eyepiece being powered on.
4. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the local advertisement is displayed to the user as a banner advertisement, two dimensional graphic, or text.
5. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the local advertisement is associated with a physical aspect in the user's view of the surrounding environment.
6. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the local advertisement is displayed as an augmented reality advertisement wherein said local advertisement is associated with a physical aspect of the surrounding environment.

7. The eyepiece of claim 6 wherein the local advertisement is displayed as a three dimensional object.
8. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein a local advertisement is displayed as an animated advertisement associated with a specific object in the user's view of the surrounding environment.
9. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the local advertisement is displayed to the user based on a web search conducted by said user where said local advertisement is displayed in the content of the web search results.
10. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the content of the local advertisement is determined based on said user's personal information wherein said personal information is made available to at least one of a web application and advertising facility; and wherein at least one of said web application, advertising facility and eyepiece filters said advertising based on said user's personal information.
11. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the local advertisement is cached on a server wherein said advertisement is accessed by at least one of an advertising facility, web application and said eyepiece and displayed to the user.
12. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein said user requests additional information related to the local advertisement by making at least one action of an eye movement, body movement, and other gesture.
13. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein said user ignores the local advertisement by at least one of an eye movement, body movement, other gesture and not selecting said advertisement for further interaction within a period of elapsed time.

15. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein said user may select to not allow local advertisements to be displayed whereby said user selects such an option on a graphical user interface or by turning such feature off via a control on said eyepiece.

16. The eyepiece of claim 1 wherein the local advertisement includes an audio transmission to said user.

17. An interactive head-mounted eyepiece worn by a user, wherein the eyepiece includes an optical assembly through which the user views a surrounding environment and displayed content, wherein the optical assembly comprises a corrective element that corrects the user's view of the surrounding environment, an integrated processor for handling content for display to the user, and an integrated image source for introducing the content to the optical assembly, and an audio device; and wherein the displayed content comprises a local advertisement and audio, wherein the location of the eyepiece is determined by an integrated location sensor and wherein the local advertisement and audio has a relevance to the location of the eyepiece.

**FIG. 1**

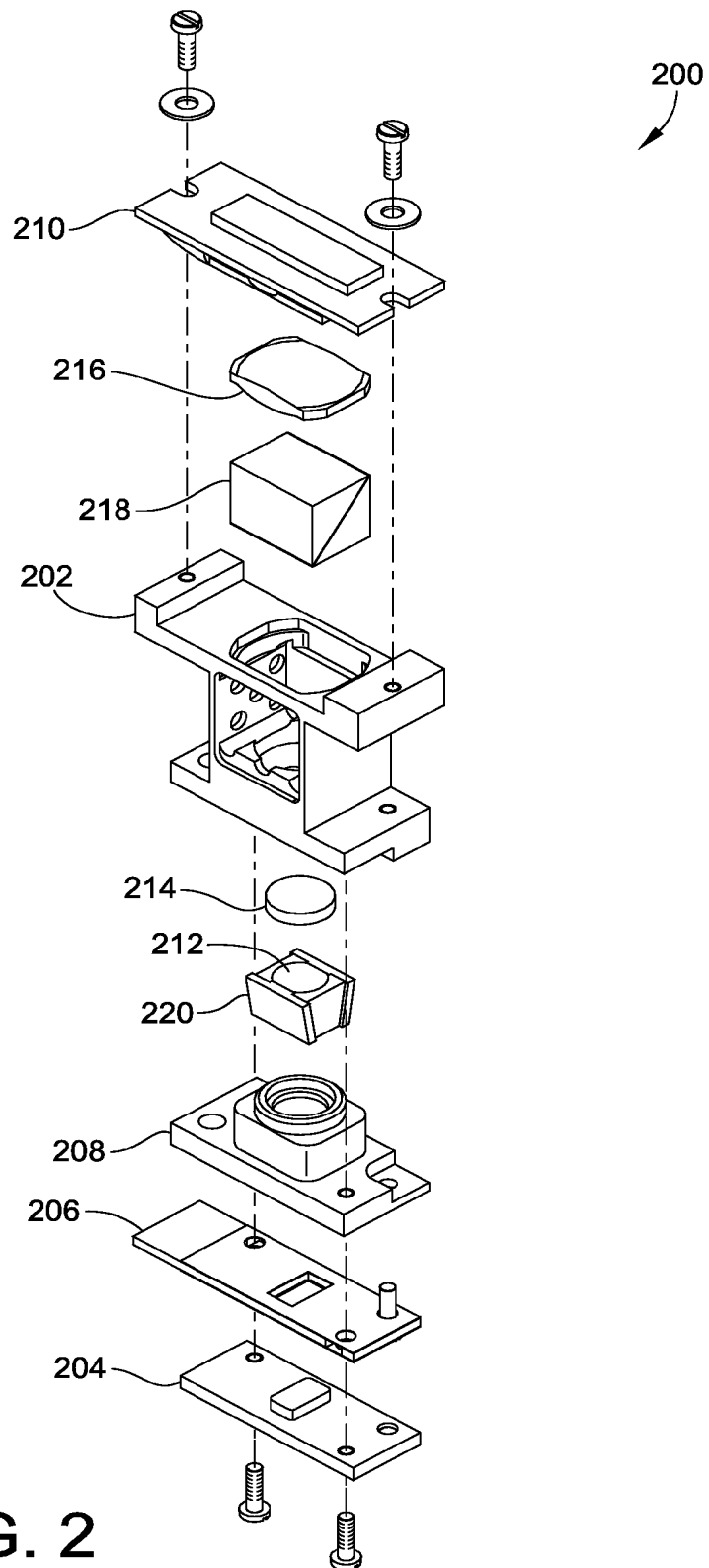
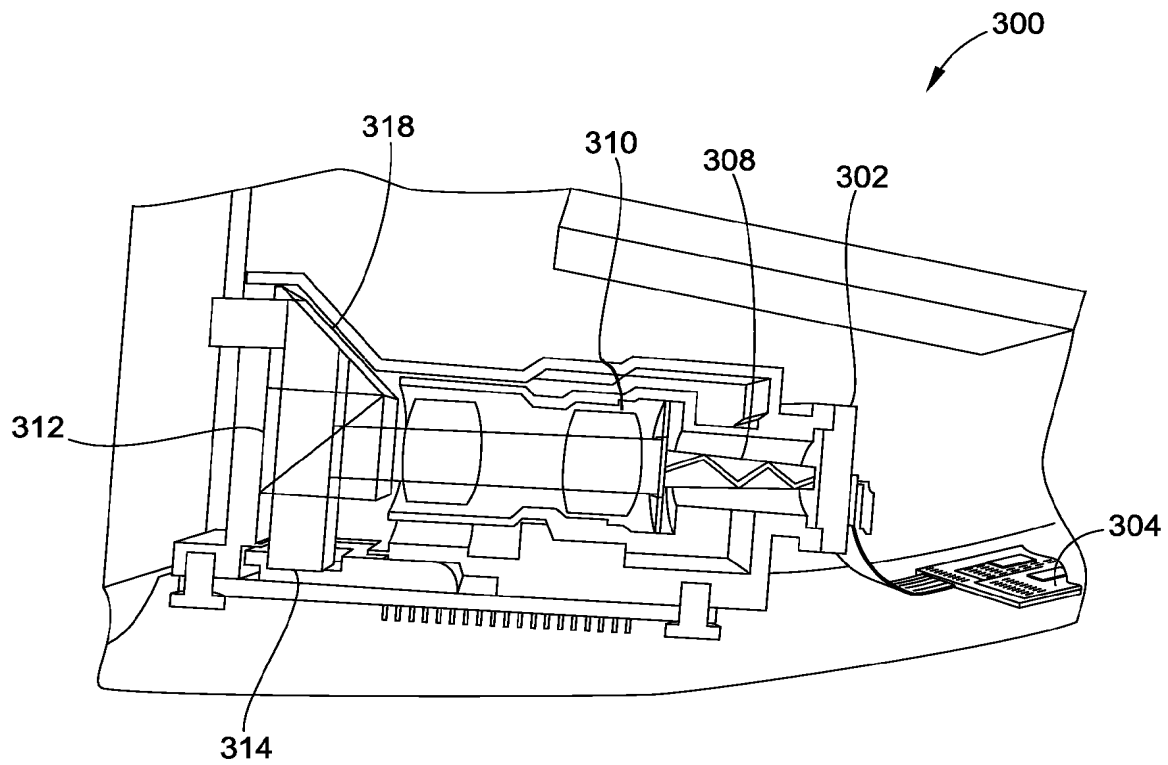
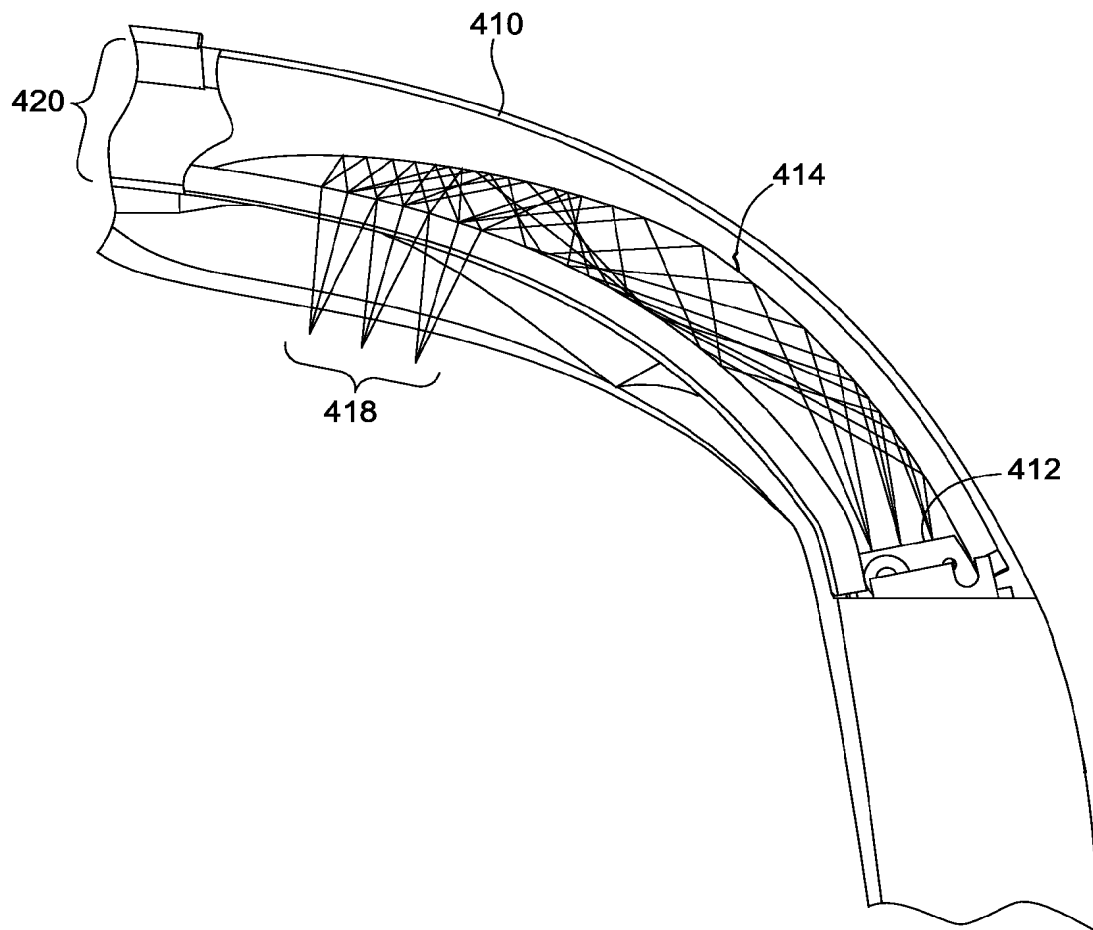
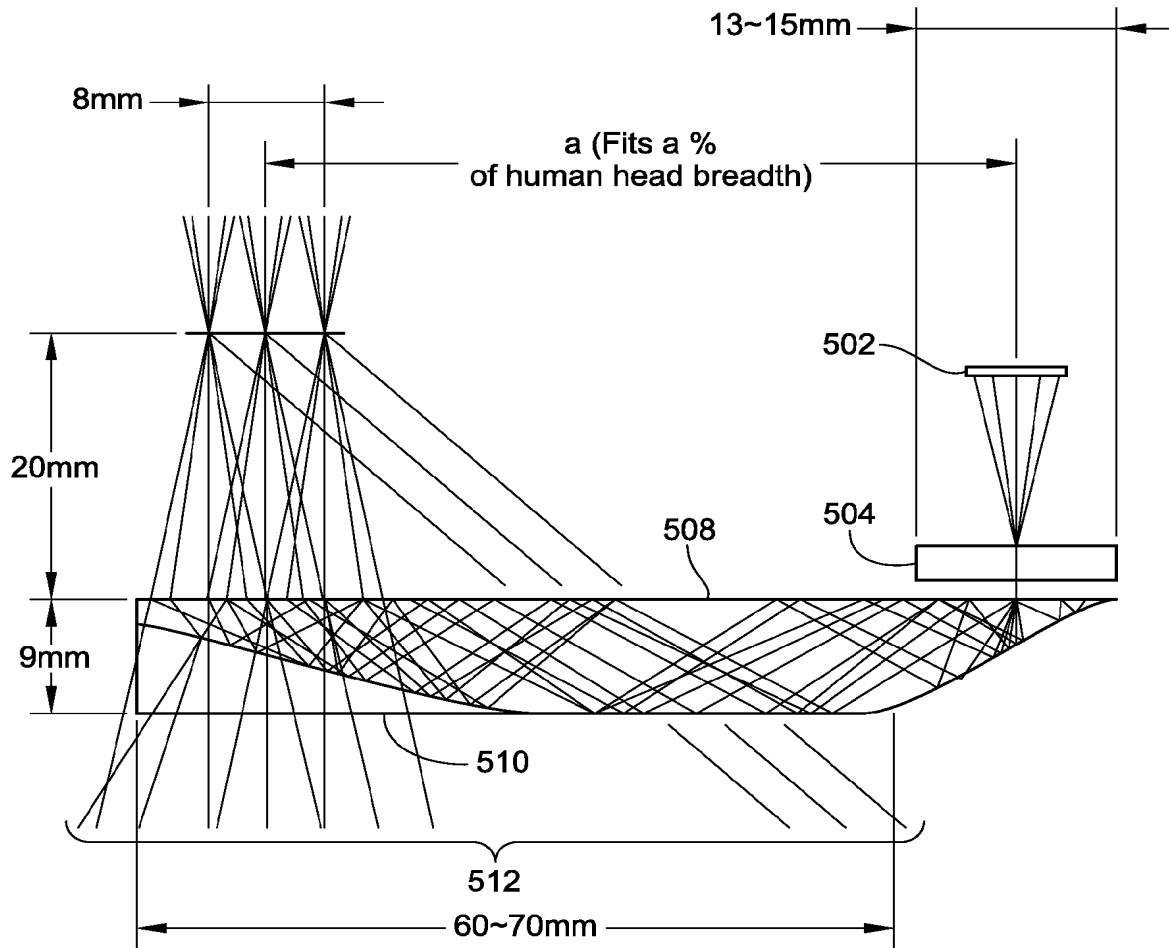


FIG. 2

**FIG. 3**

**FIG. 4**

**FIG. 5**

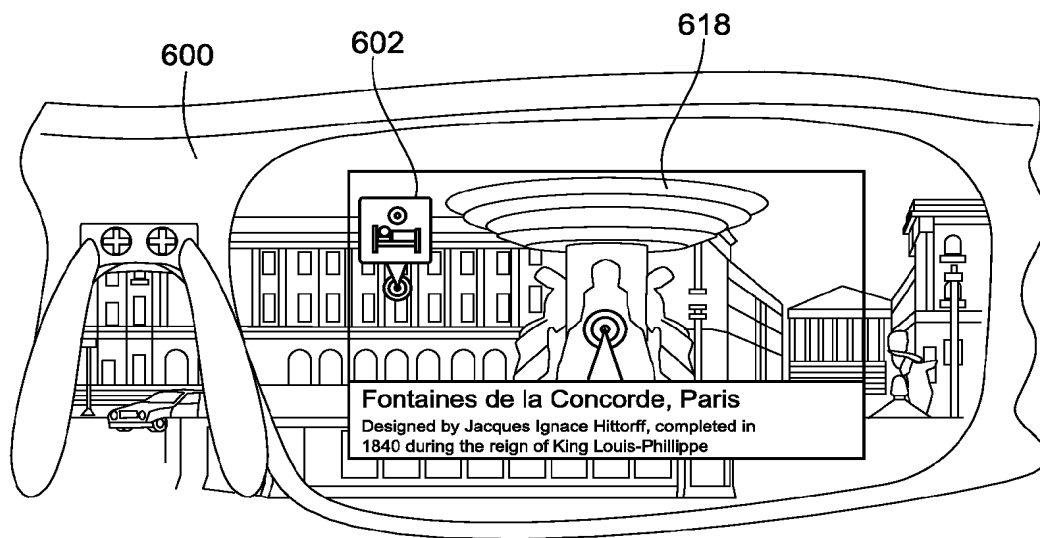


FIG. 6

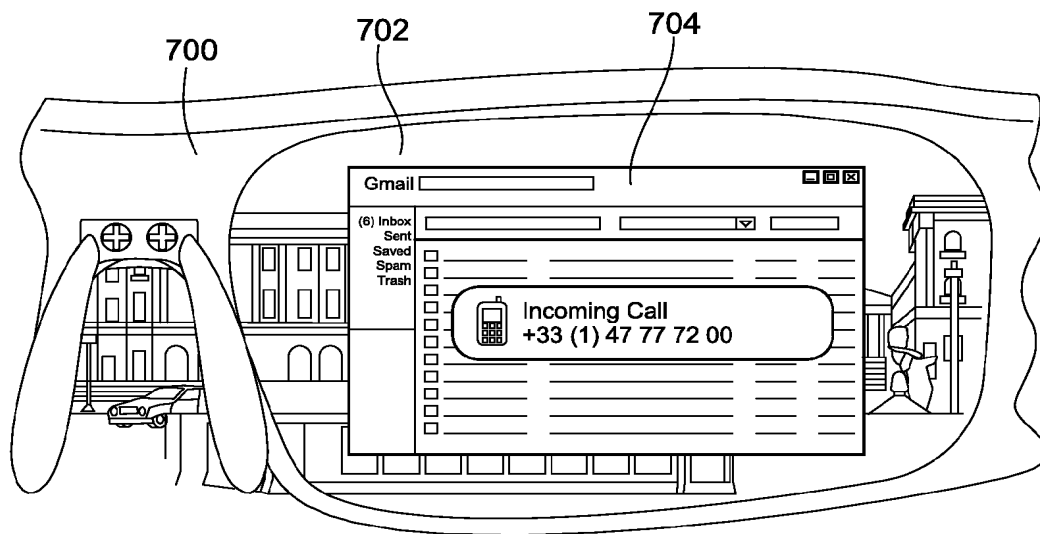
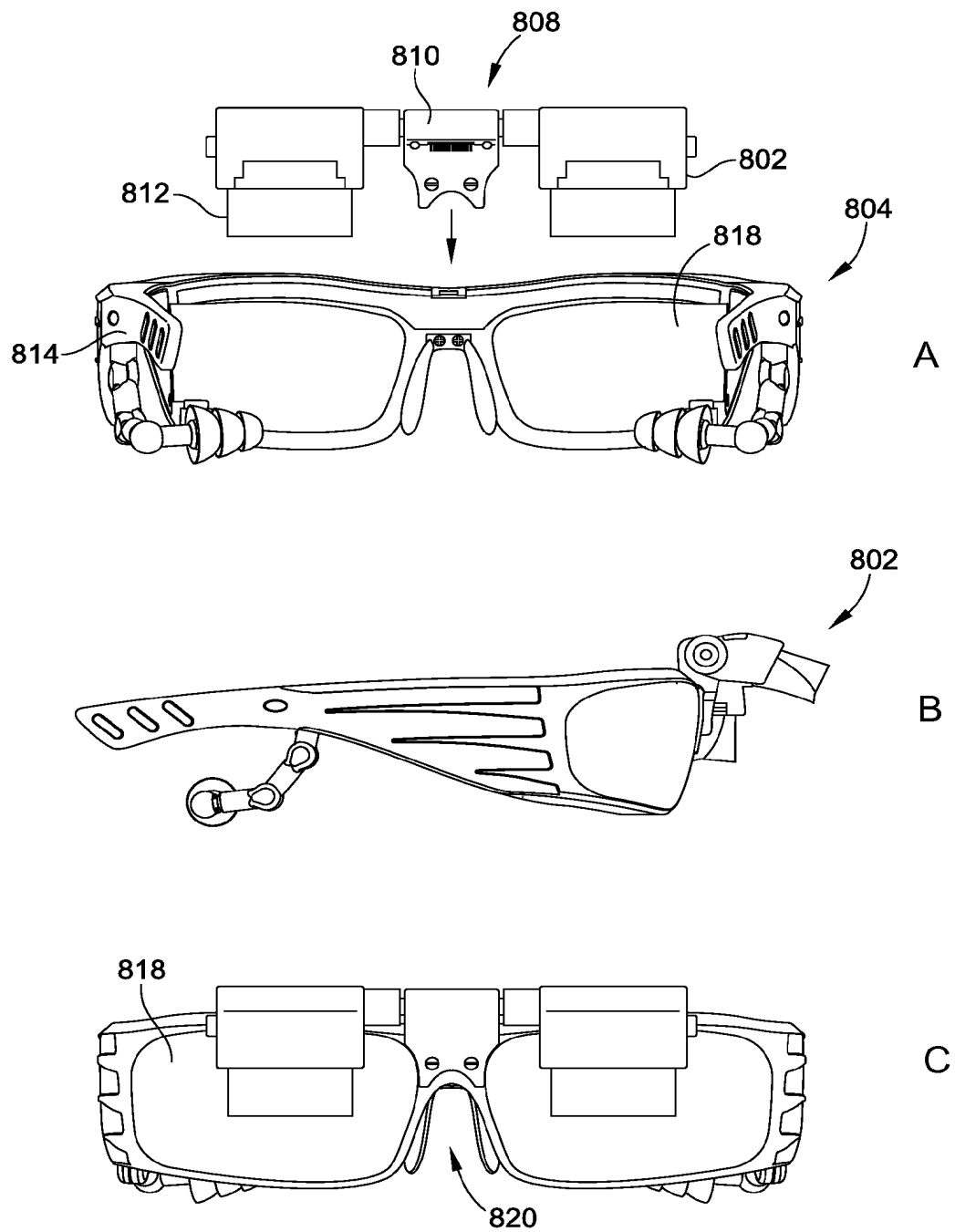
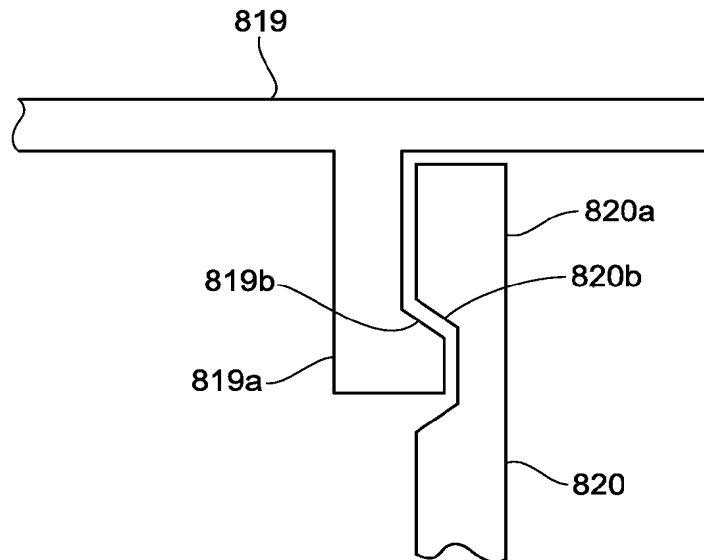
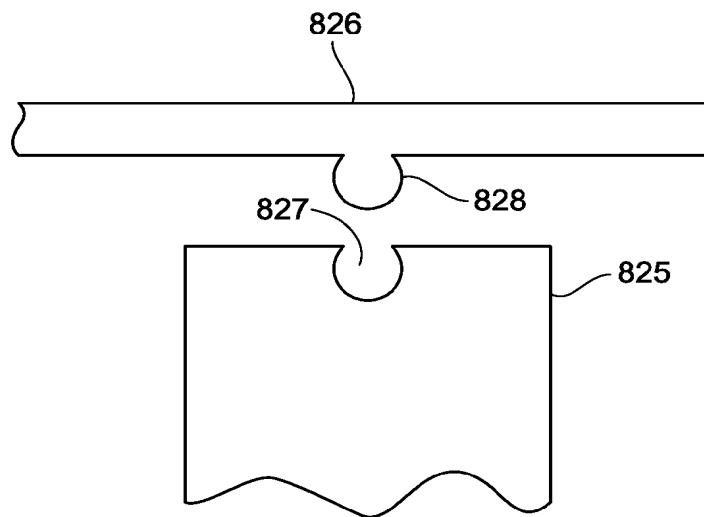
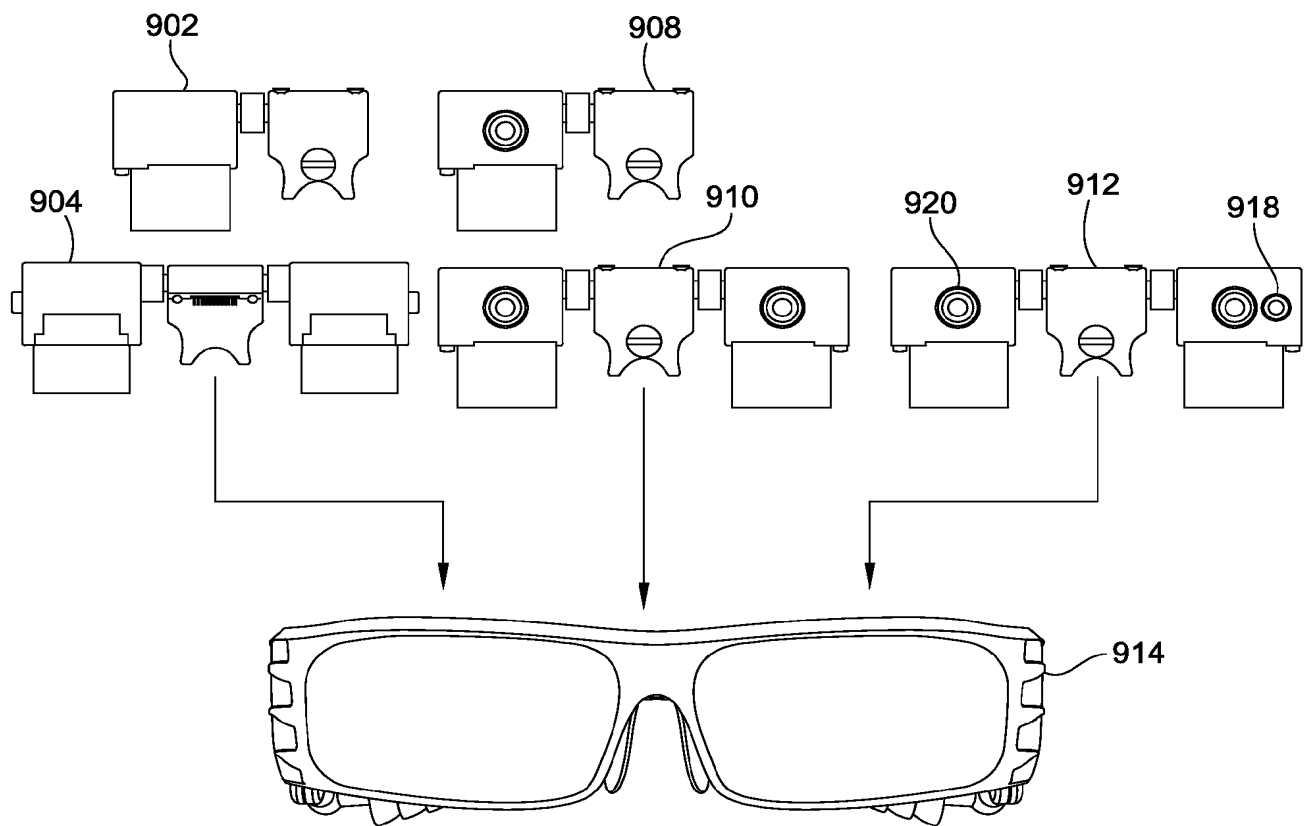
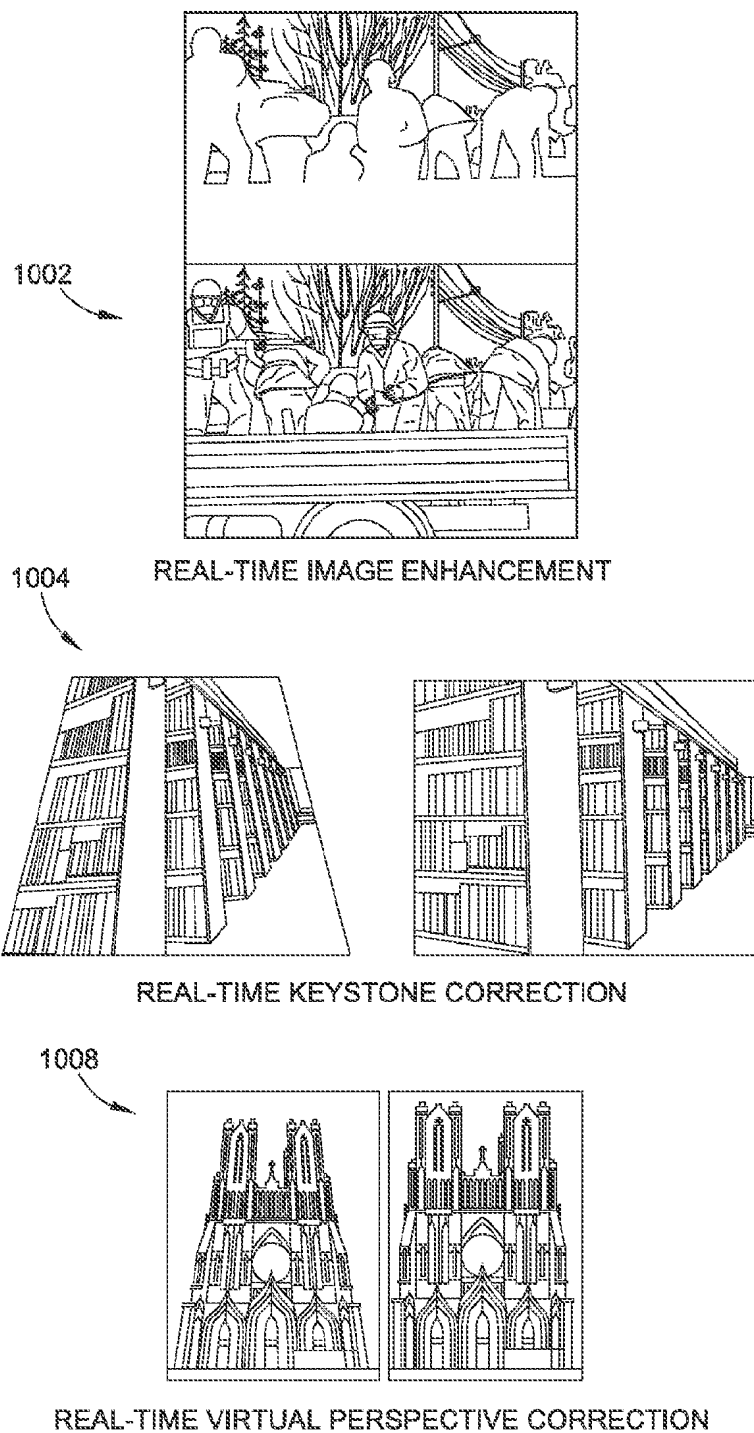


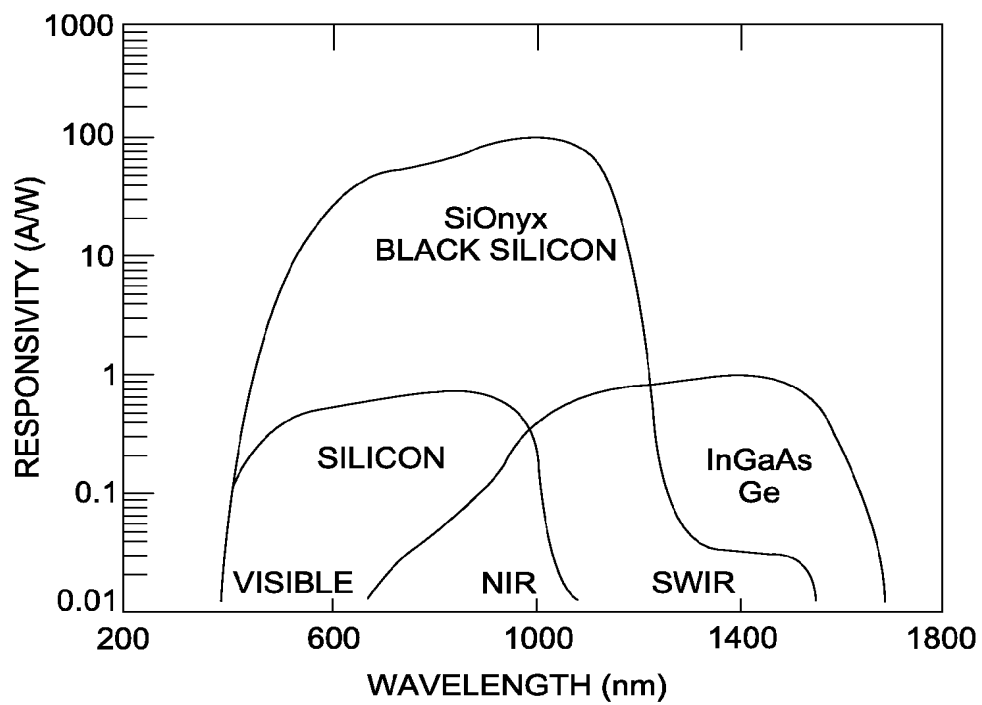
FIG. 7

**FIG. 8**

**FIG. 8D****FIG. 8E**

**FIG. 9**

**FIG. 10**

**FIG. 11**

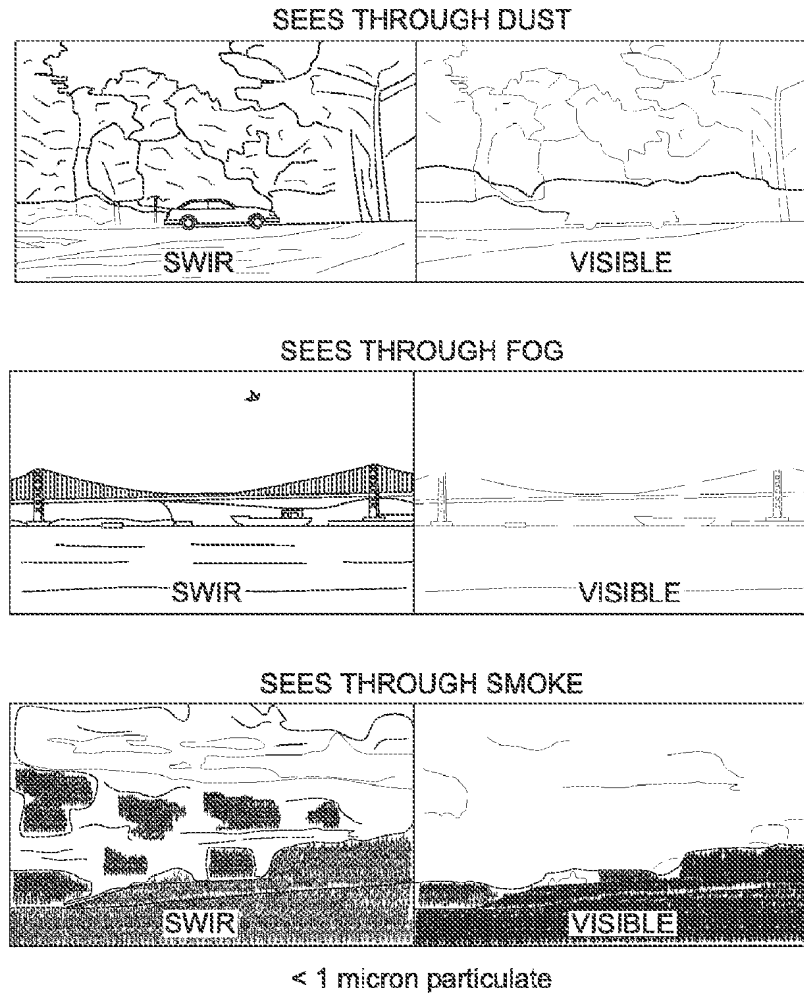


FIG. 12

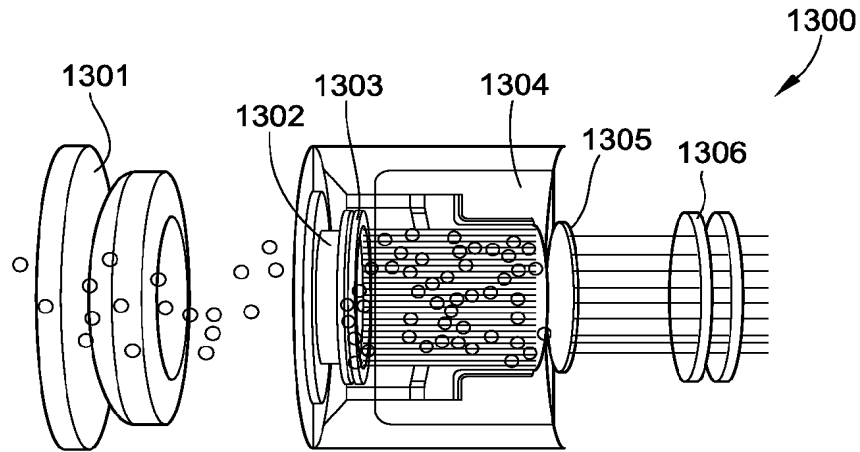


FIG. 13A
PRIOR ART

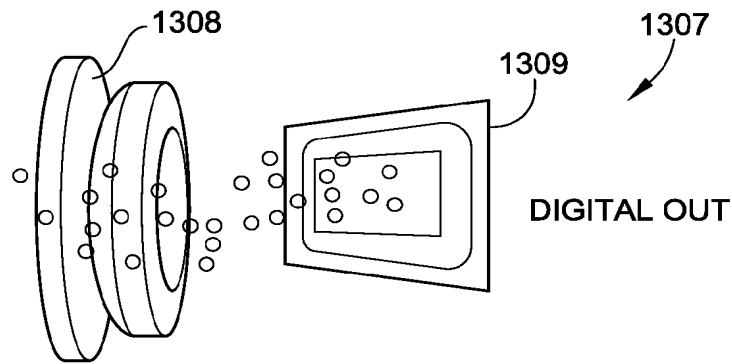


FIG. 13B

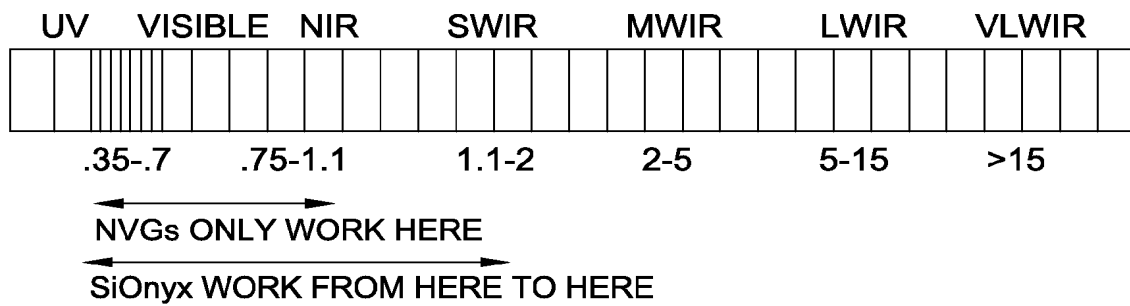
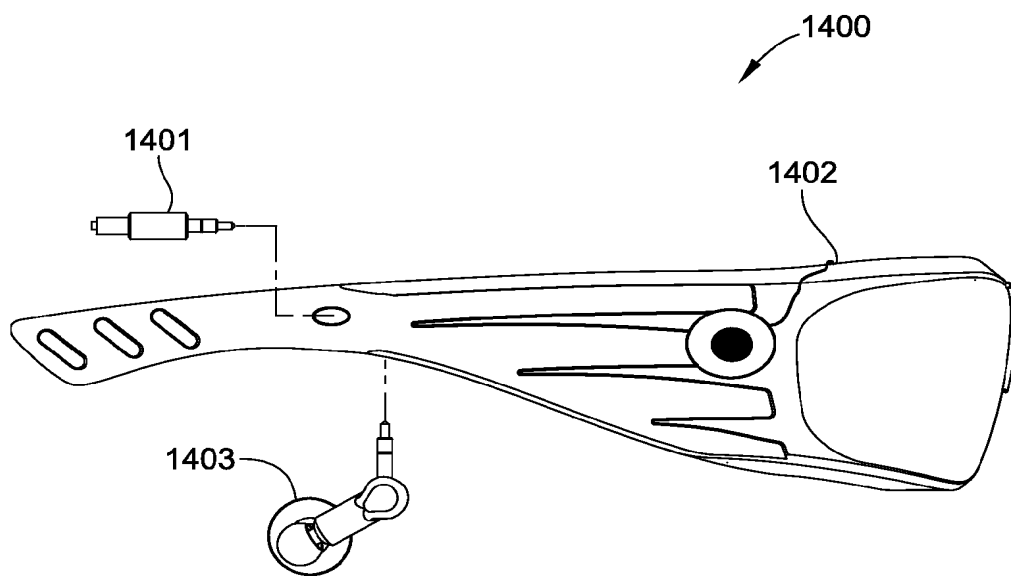


FIG. 13C

**FIG. 14**

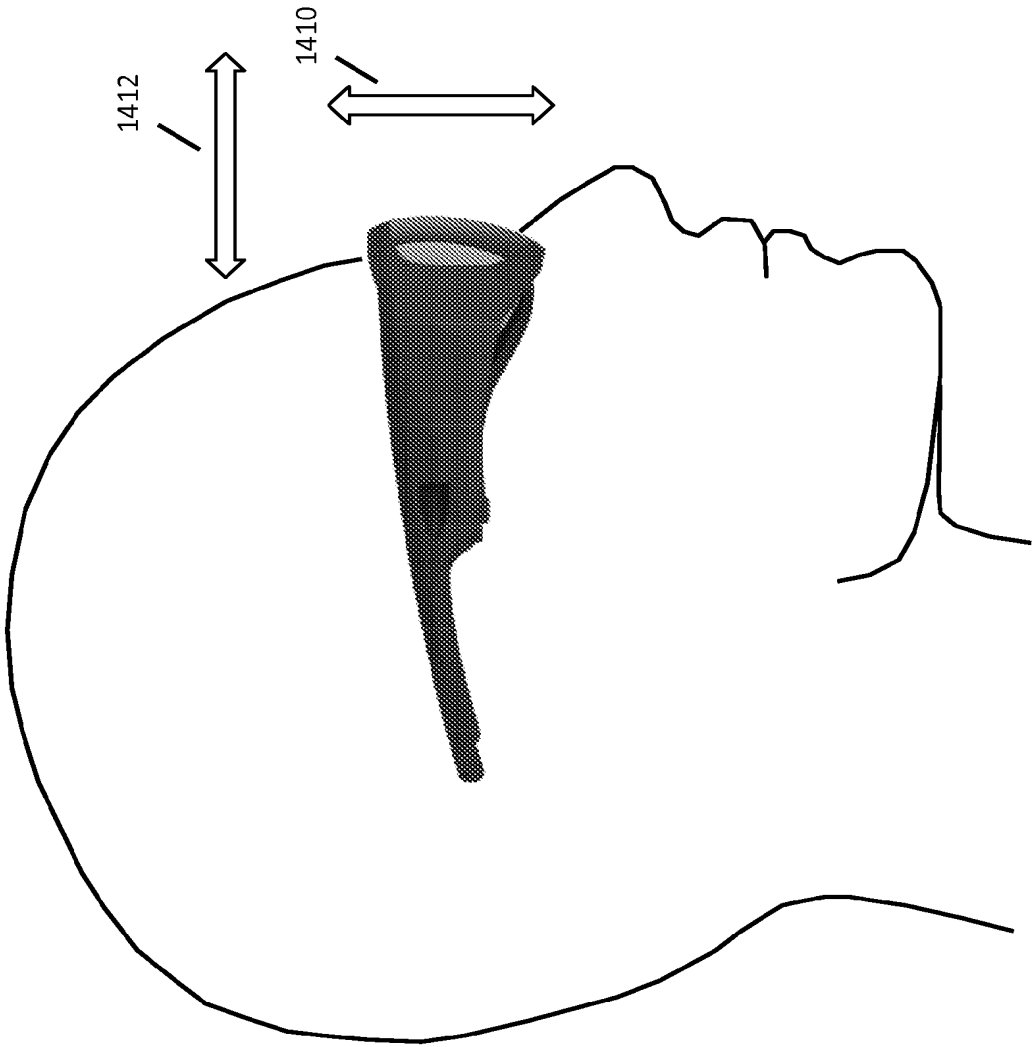
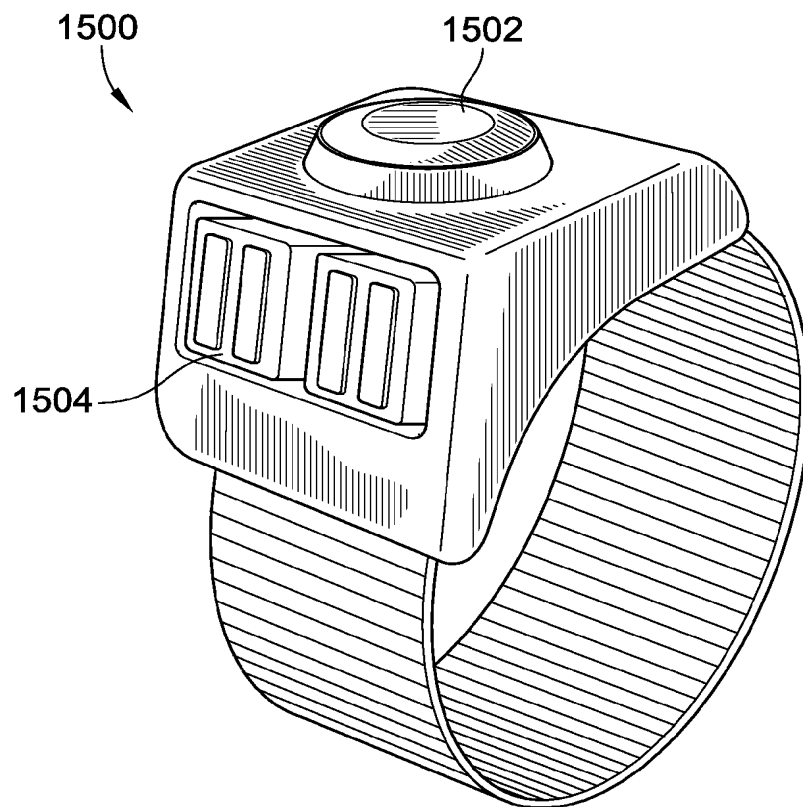


FIG. 14A

**FIG. 15**

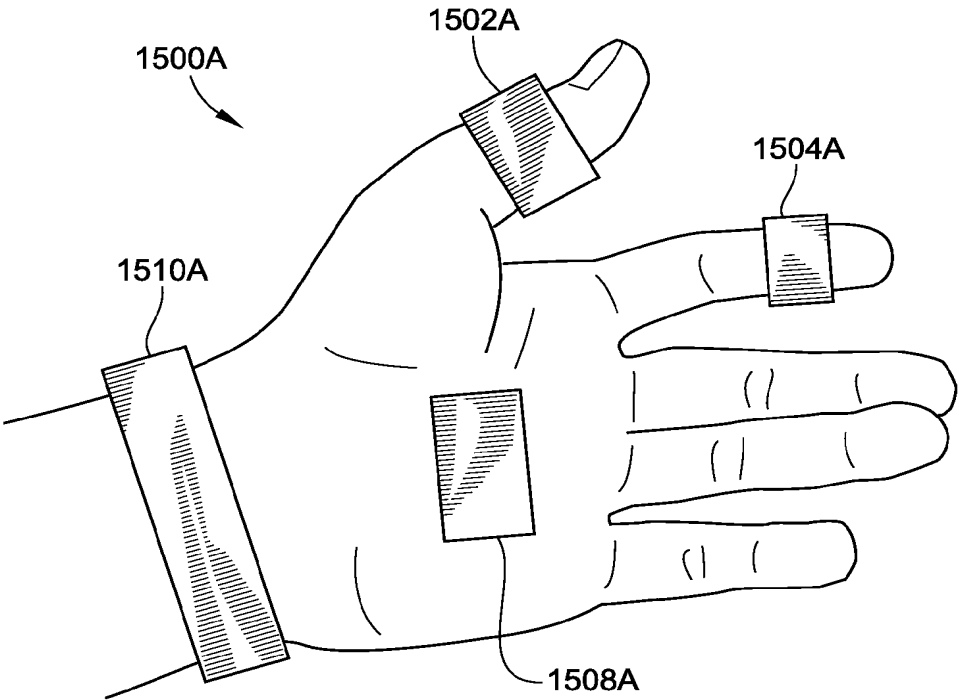
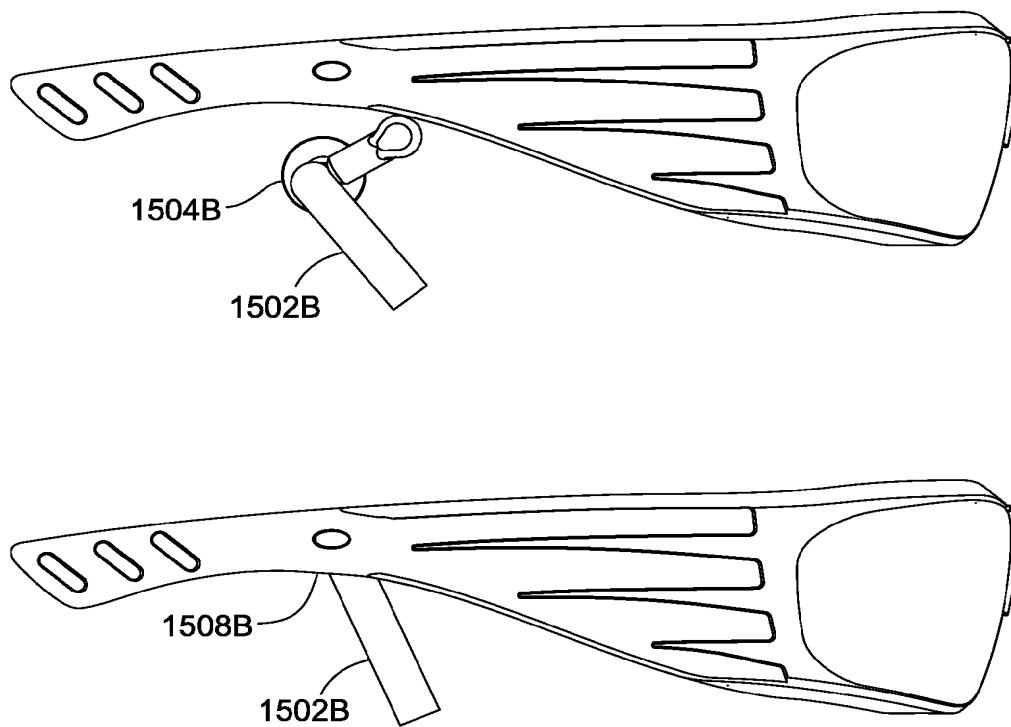


FIG. 15A

**FIG. 15B**

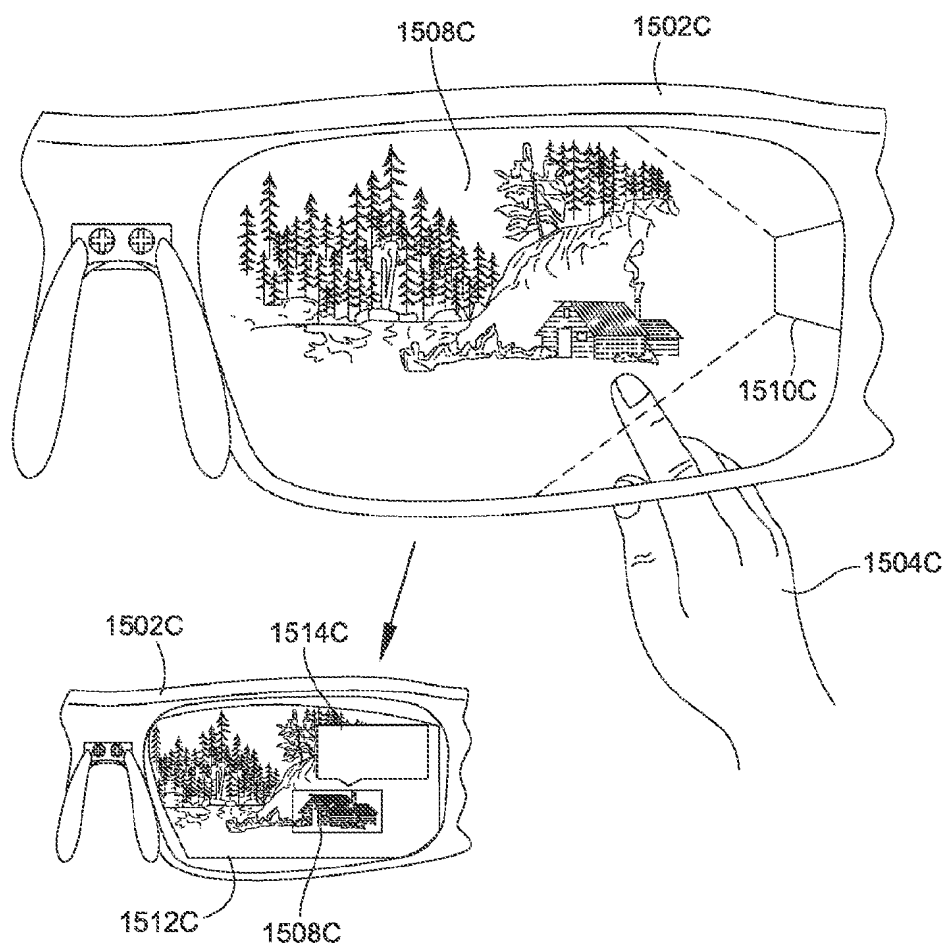
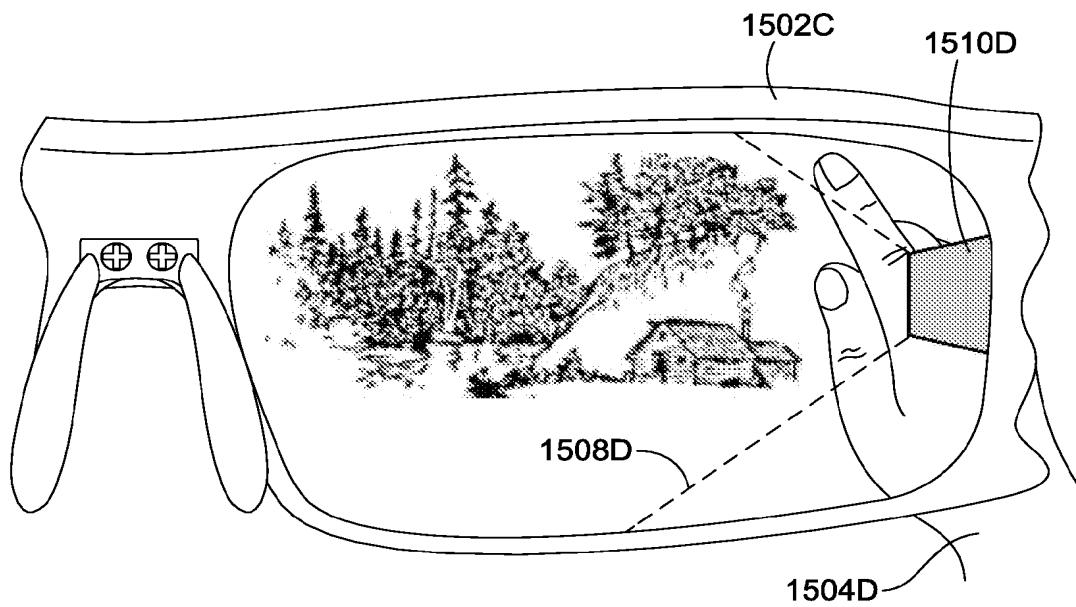
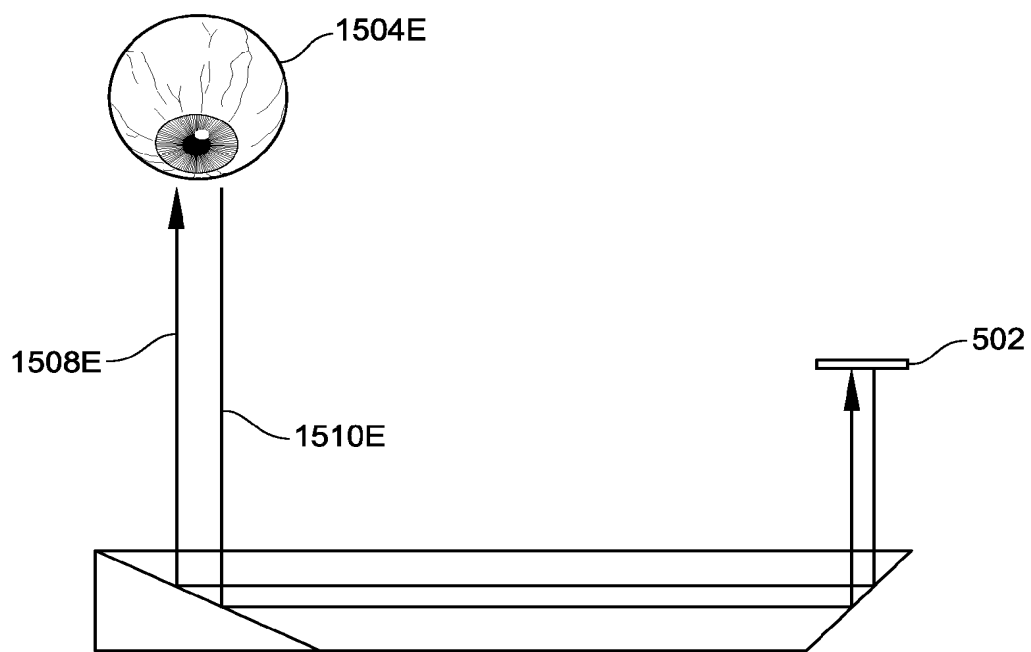
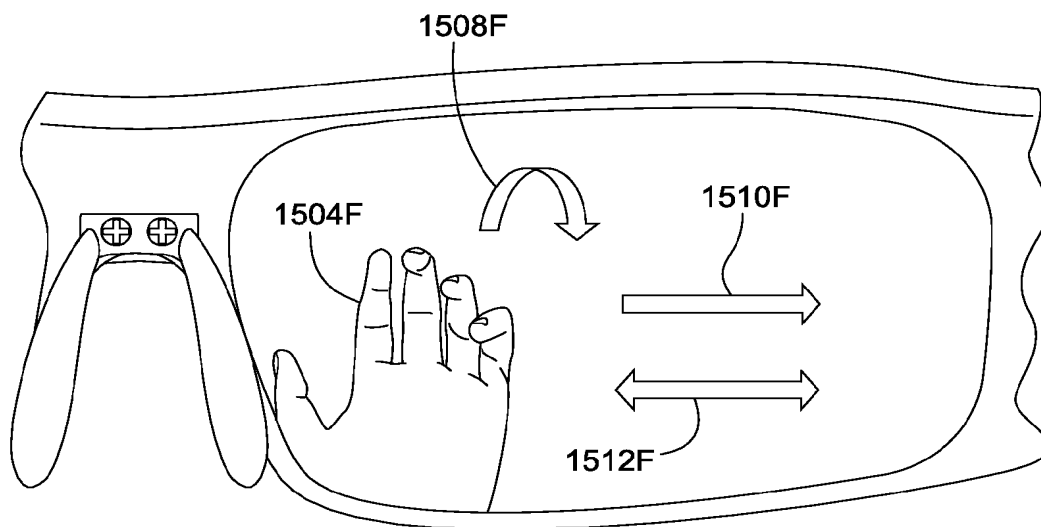
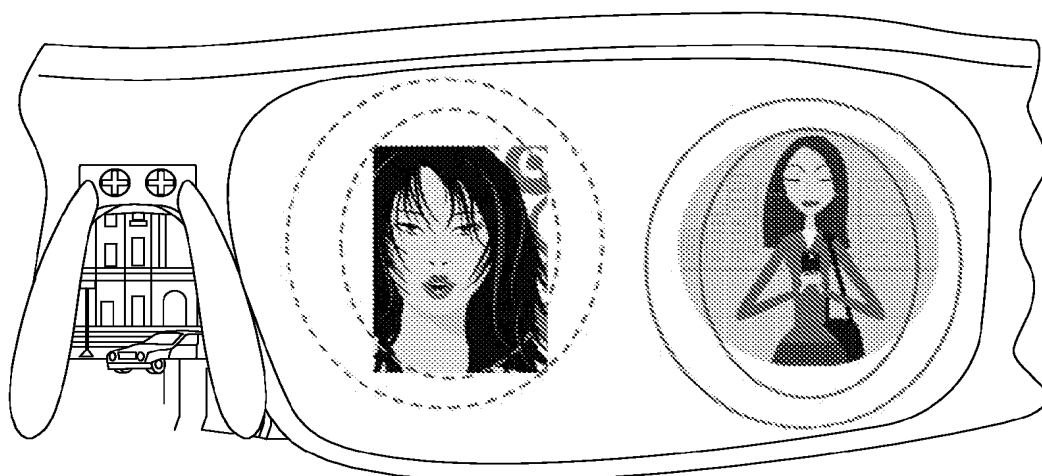


FIG. 15C

**FIG. 15D**

**FIG. 15E**

**FIG. 15F**

**FIG. 16**

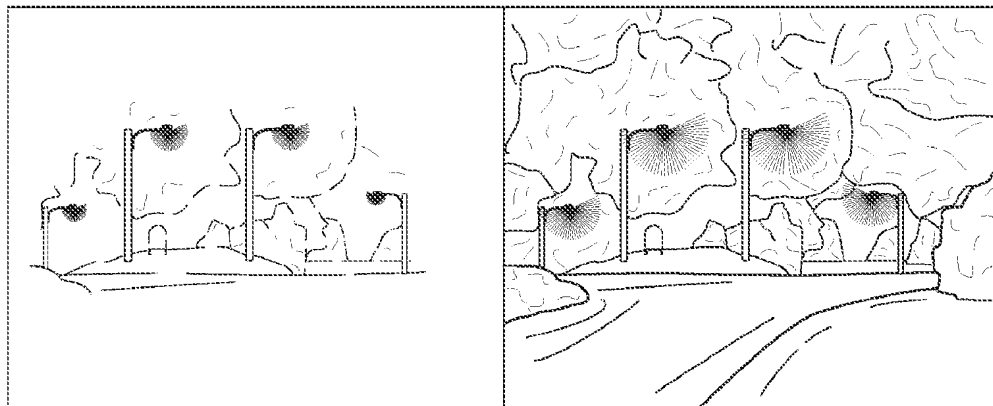


FIG. 17



FIG. 18

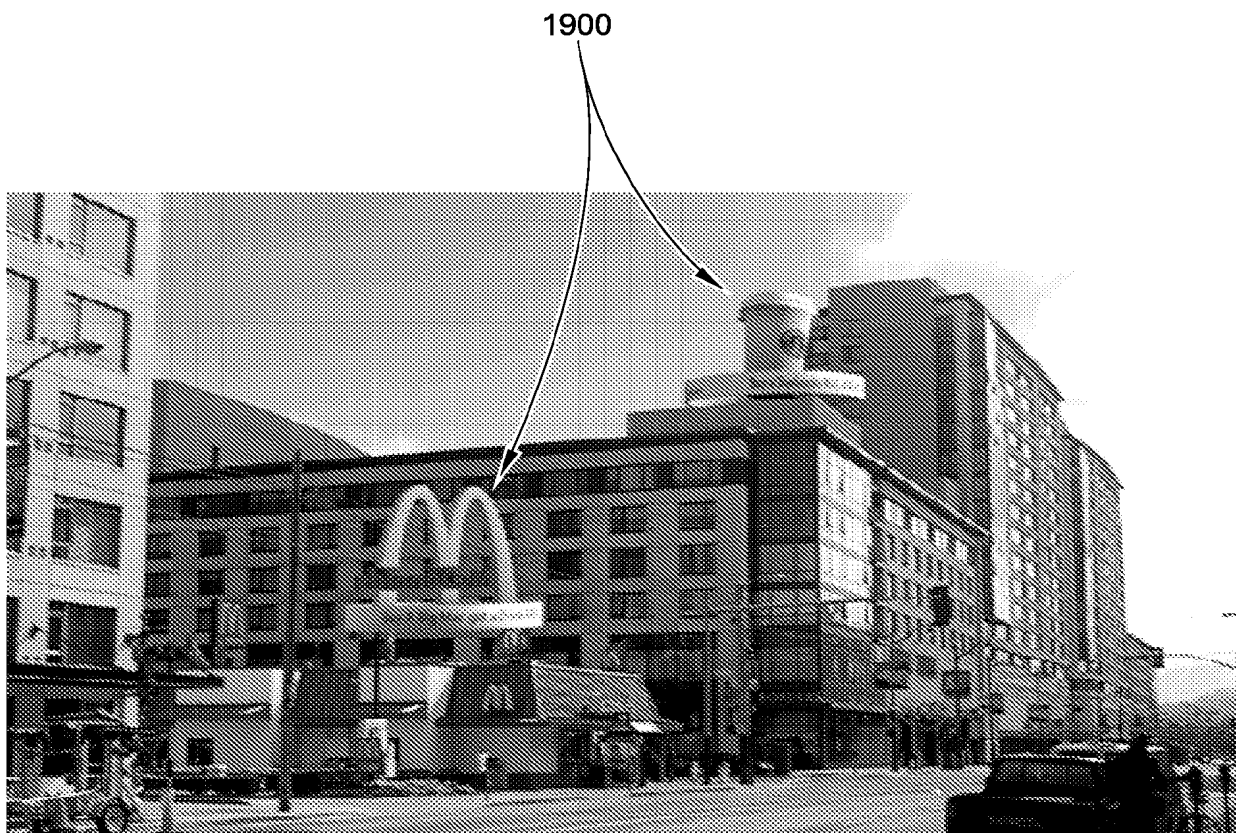
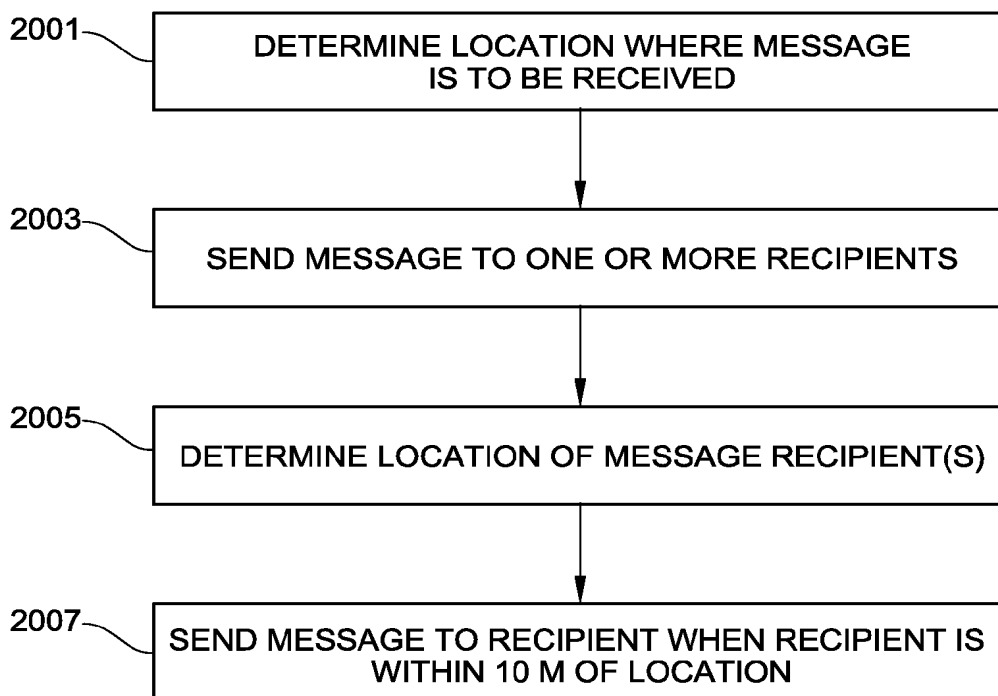


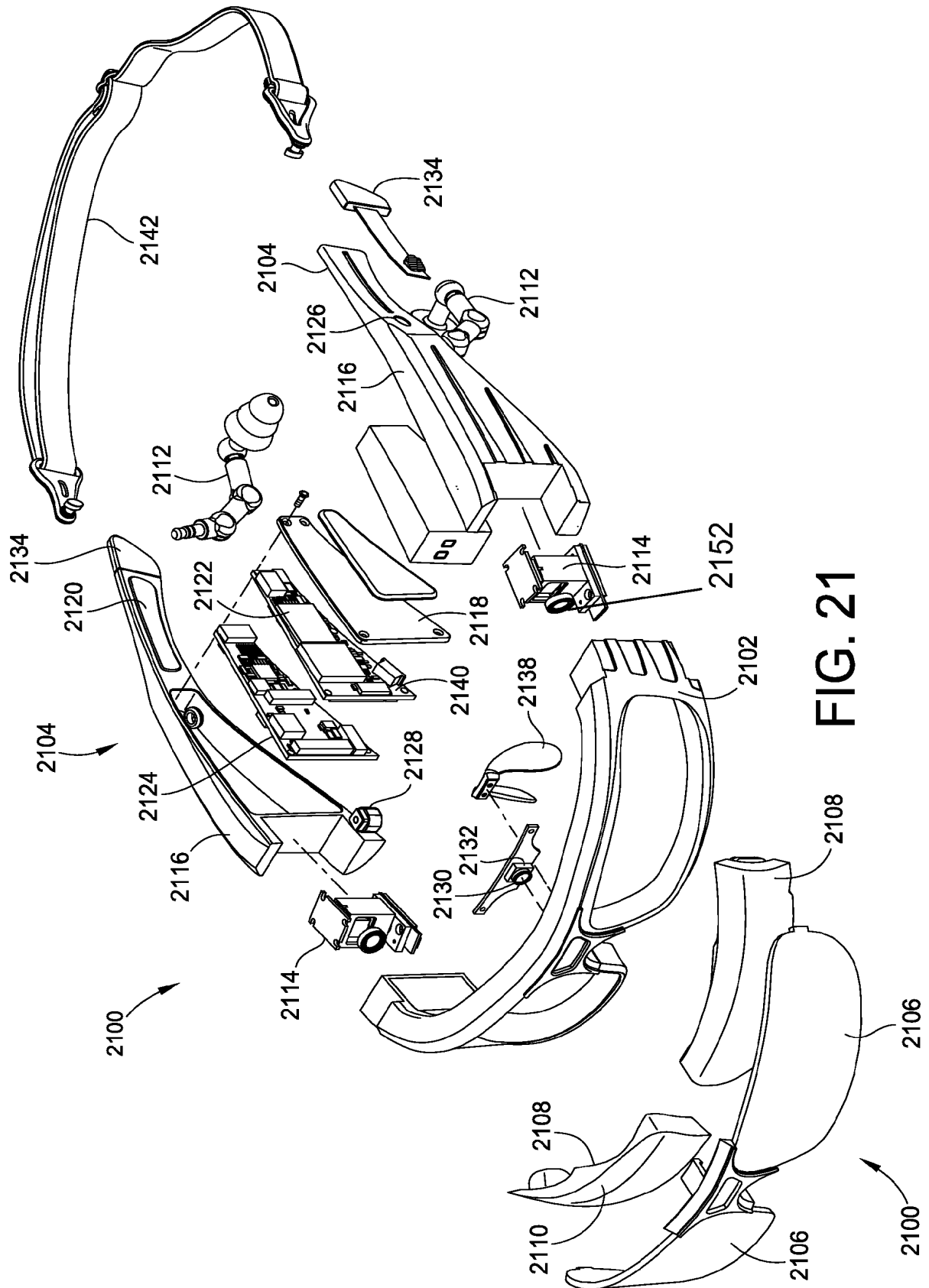
FIG. 19

2000



FIG. 20

**FIG. 20A**



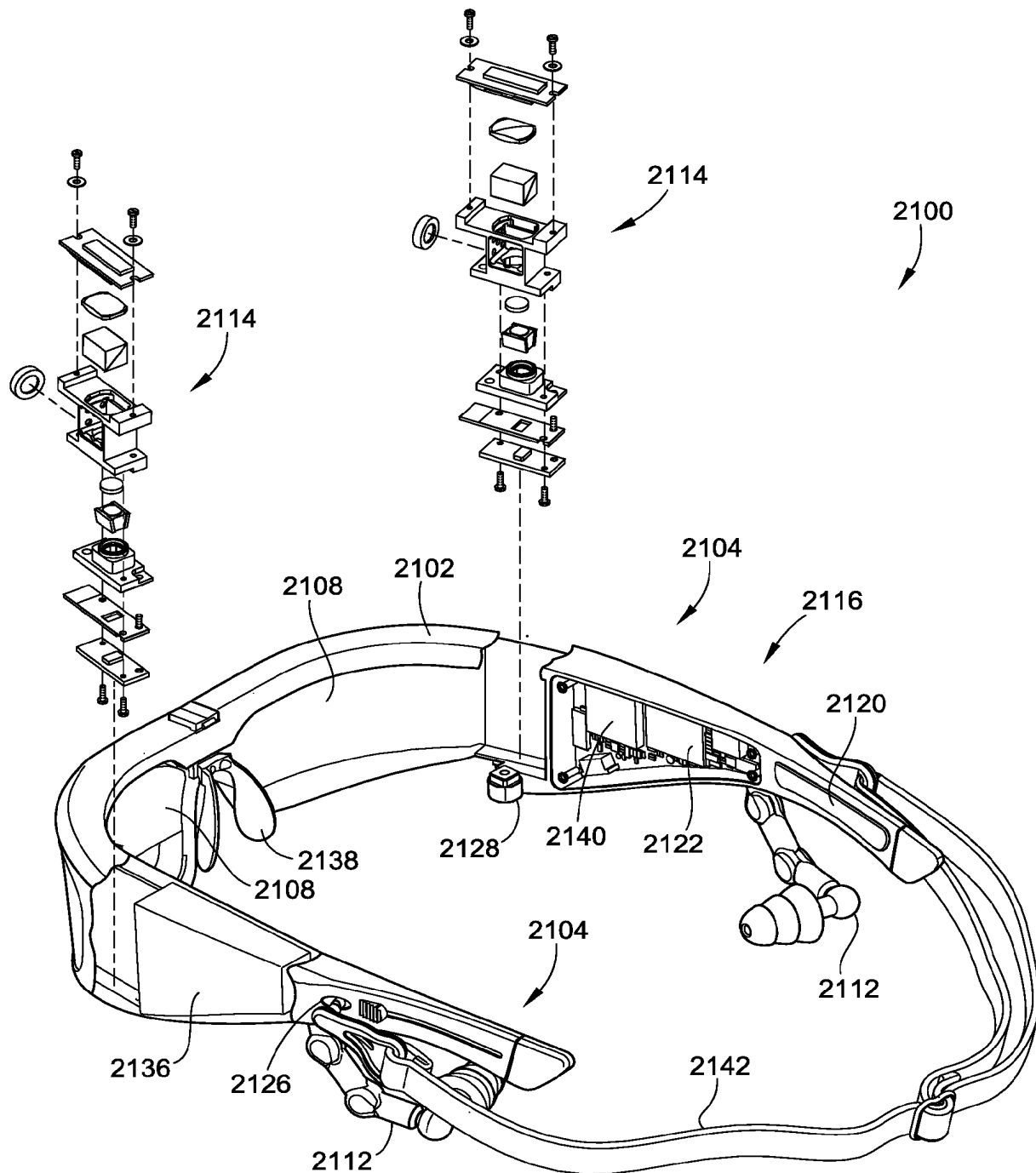


FIG. 22

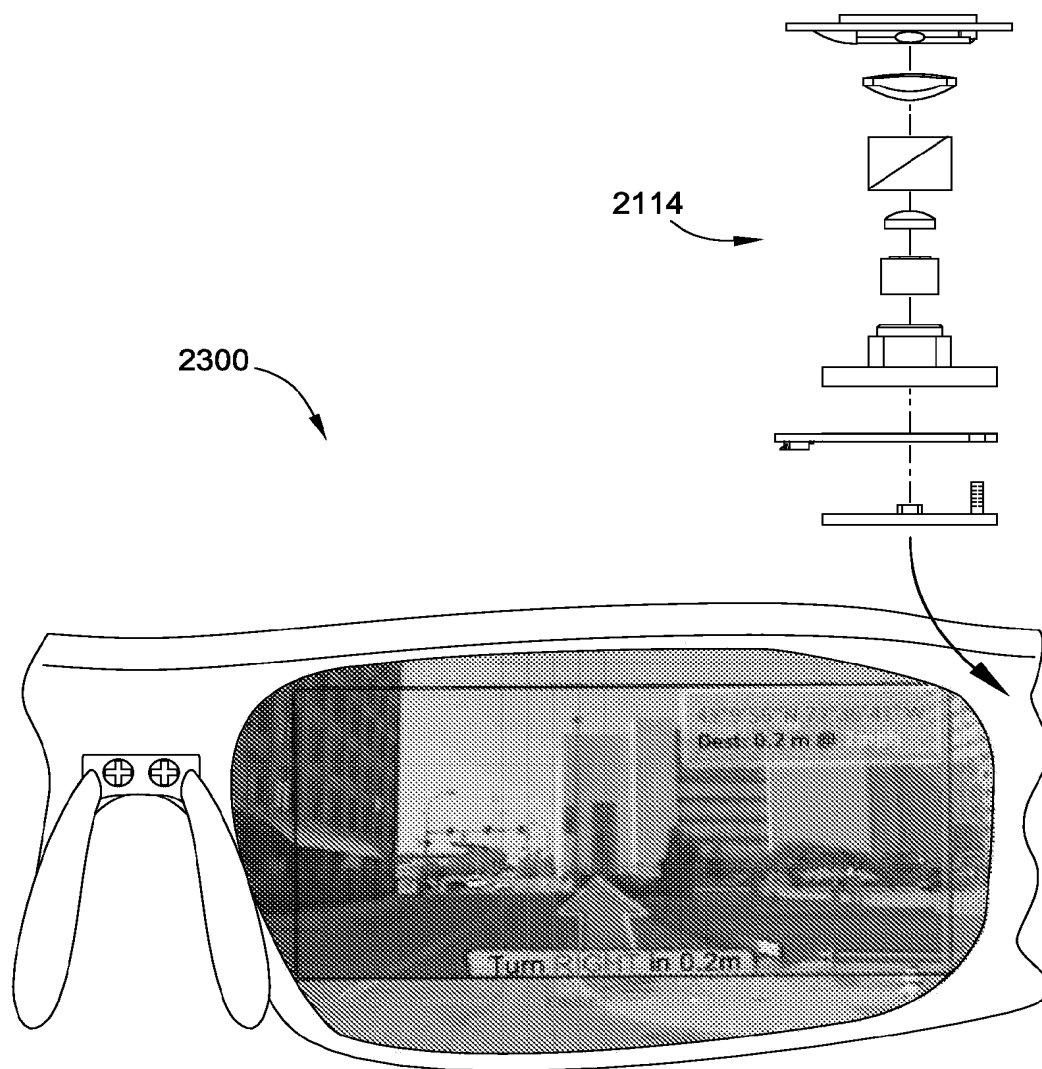
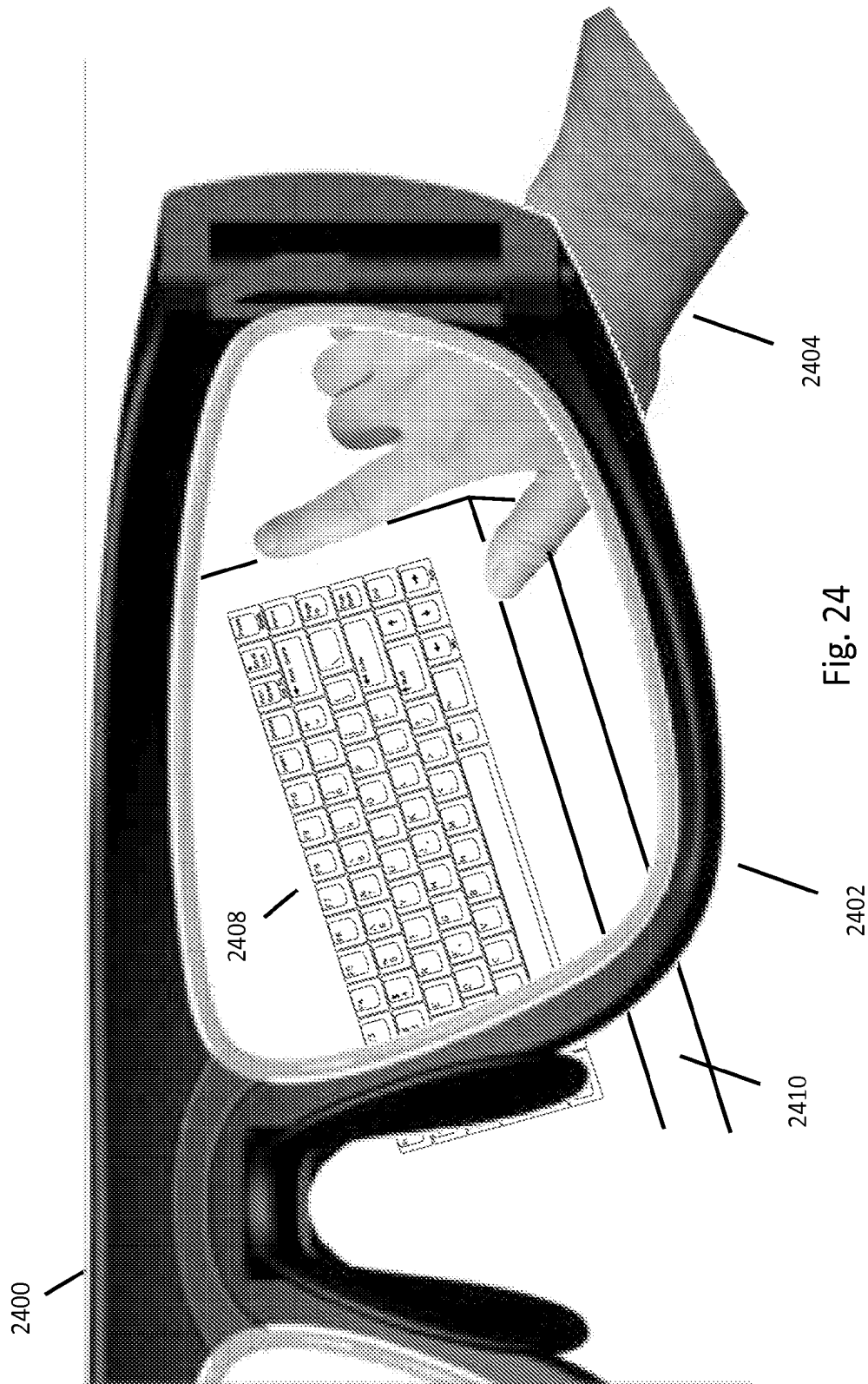


FIG. 23



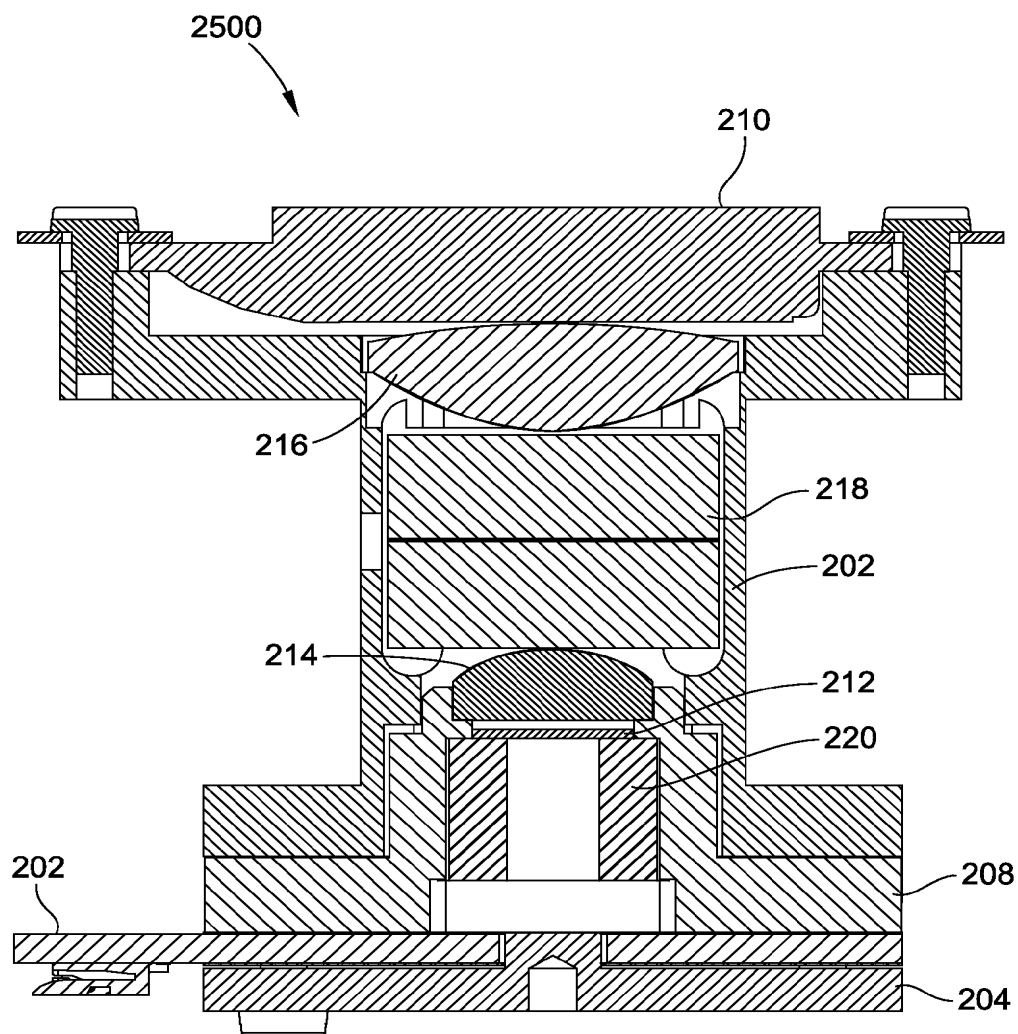
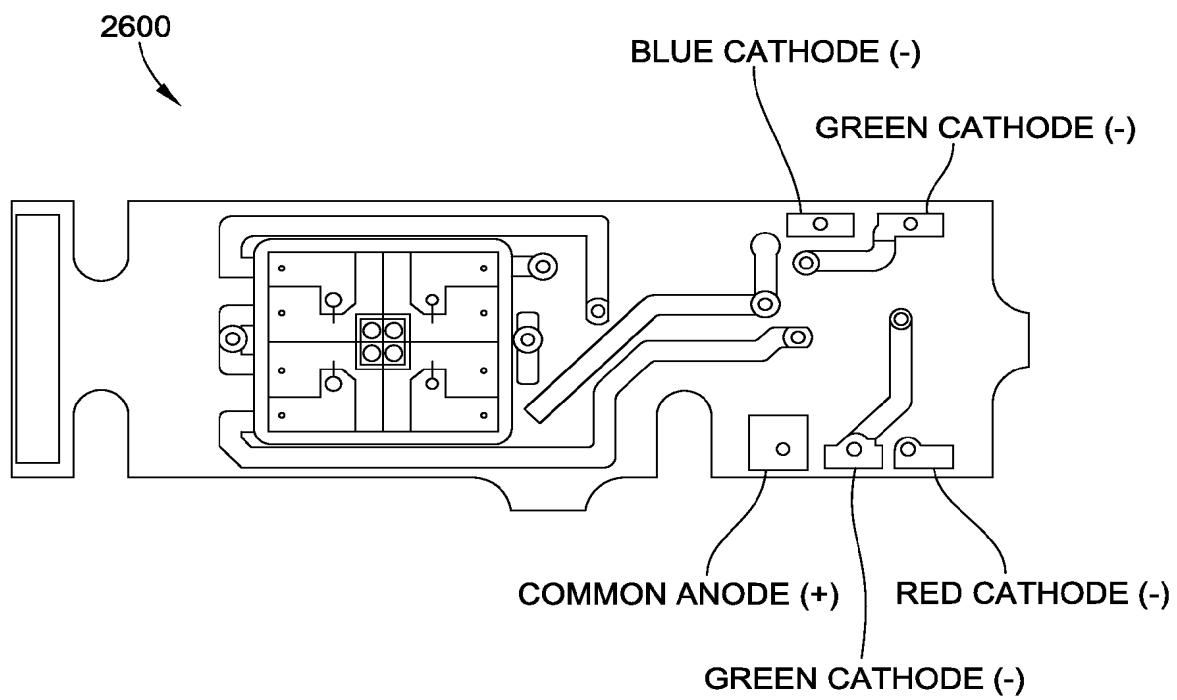


FIG. 25

**FIG. 26**

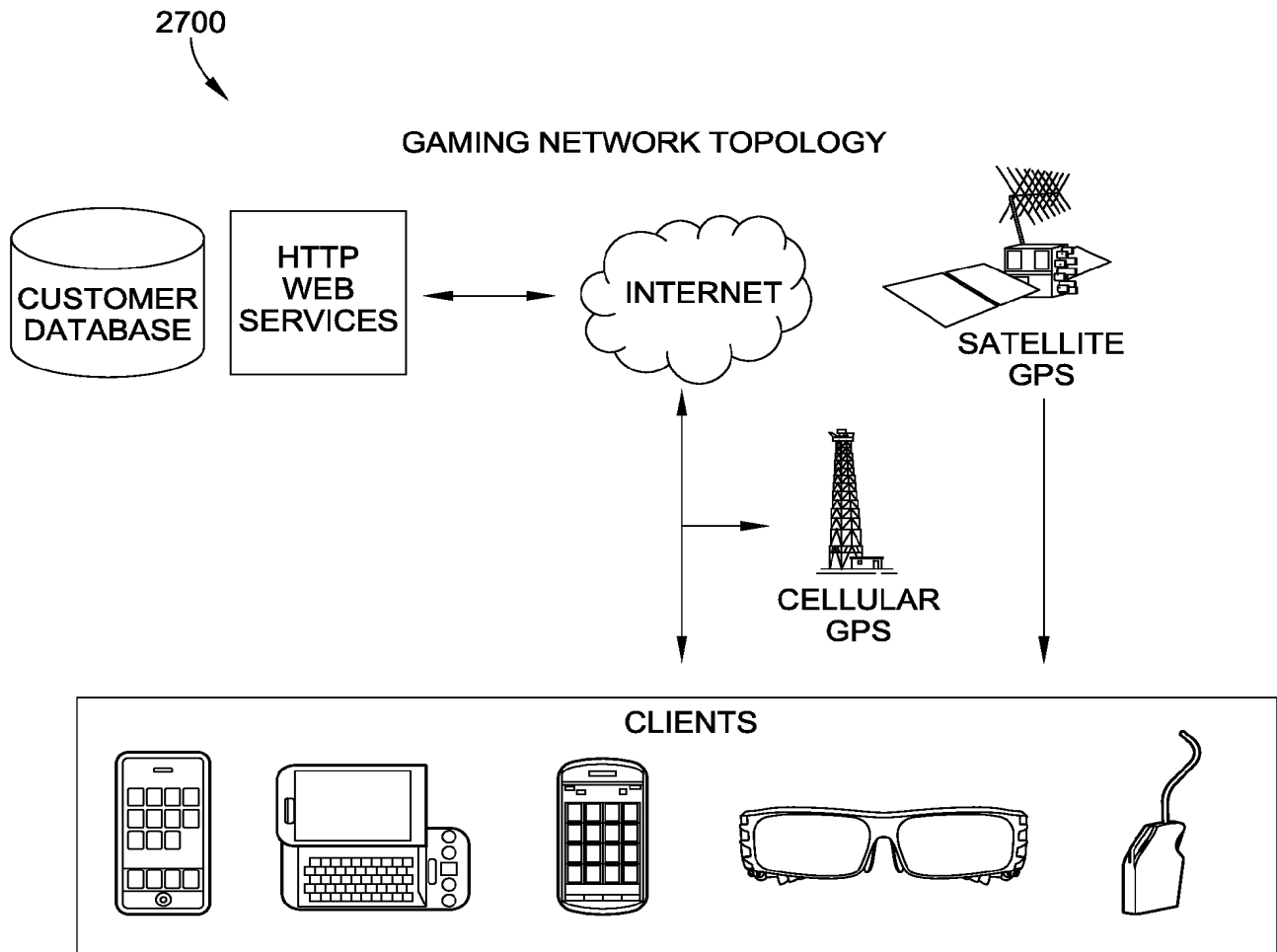


FIG. 27

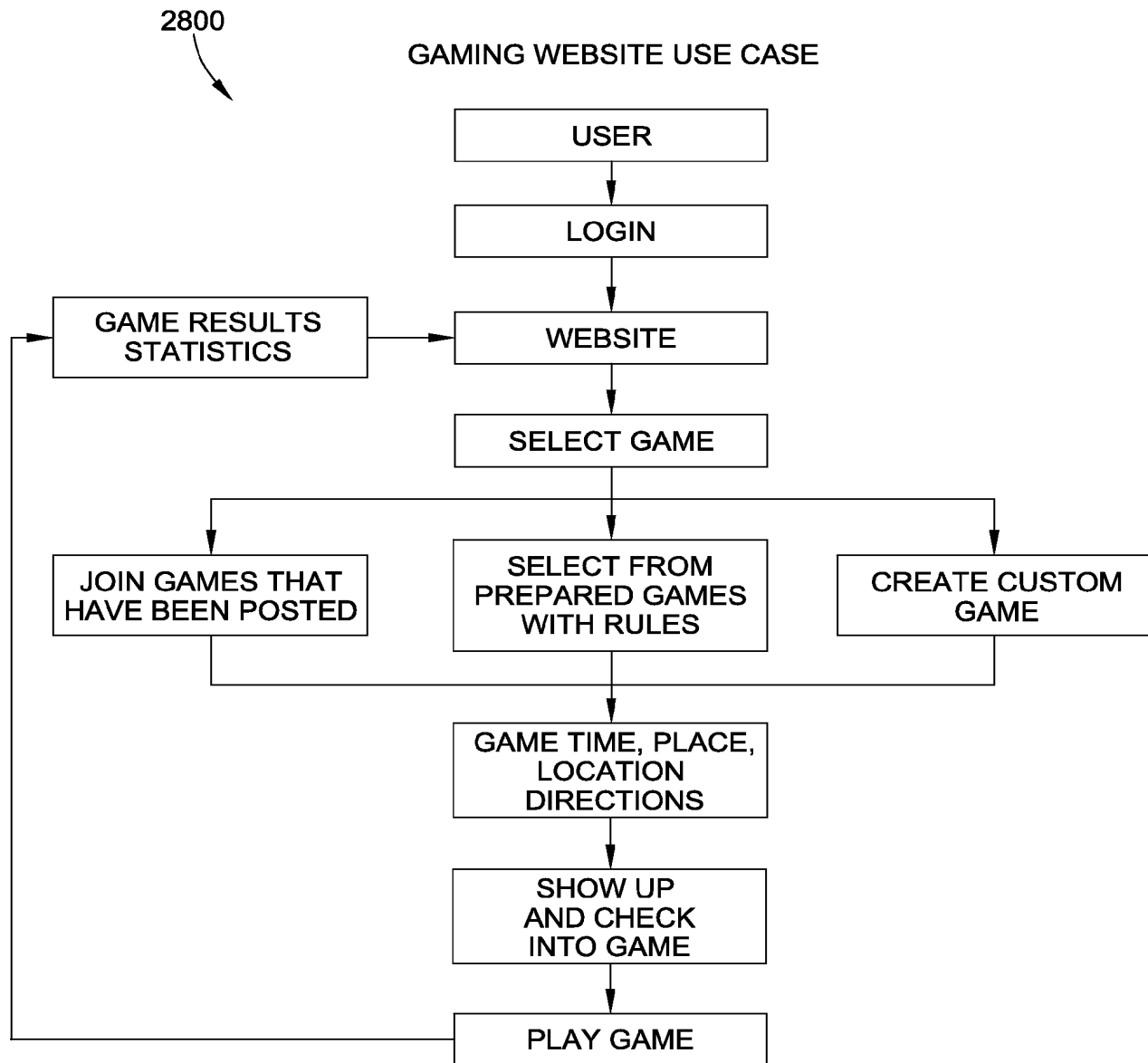


FIG. 28

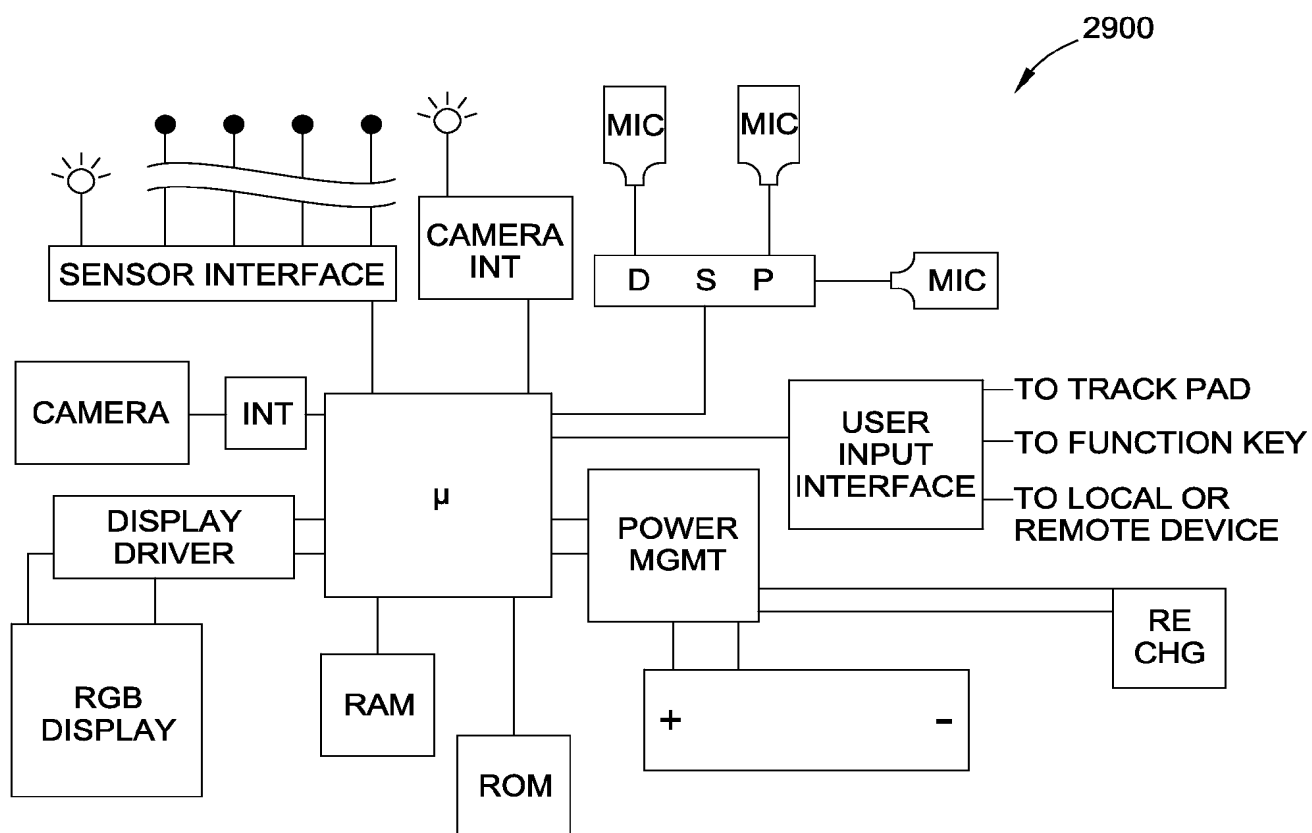


FIG. 29

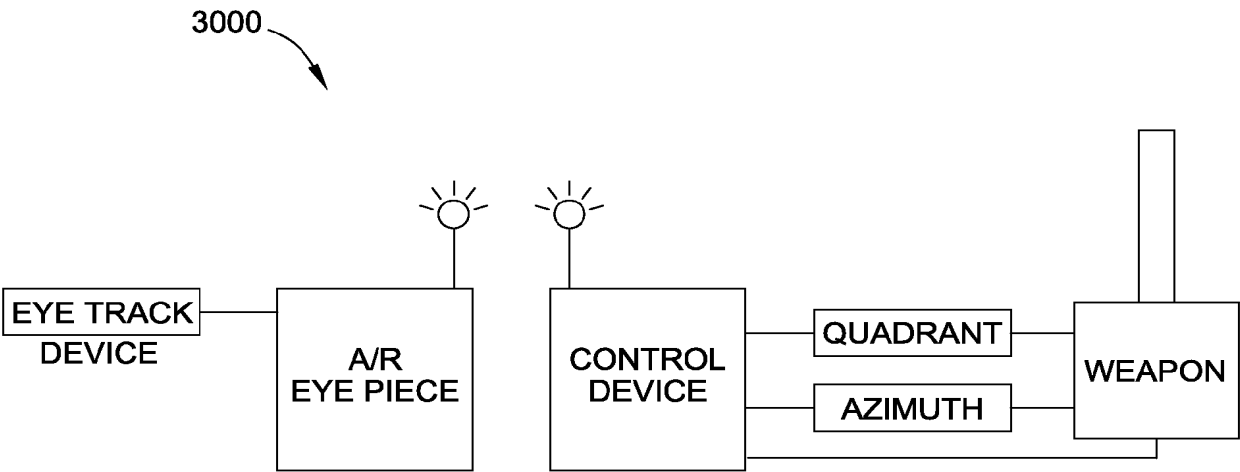


FIG. 30

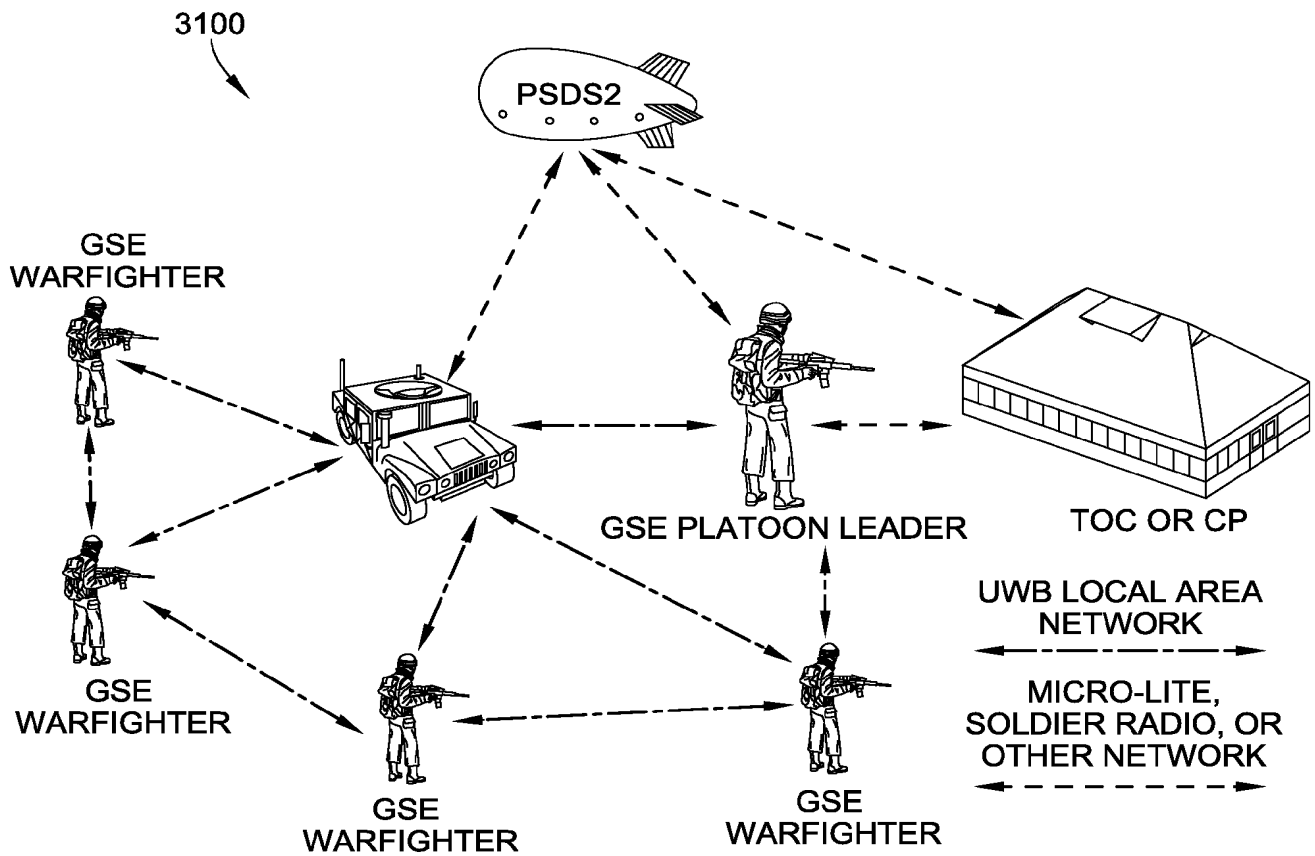
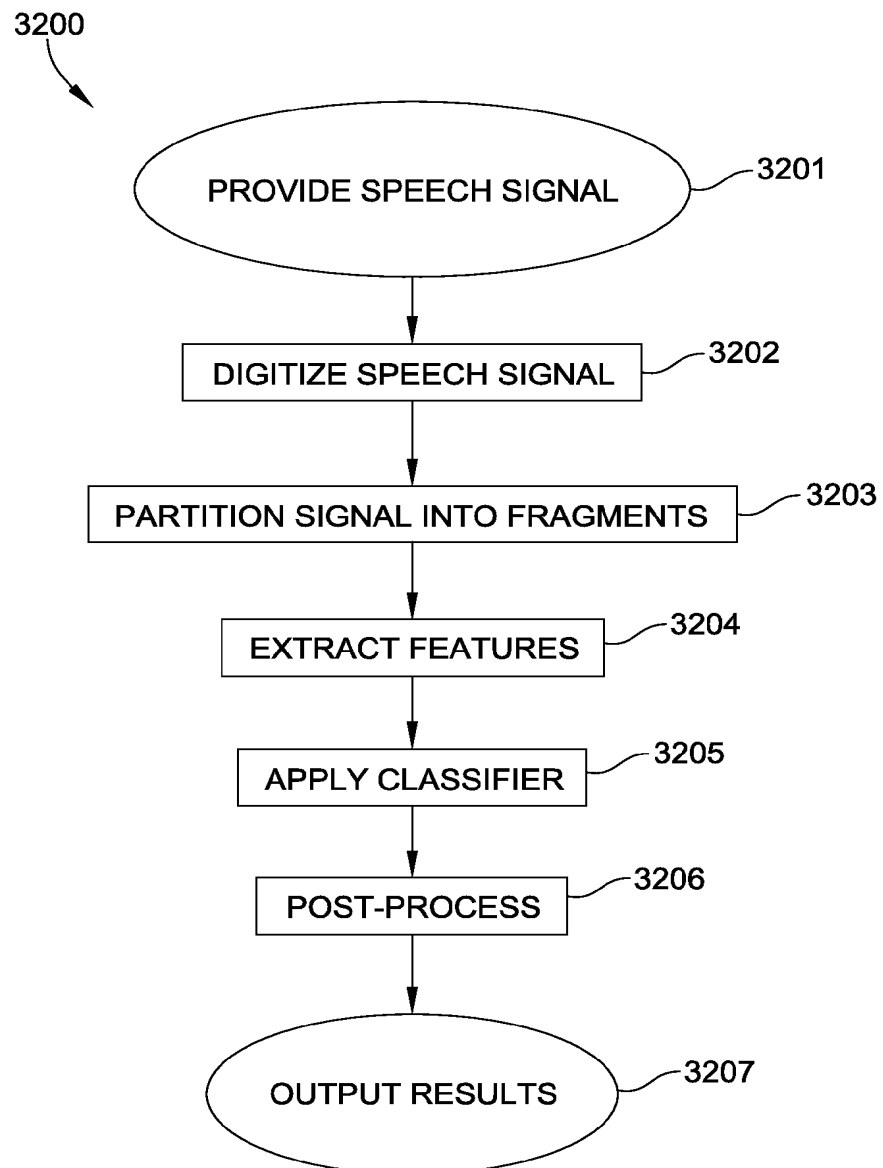
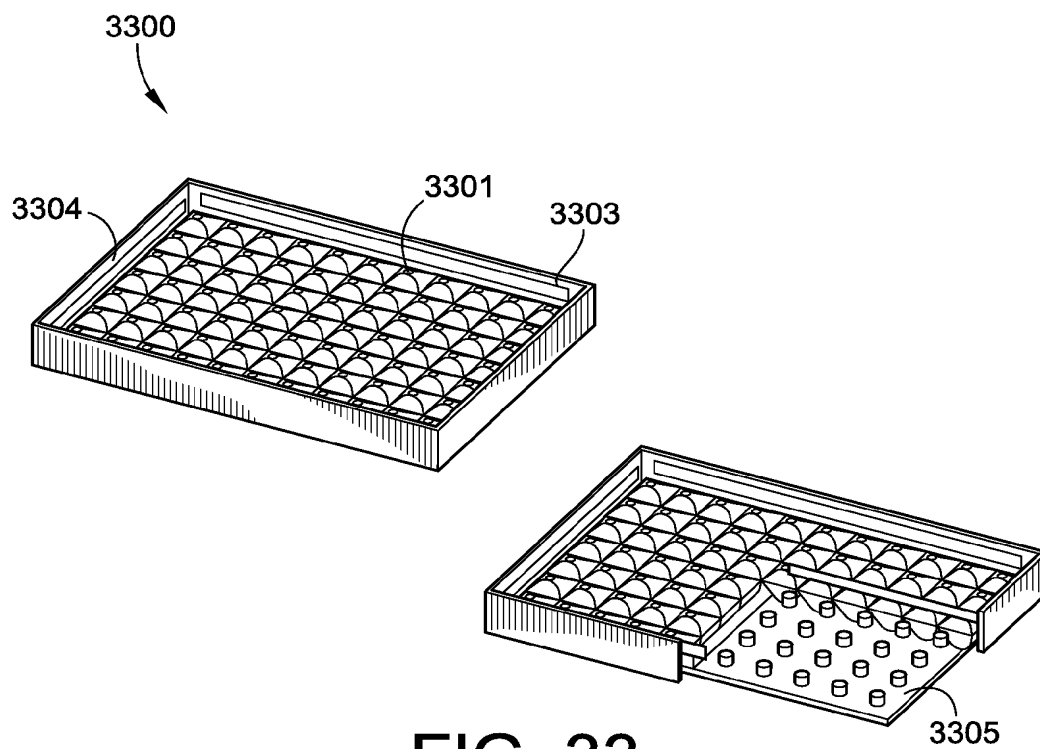


FIG. 31

**FIG. 32**

**FIG. 33**

TRADITIONAL OPTICAL APPROACH TO FINGER PRINTING

1. BASED ON TOTAL INTERNAL REFLECTION
2. THE RIDGES CONTACT THE PRISM AND SCATTER LIGHT
3. RIDGES ON THE FINGERS SHOW AS DASH LINES AND THE VALLEYS AS BRIGHT LINES

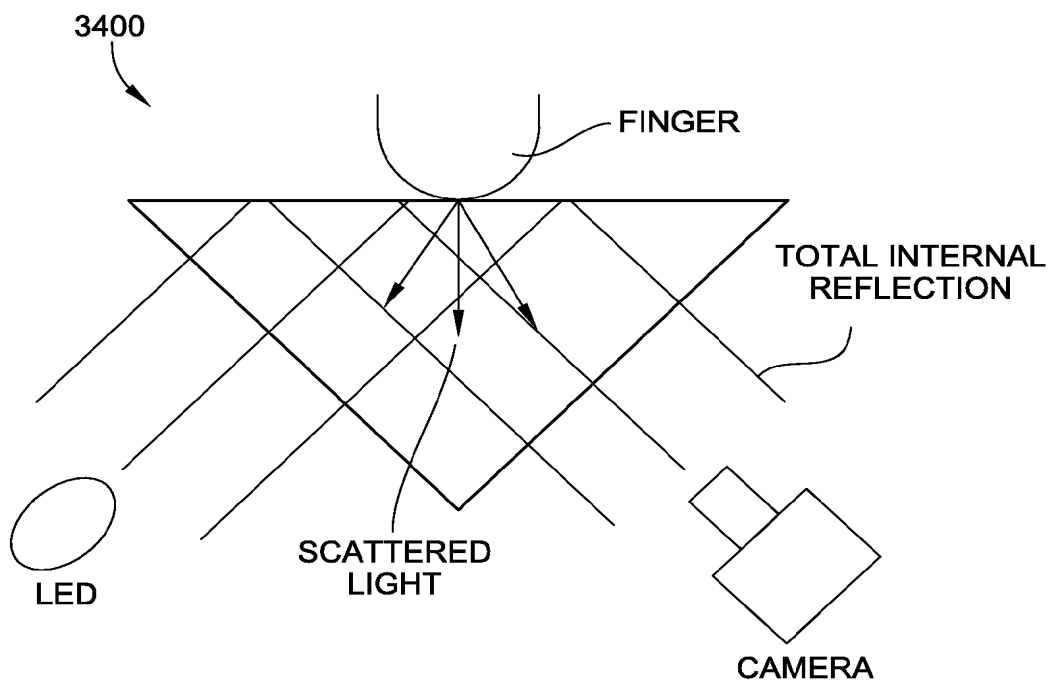
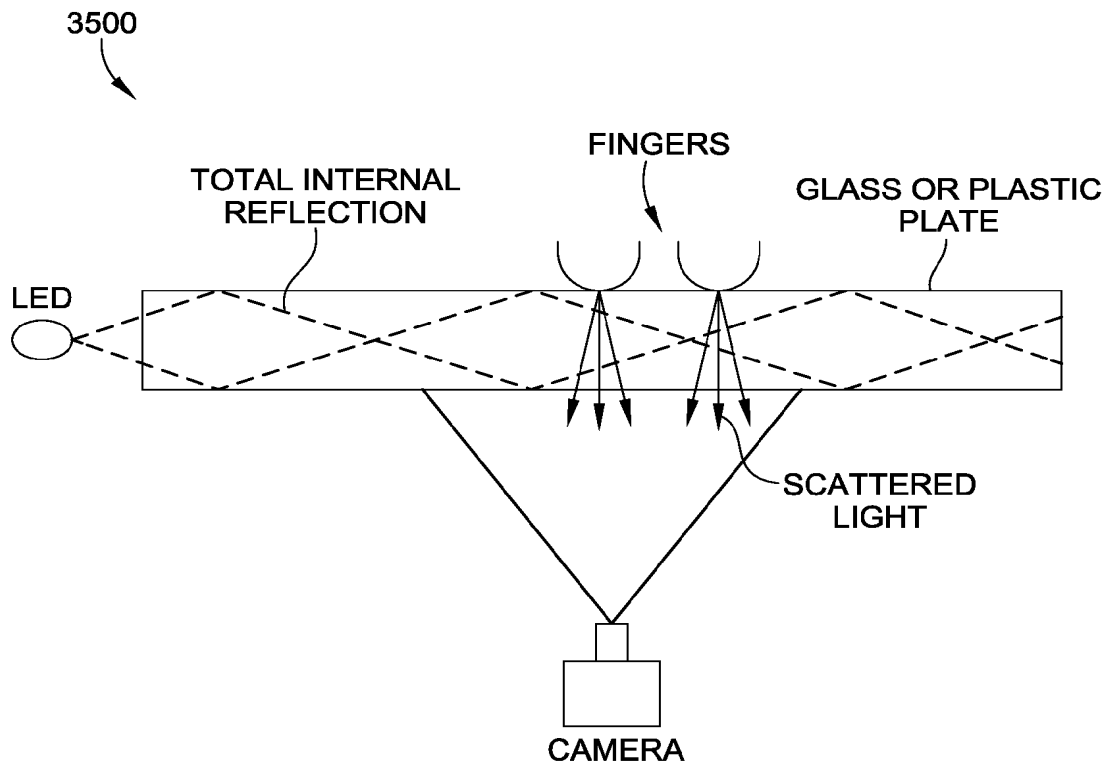
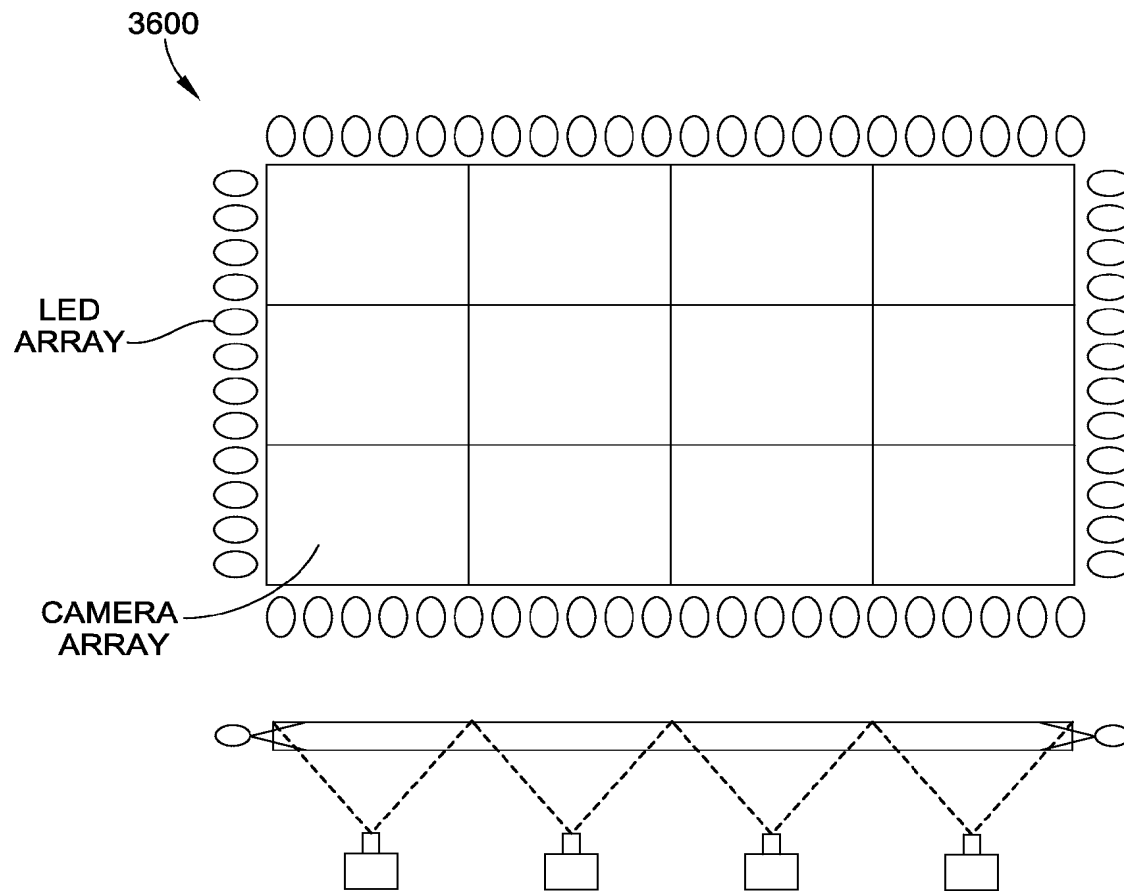


FIG. 34
PRIOR ART

IN THIS METHOD

1. RIDGES CONTACT THE PRISM AND SCATTER LIGHT, THE CAMERA CAPTURES THIS LIGHT.
2. RIDGES ON THE FINGERS SHOW AS BRIGHT LINES WITH VALLEYS AS DARK LINES.

**FIG. 35**

**FIG. 36**

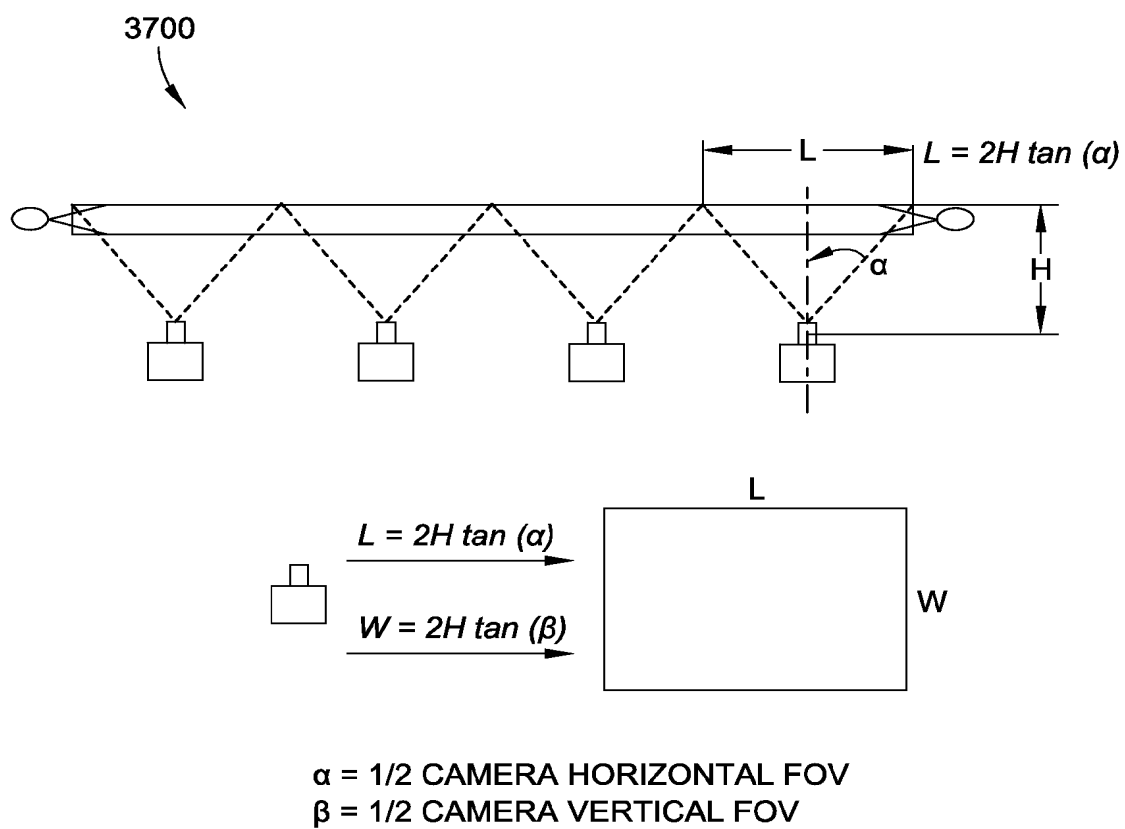


FIG. 37

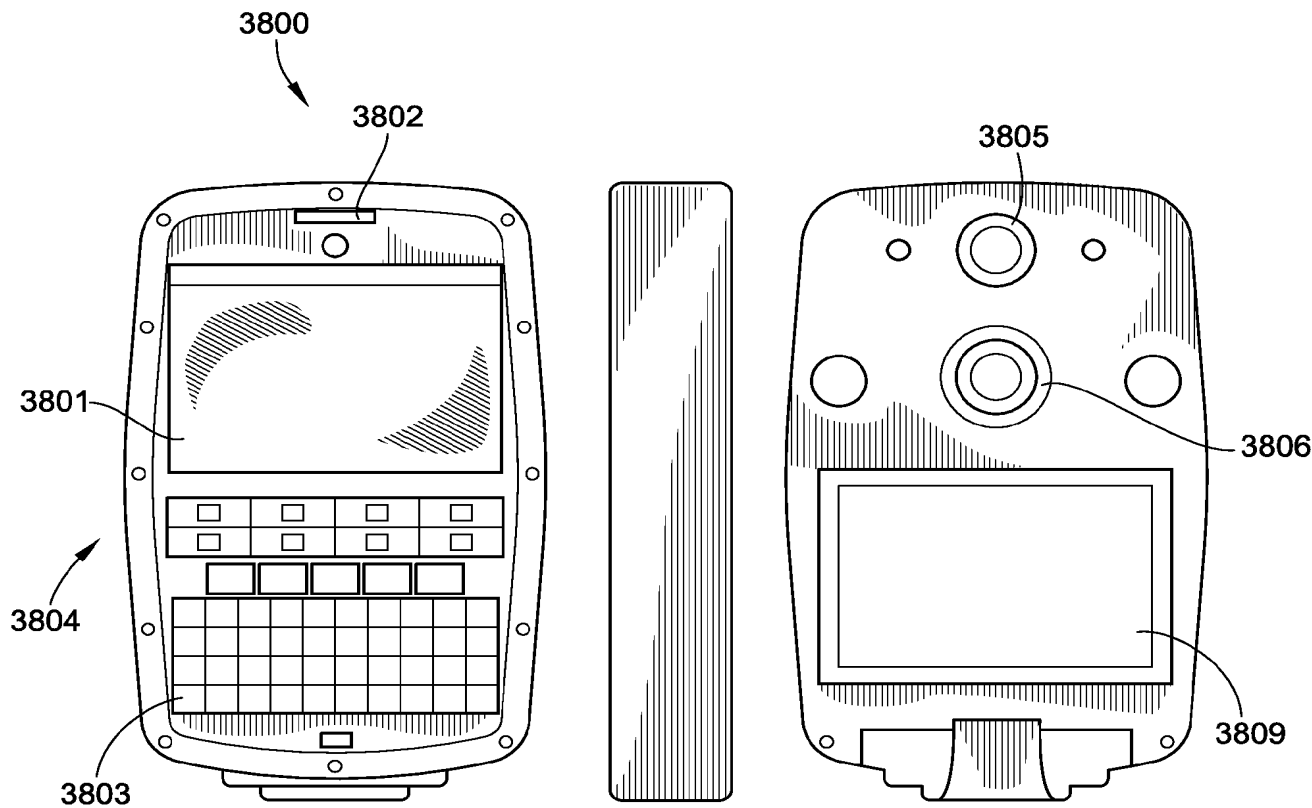


FIG. 38

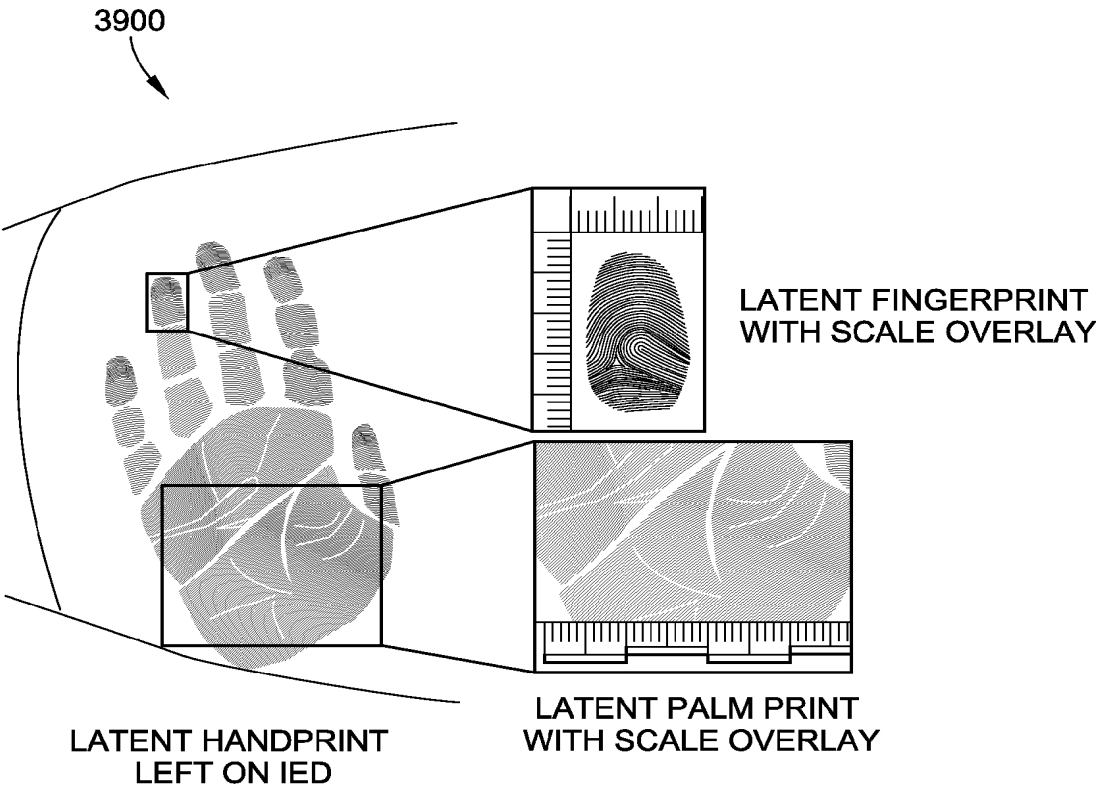
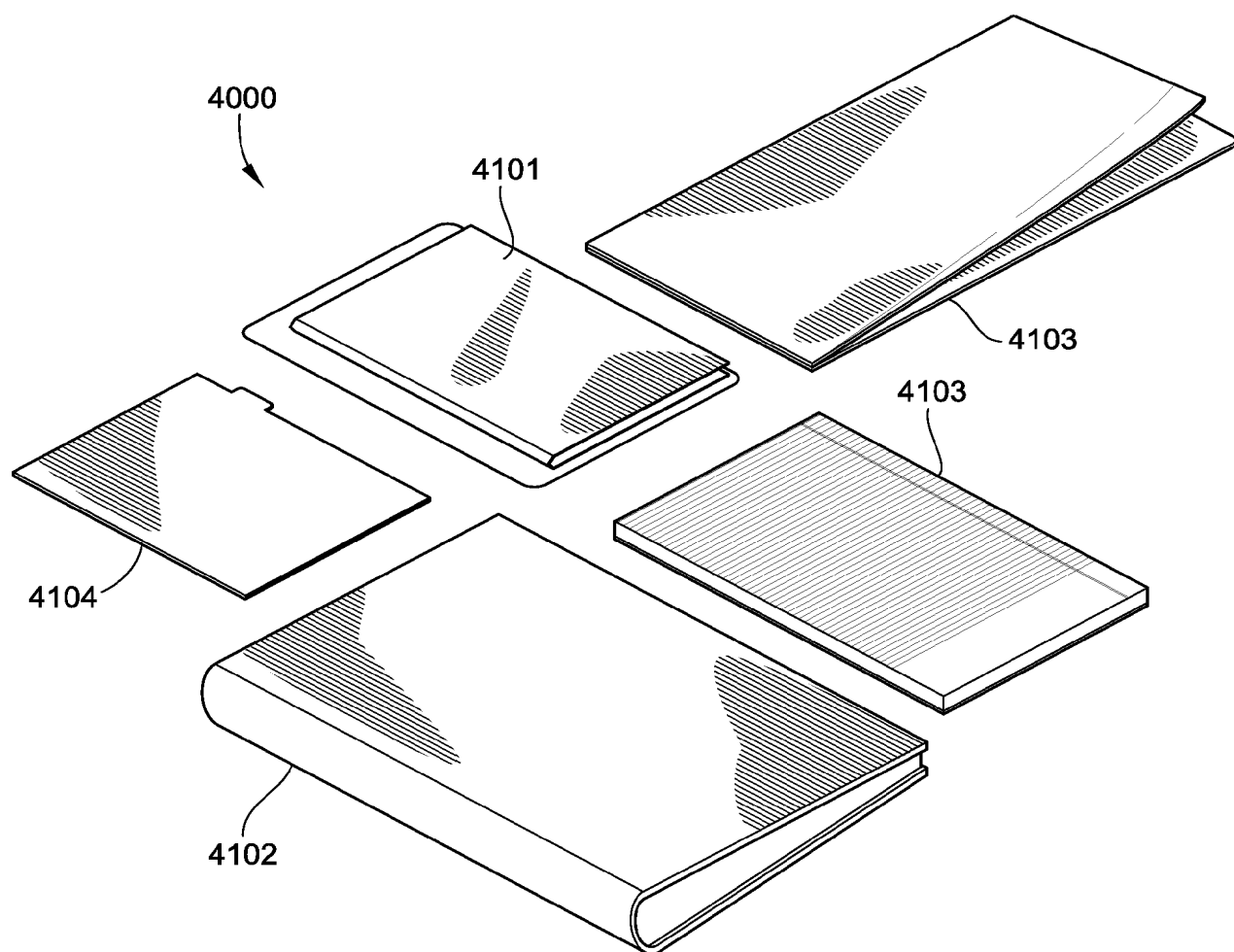


FIG. 39

**FIG. 40**

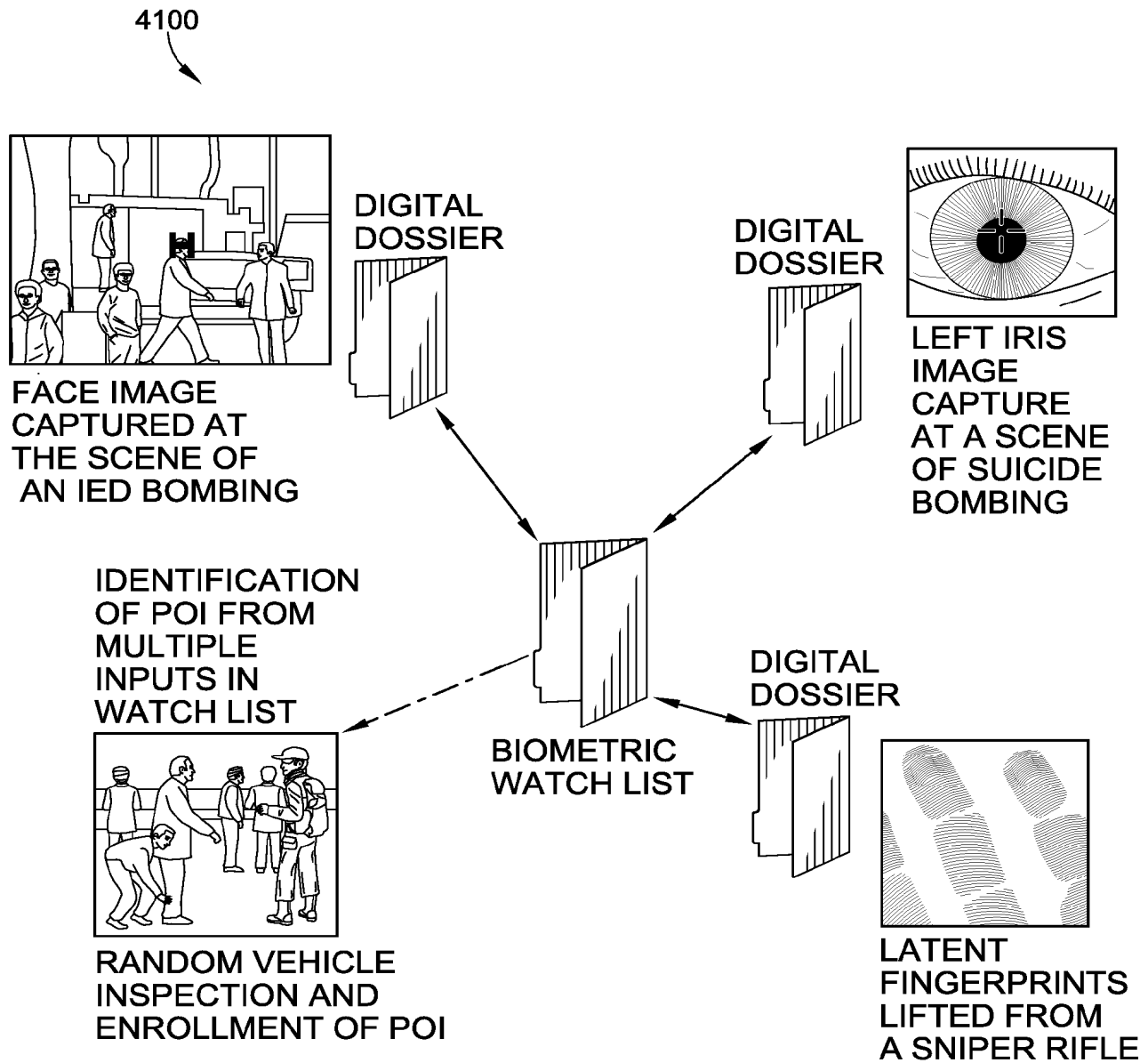


FIG. 41

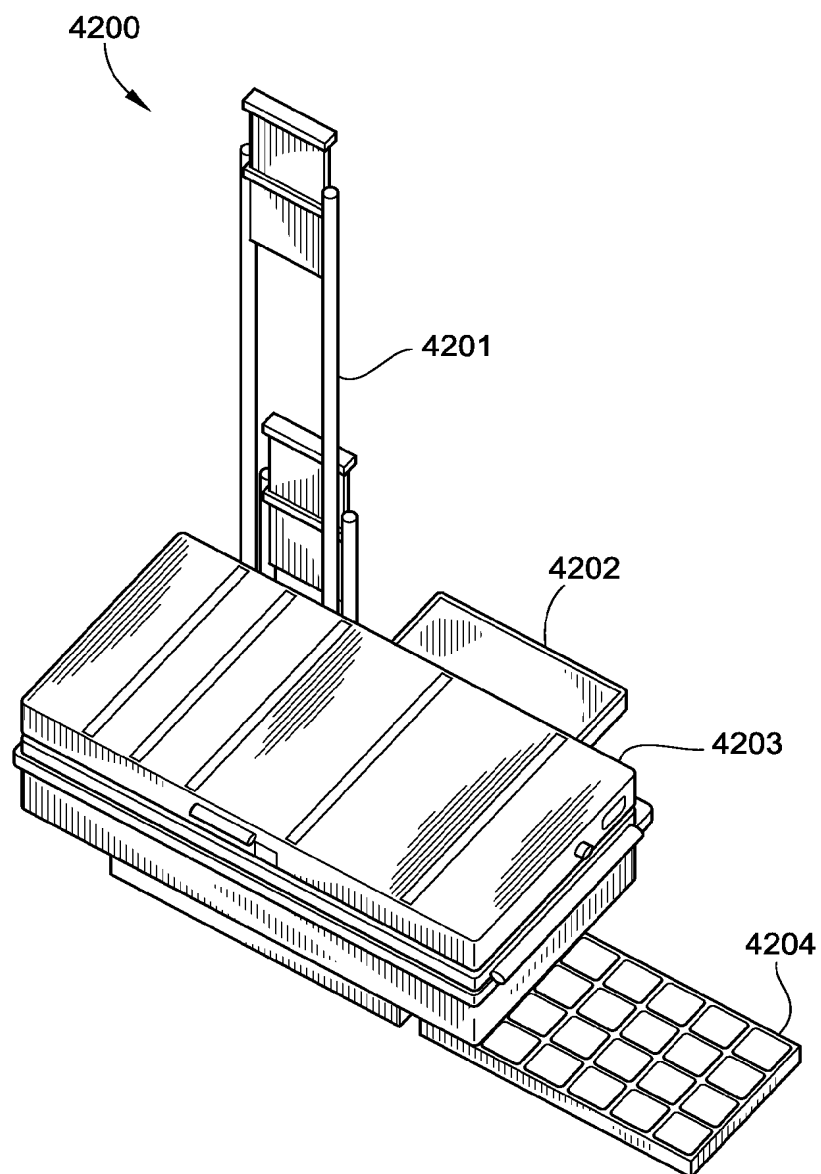
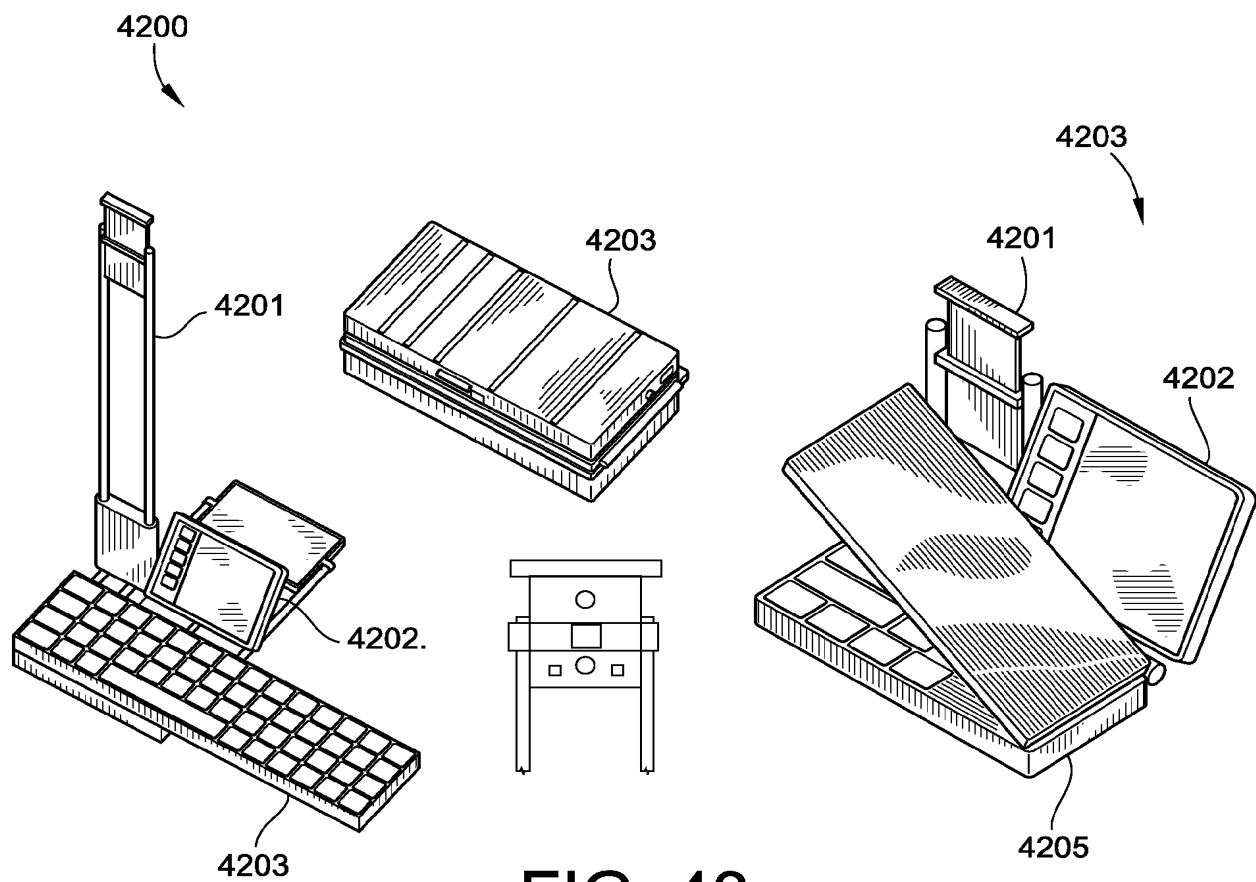


FIG. 42

**FIG. 43**

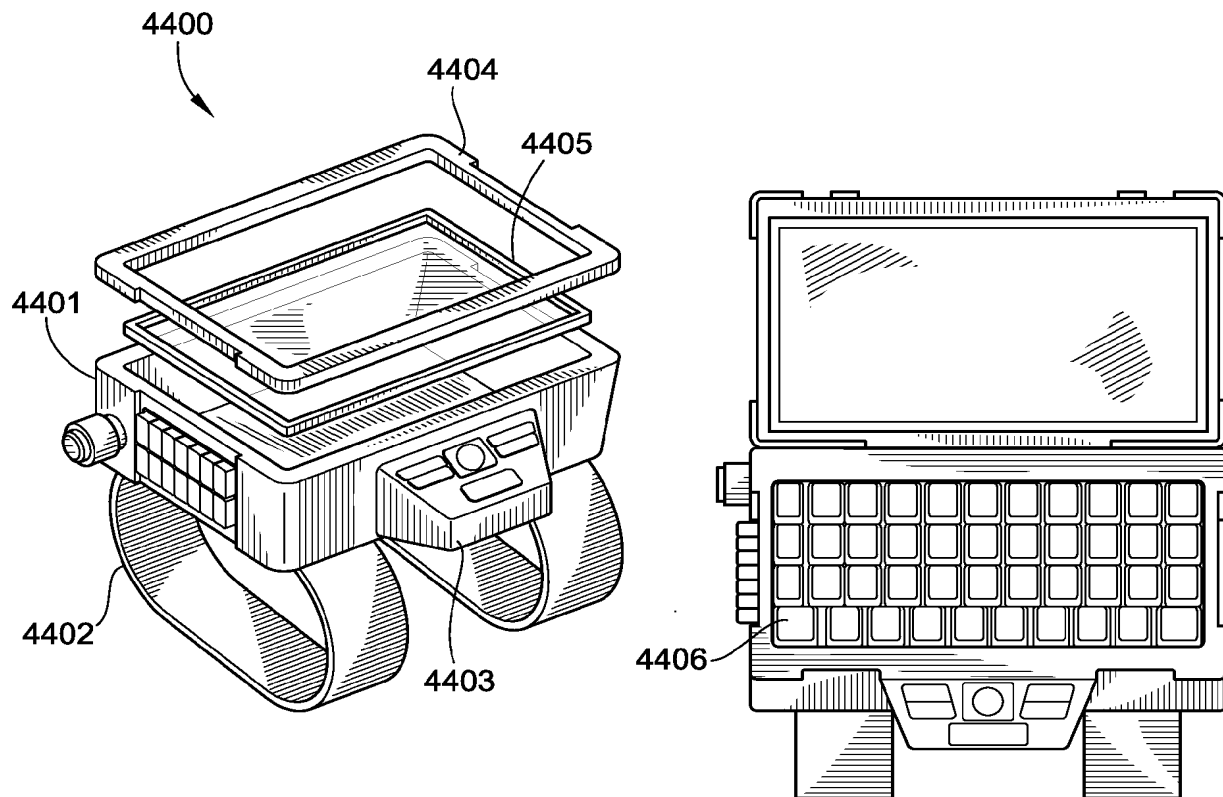
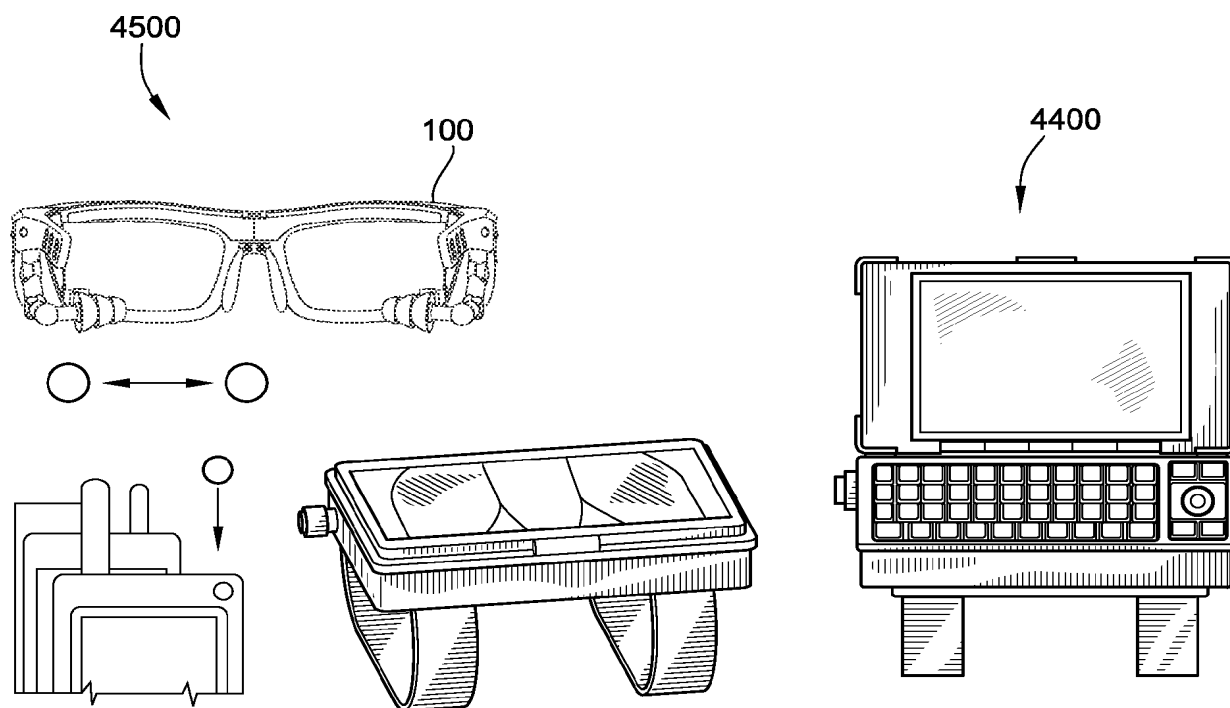


FIG. 44



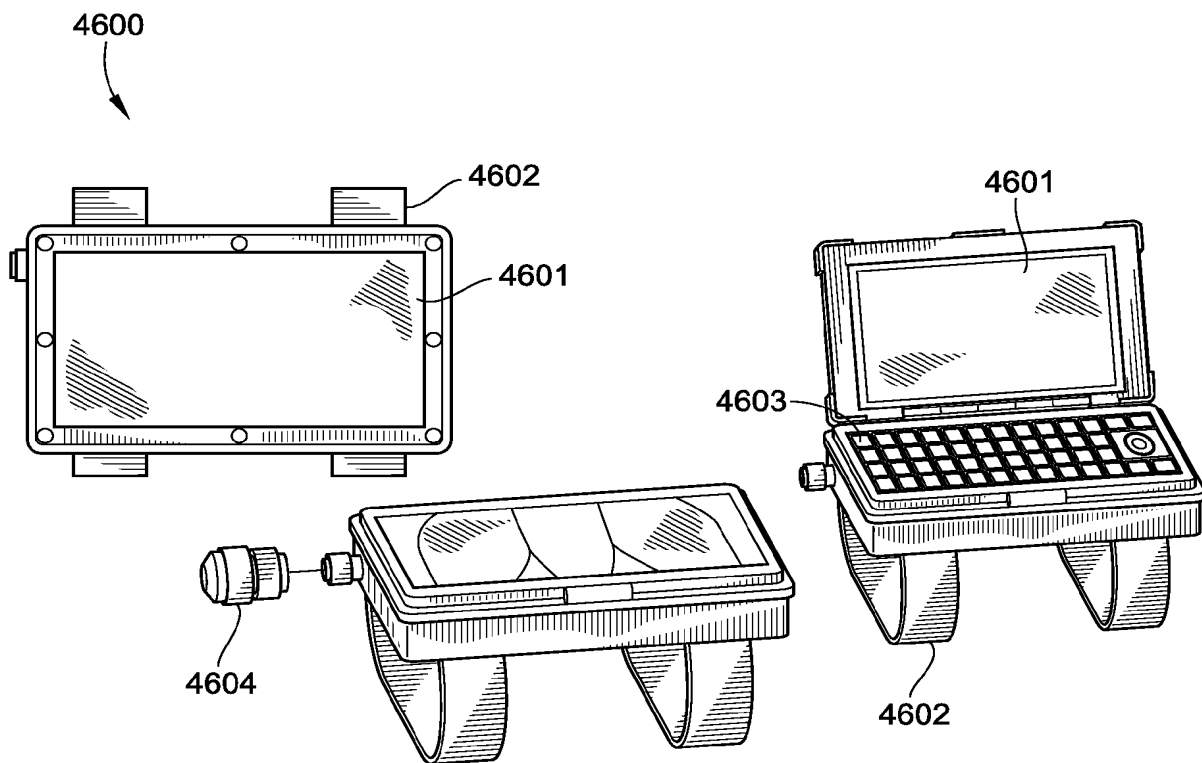
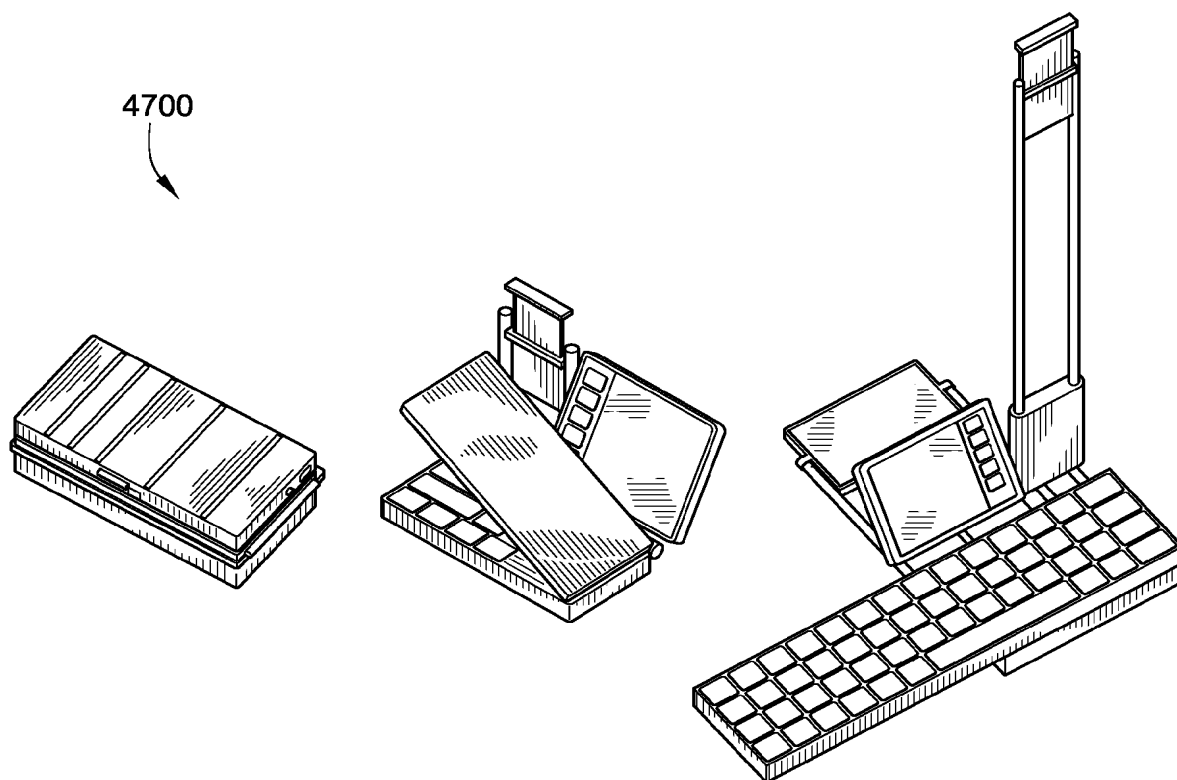


FIG. 46

**FIG. 47**

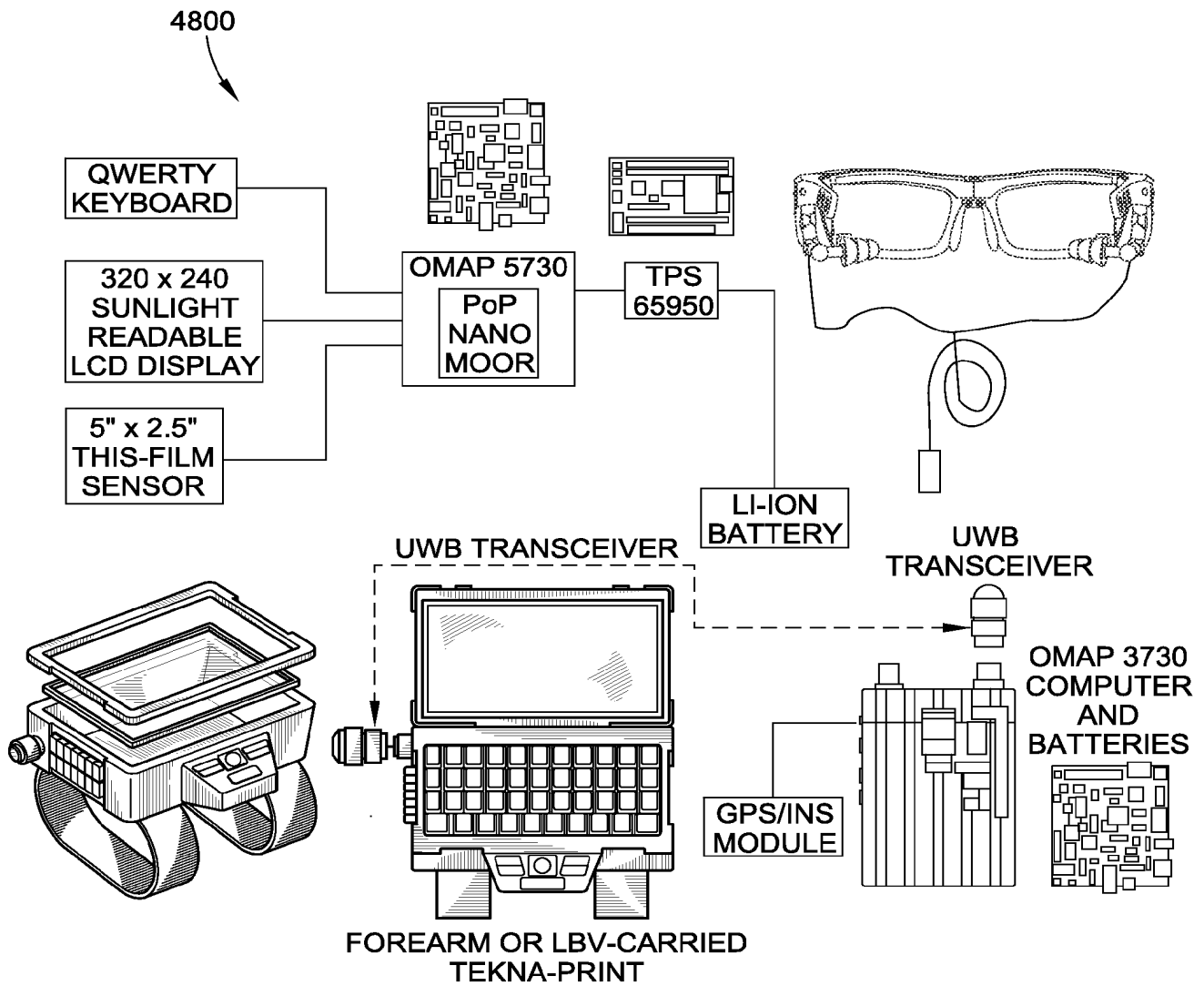


FIG. 48

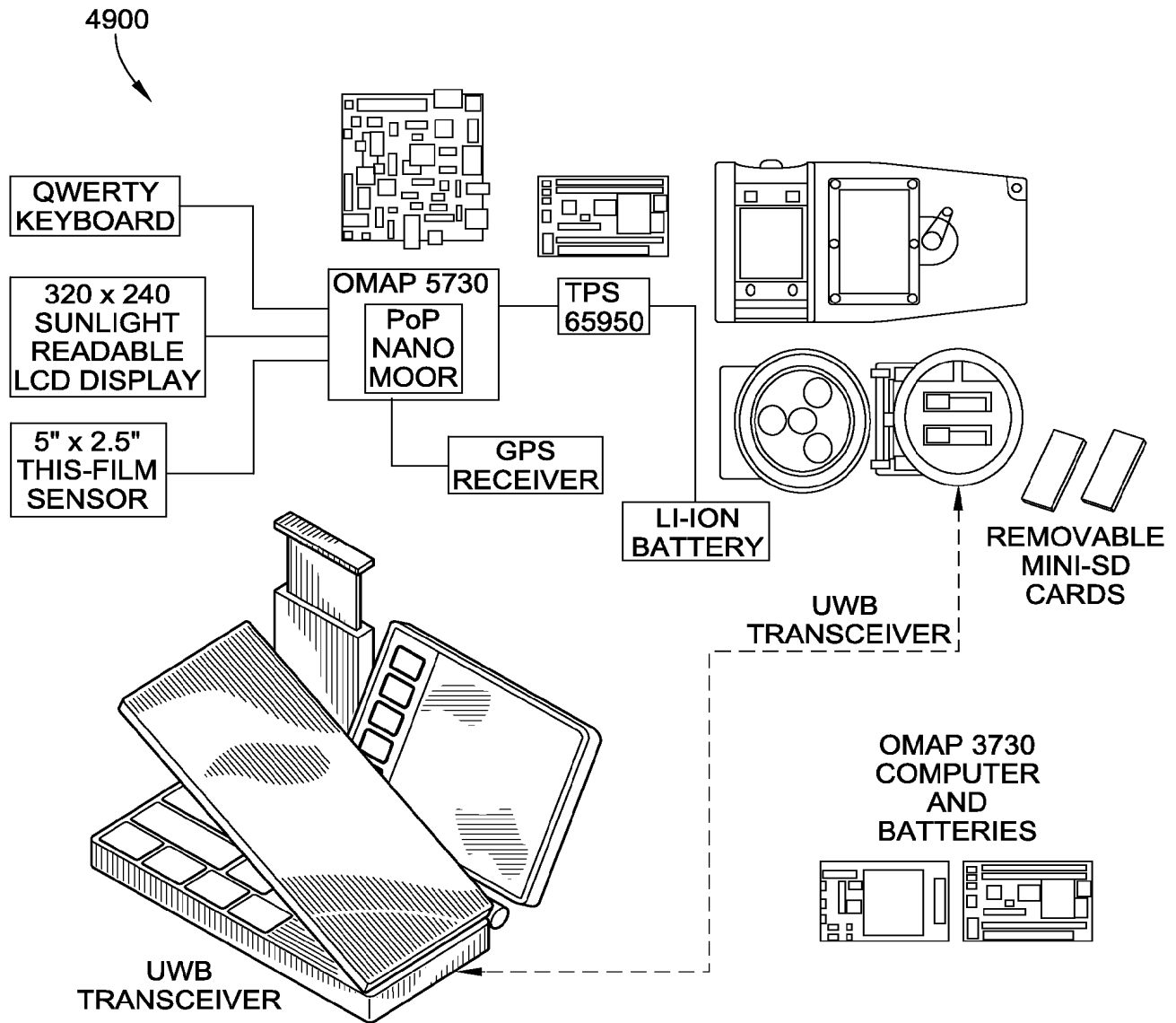


FIG. 49

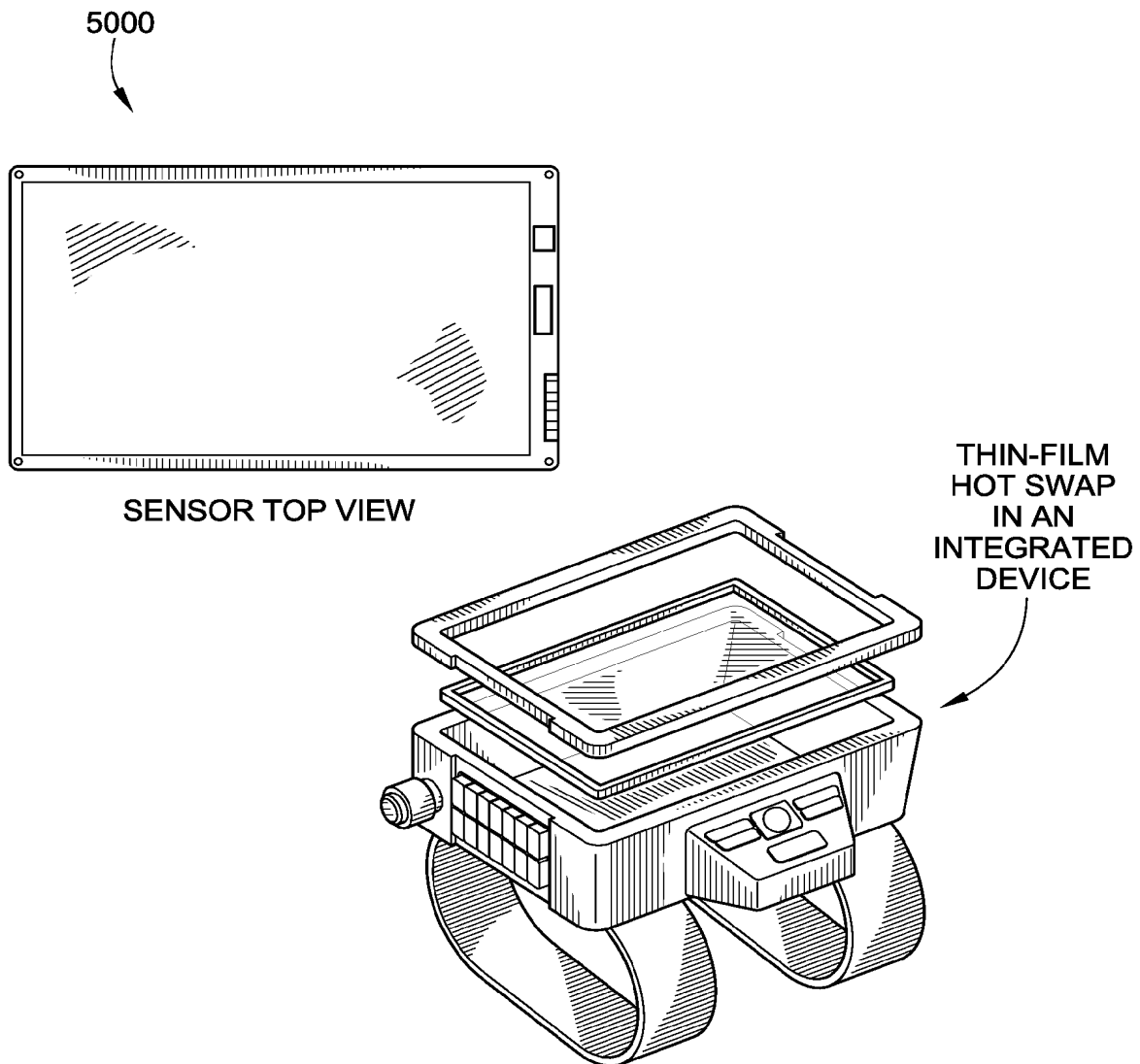


FIG. 50

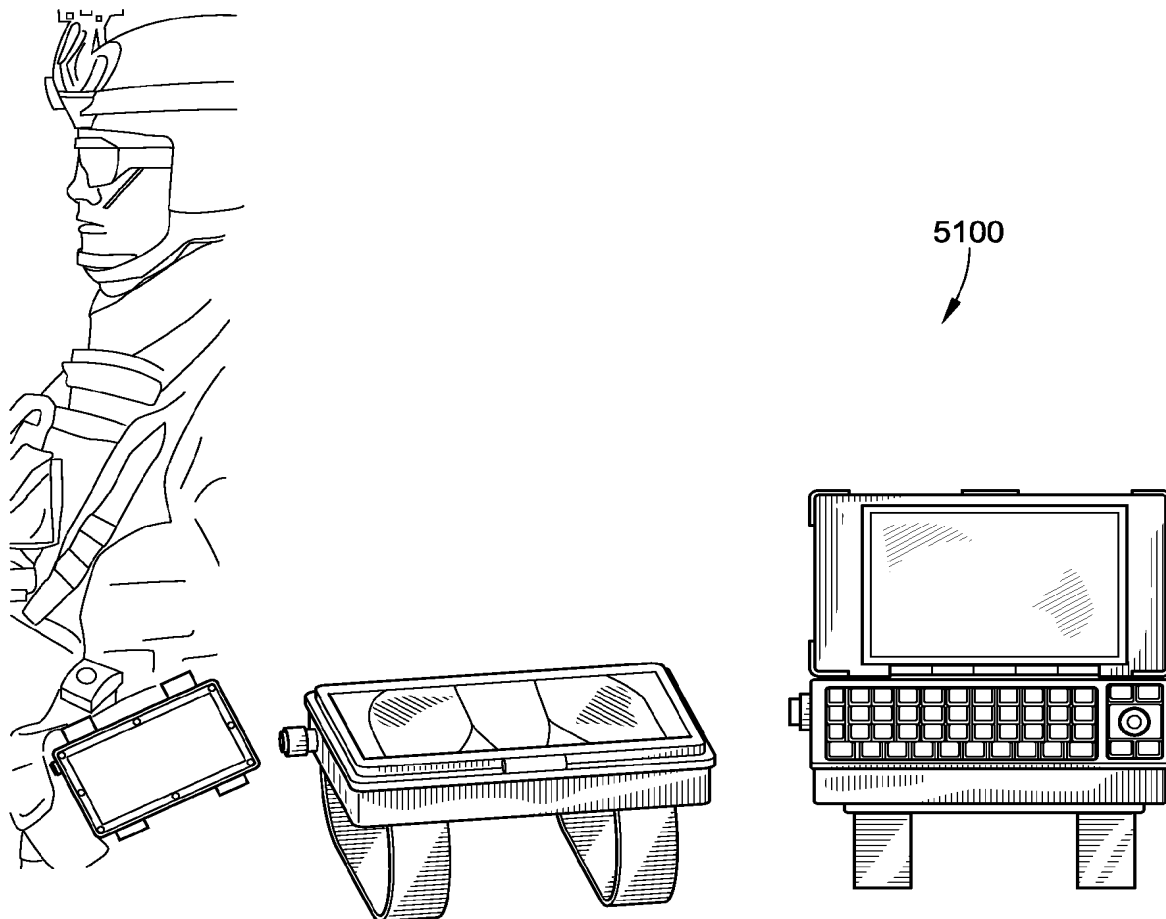
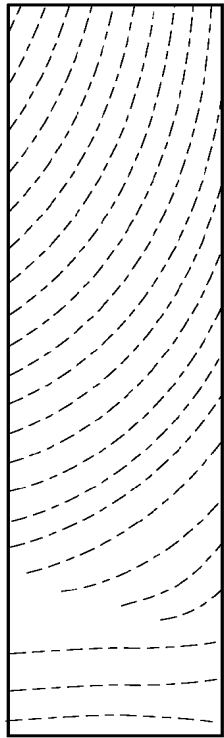


FIG. 51

5200



TWO STAGE PALM PRINT

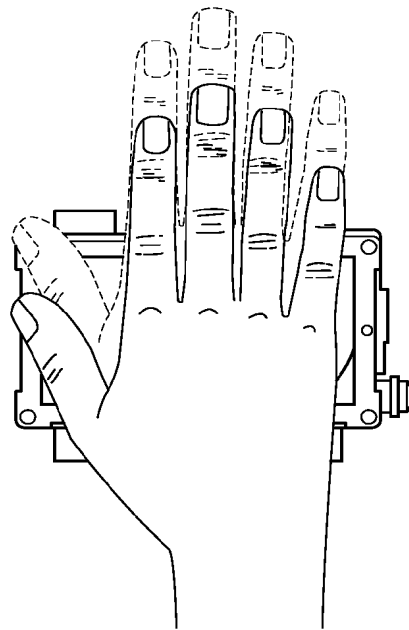


FIG. 52

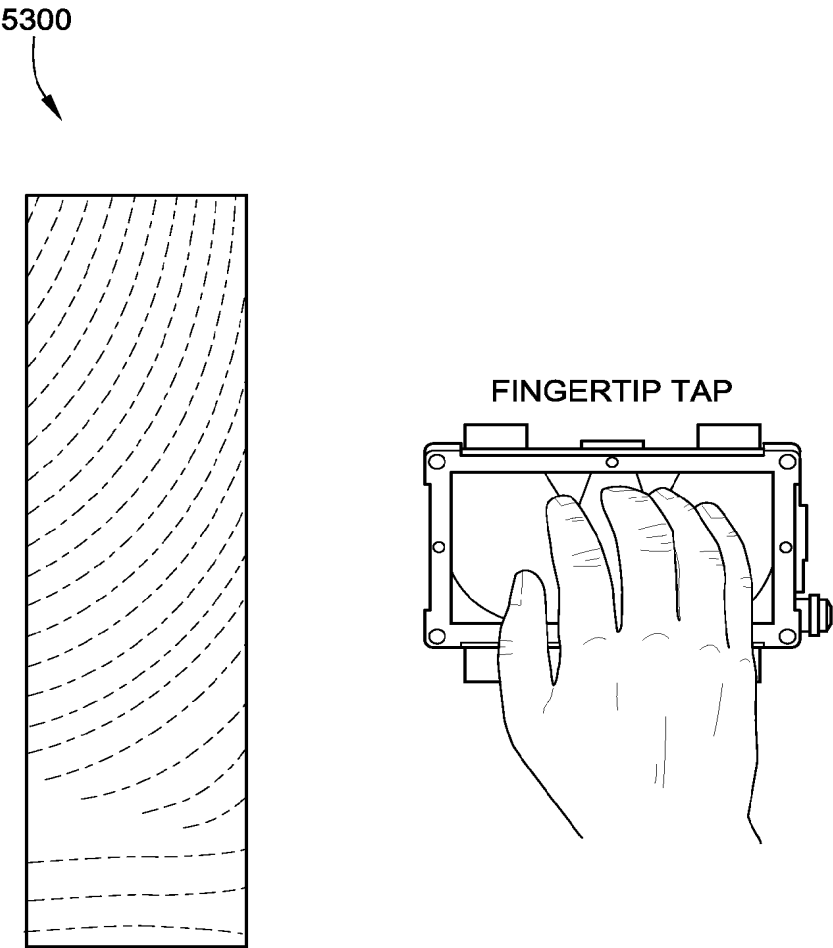


FIG. 53

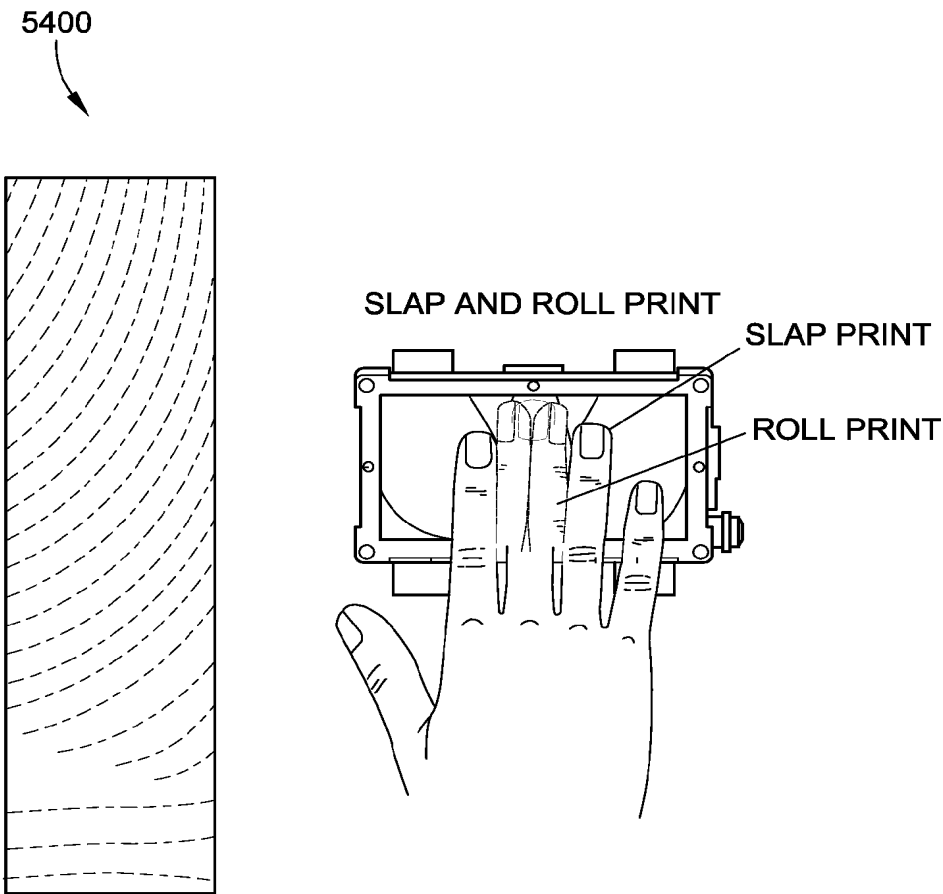


FIG. 54

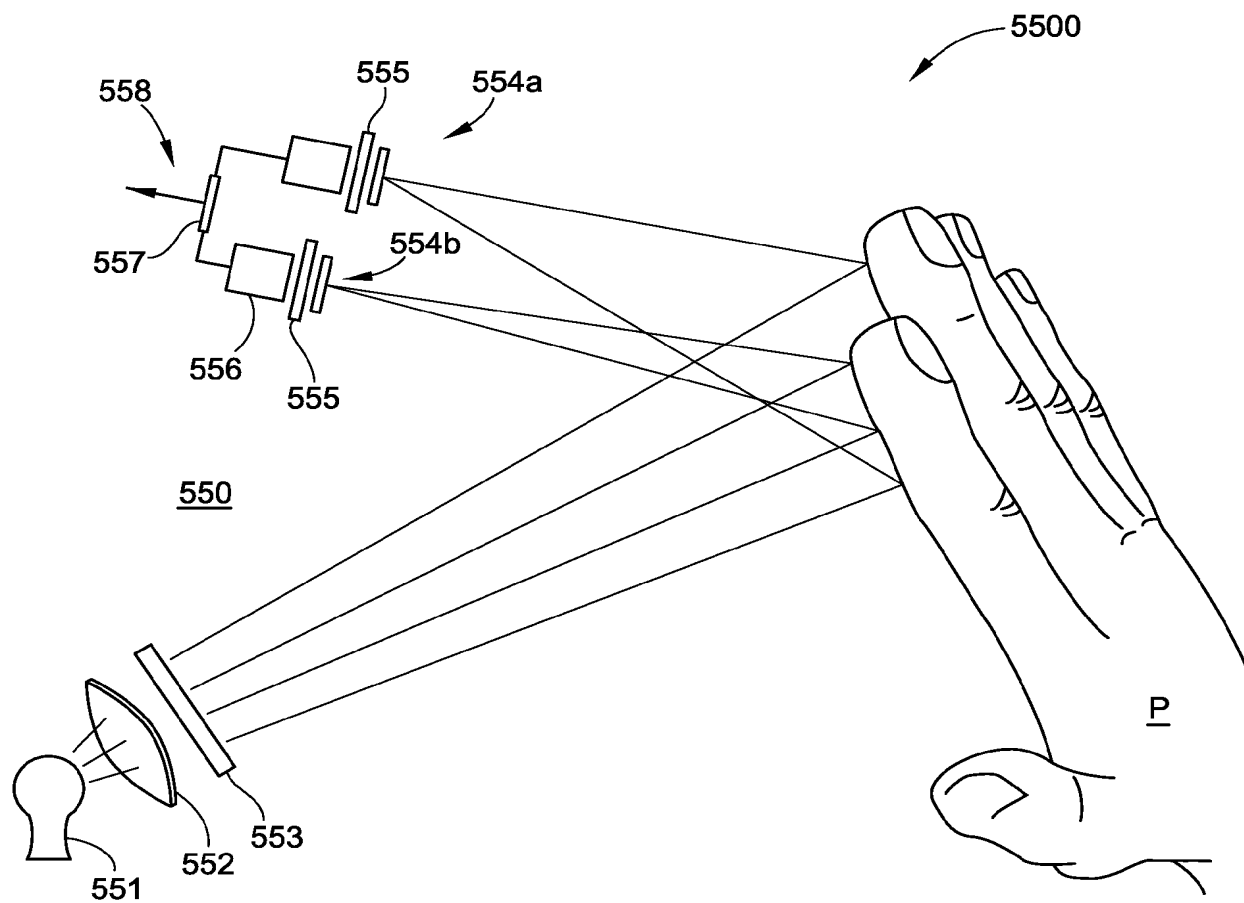
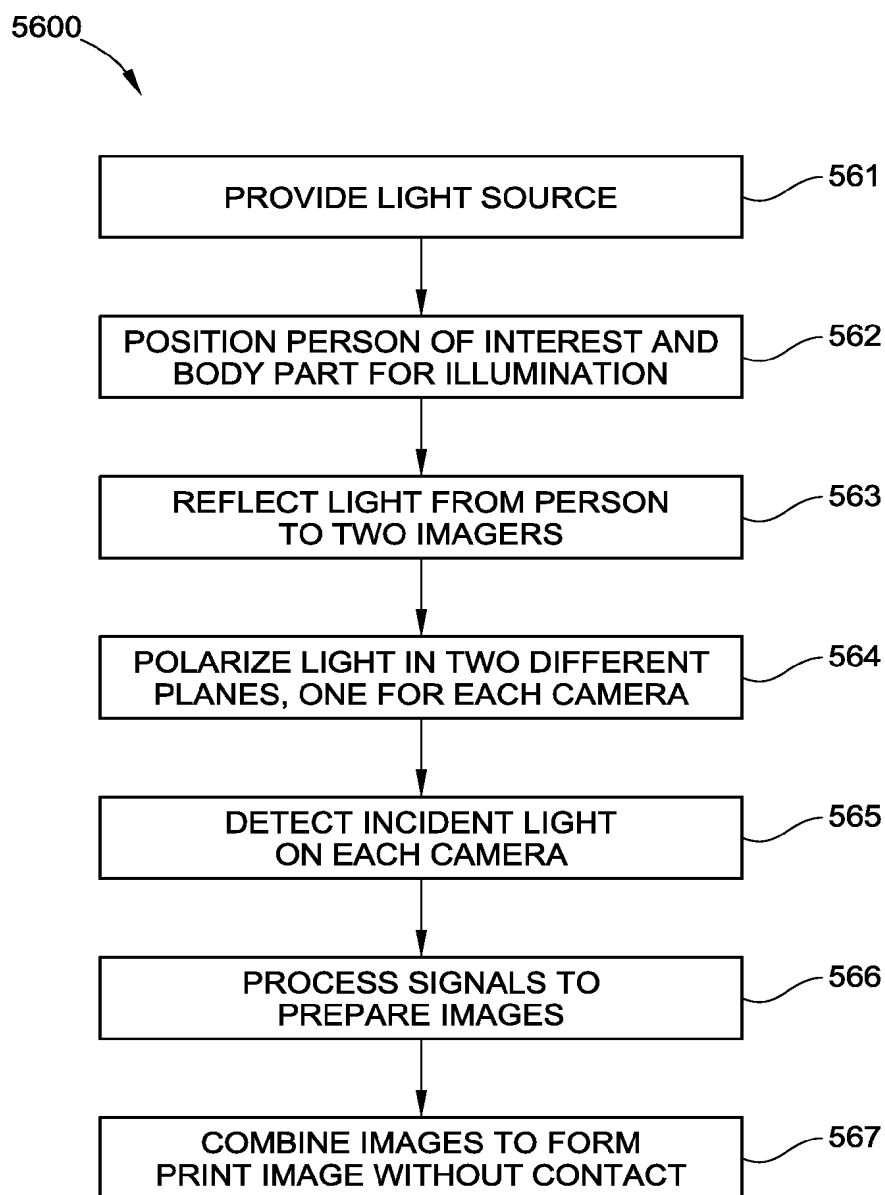


FIG. 55

**FIG. 56**

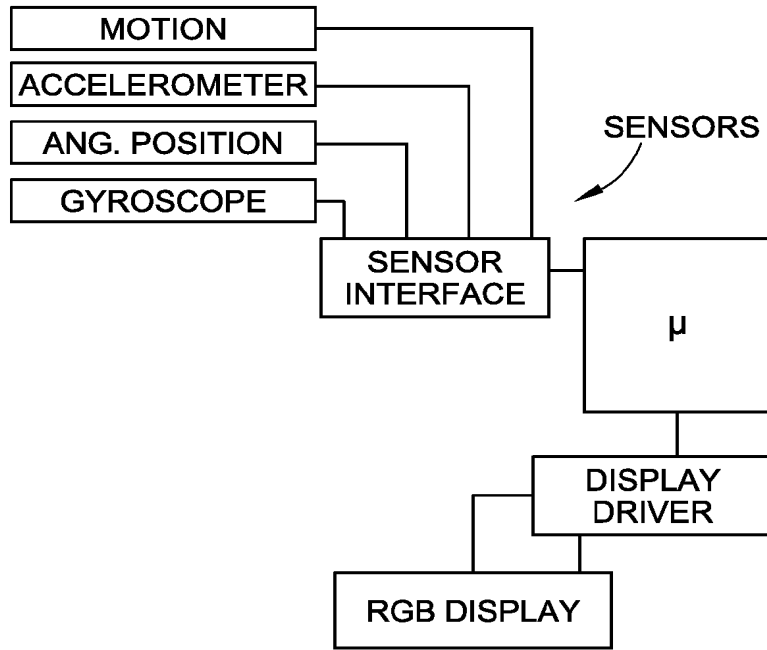


FIG. 57A

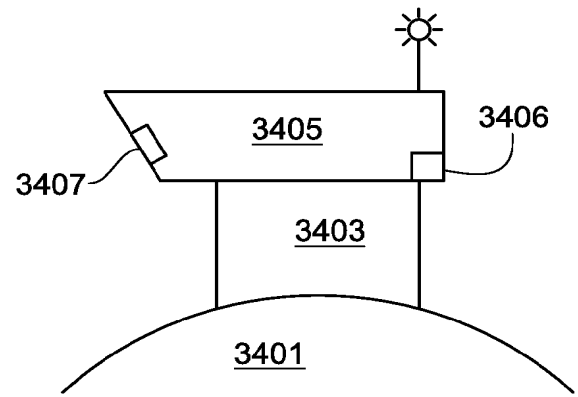


FIG. 57B

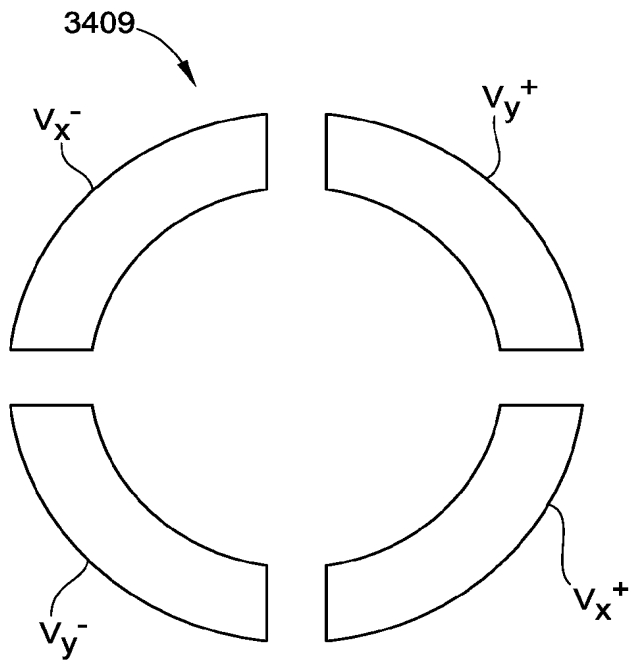
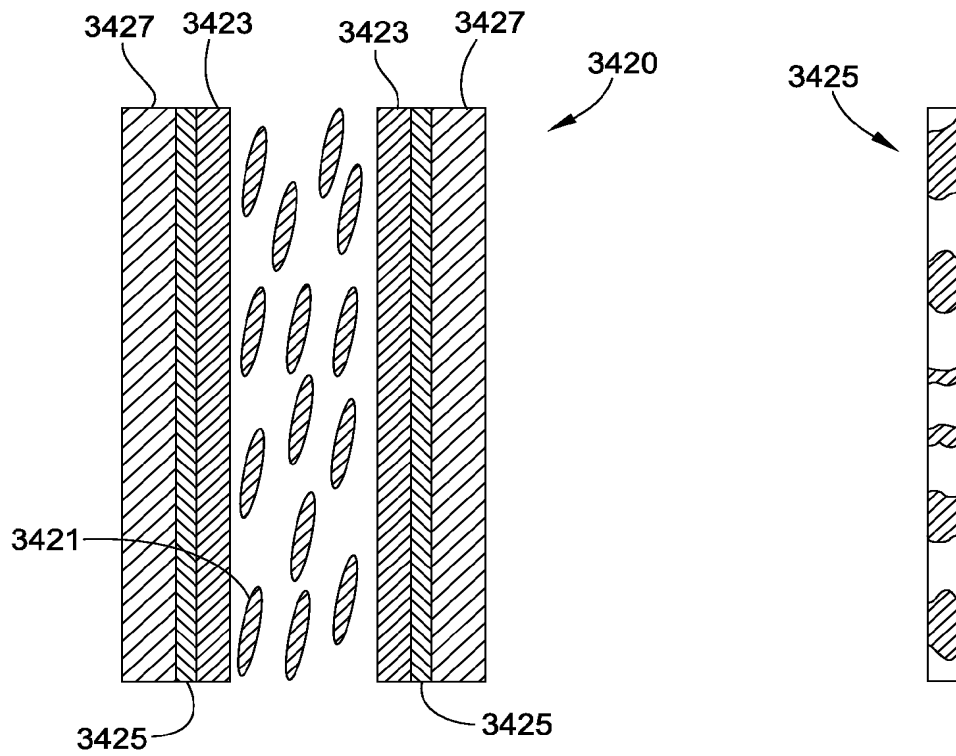
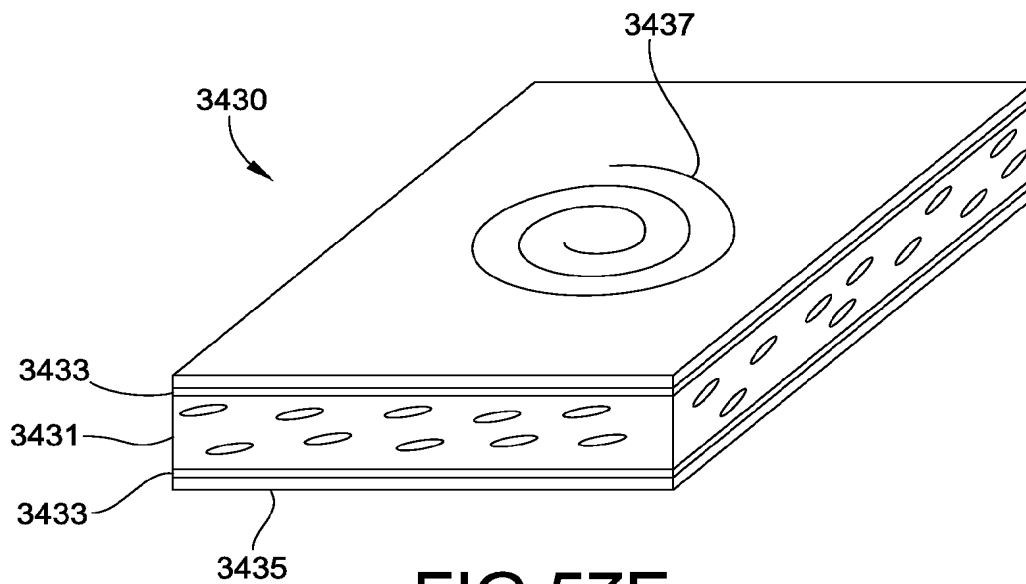
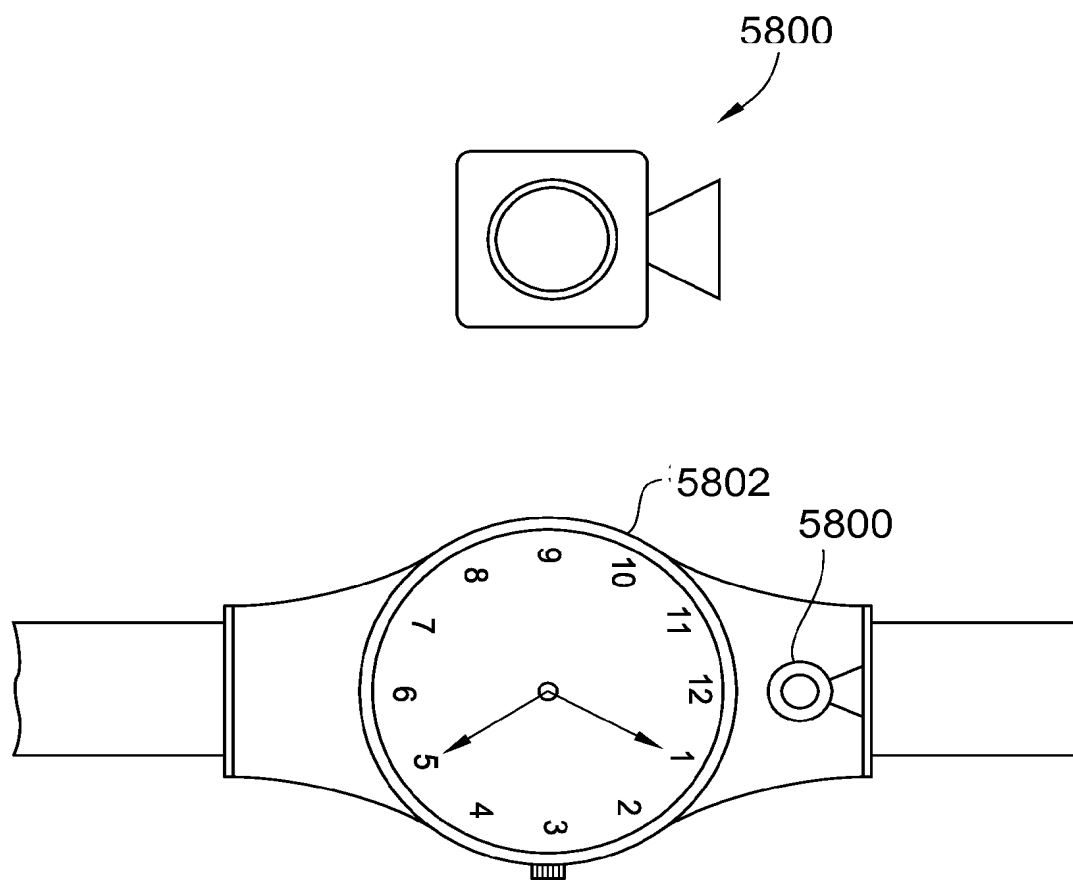


FIG. 57C

**FIG 57D****FIG 57E**

**FIG. 58**

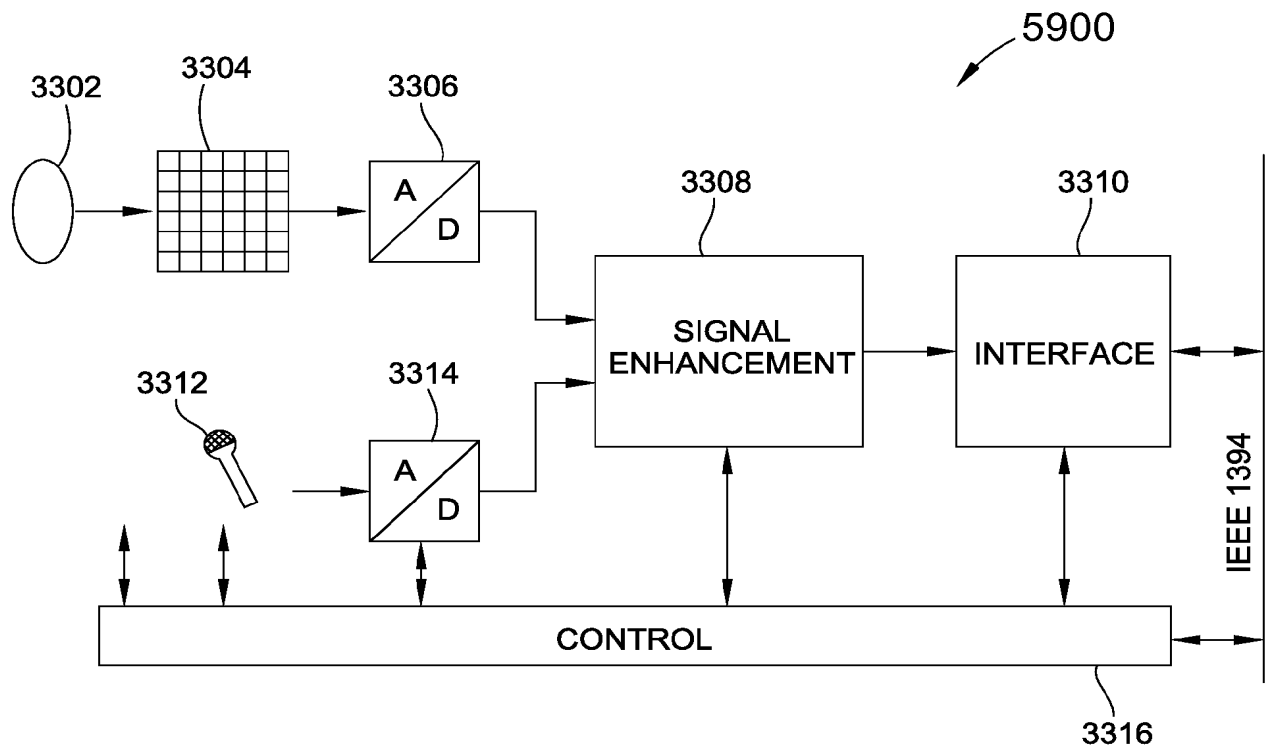


FIG. 59

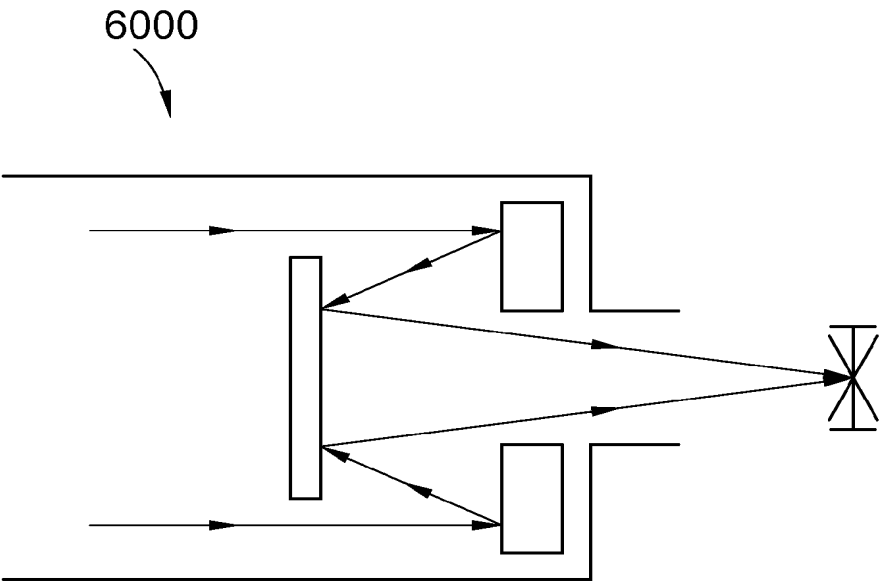


FIG. 60

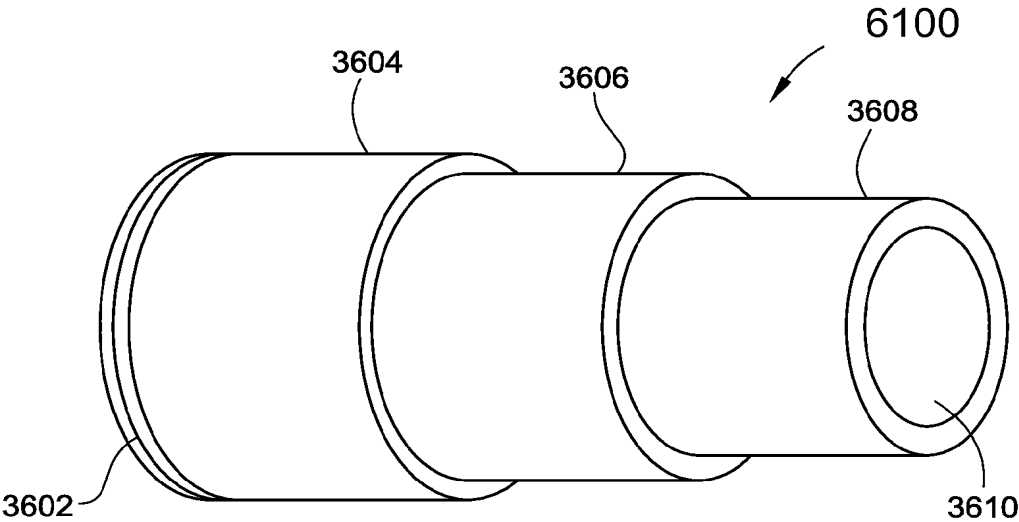
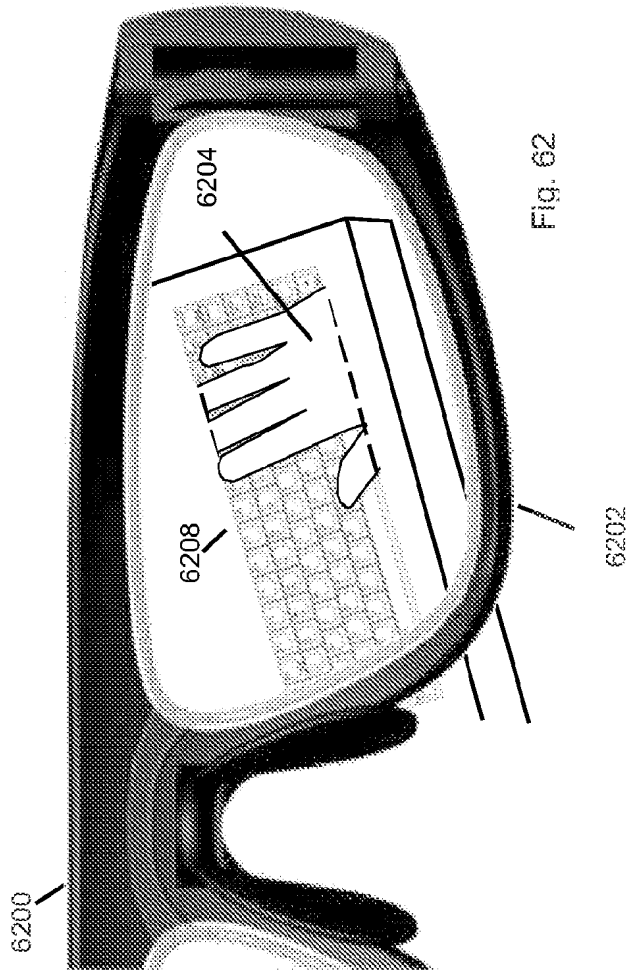


FIG. 61



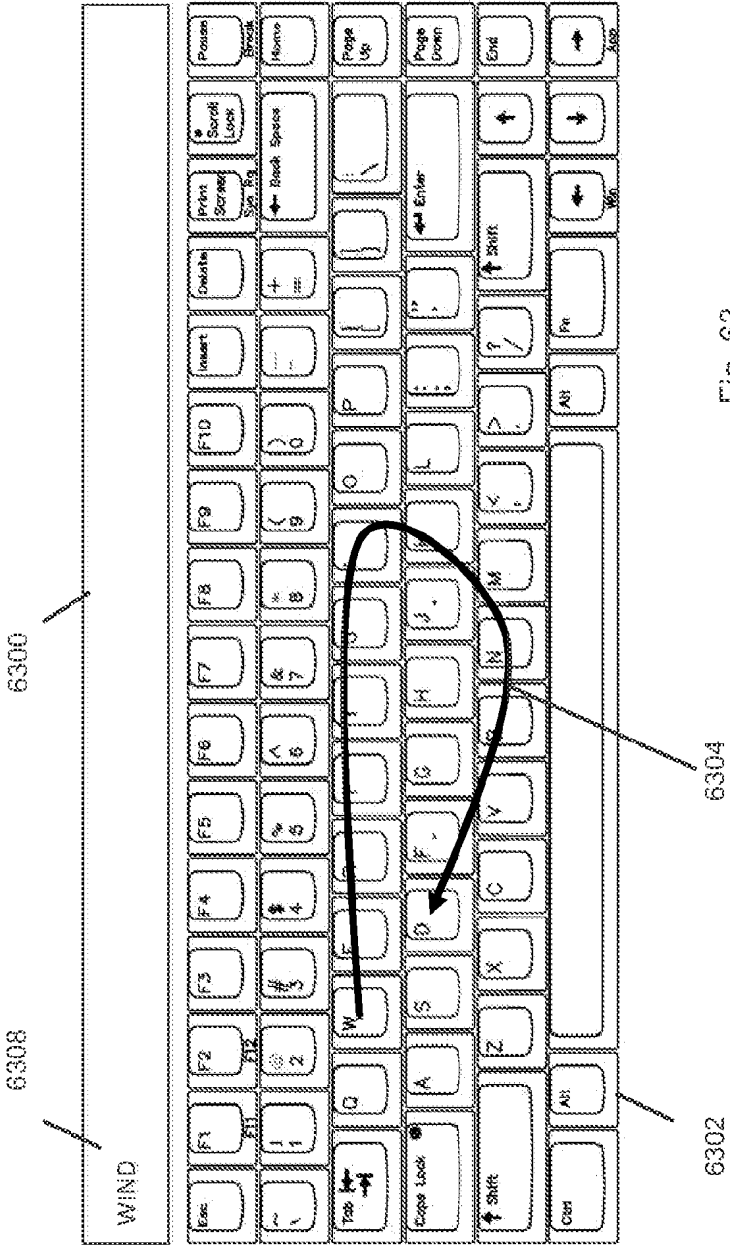


Fig. 63

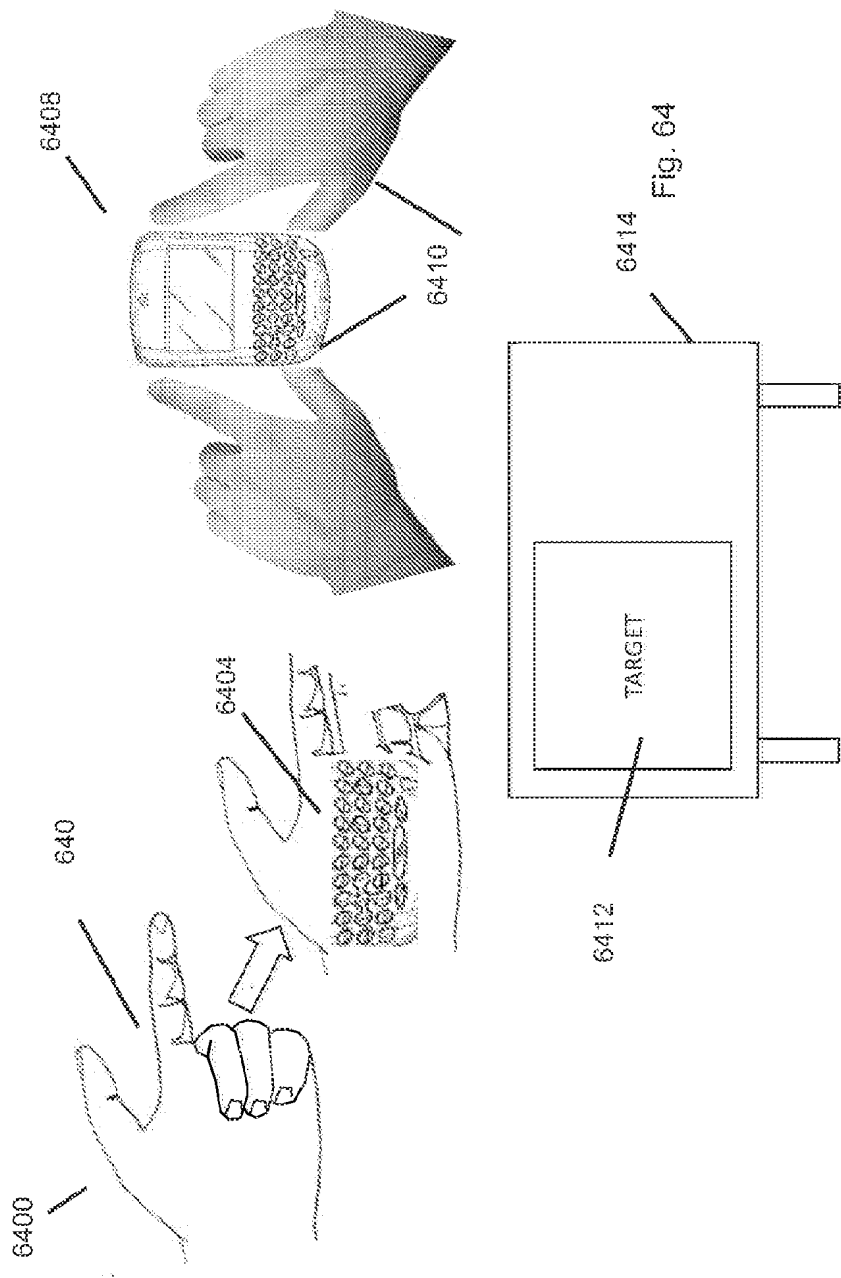


Fig. 64

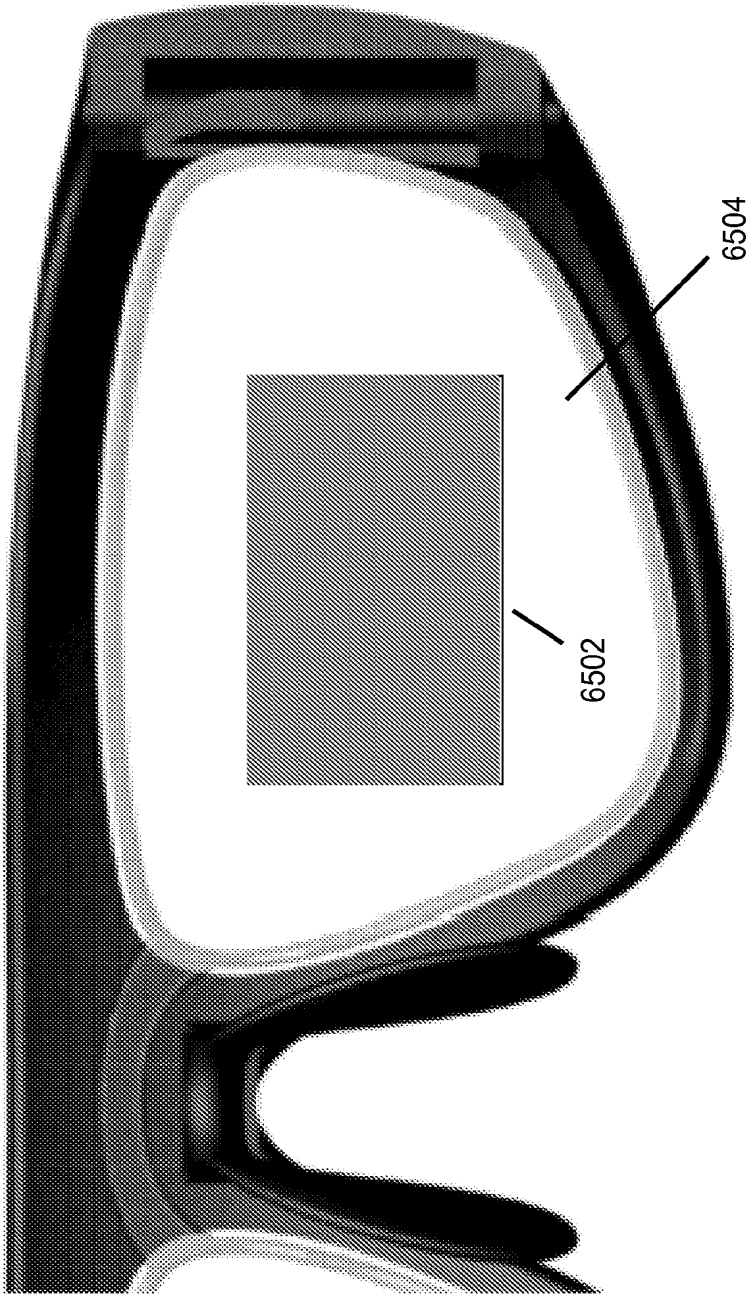


Fig. 65

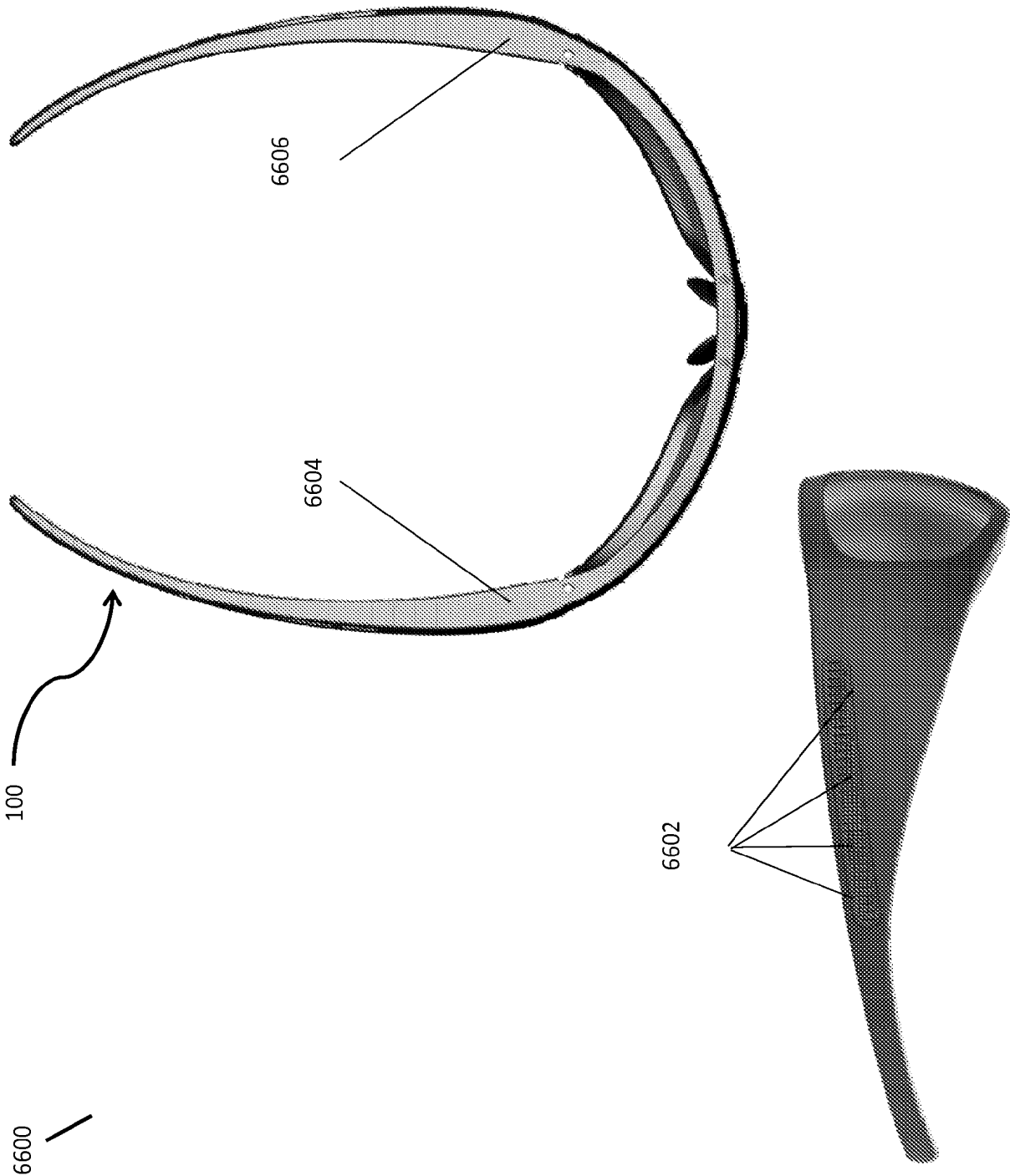


Fig. 66

Iris Recognition

6700

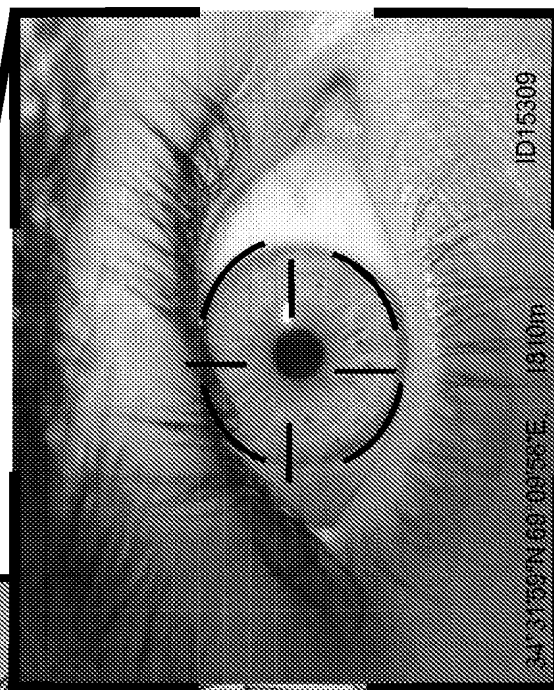
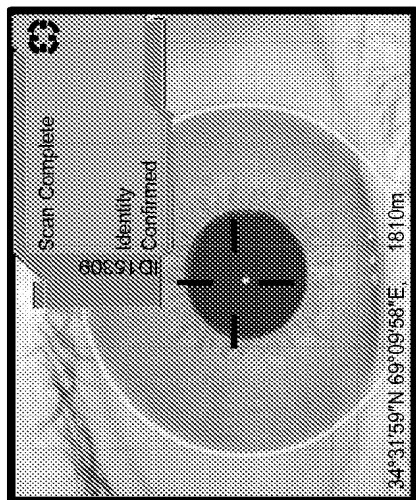


Fig. 67

Face and Iris Recognition

6800

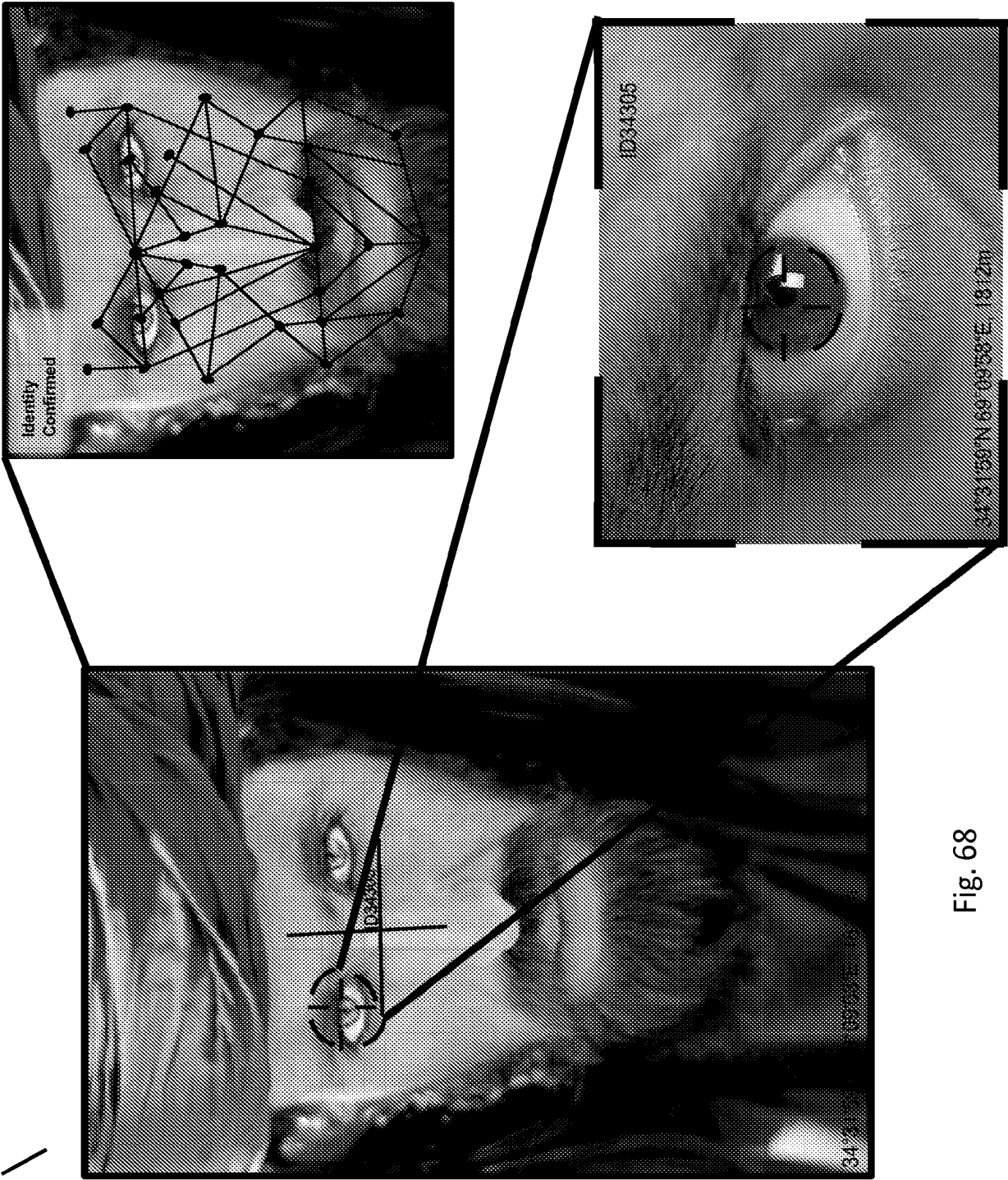


Fig. 68

Multiple Microphone Arrays

6900

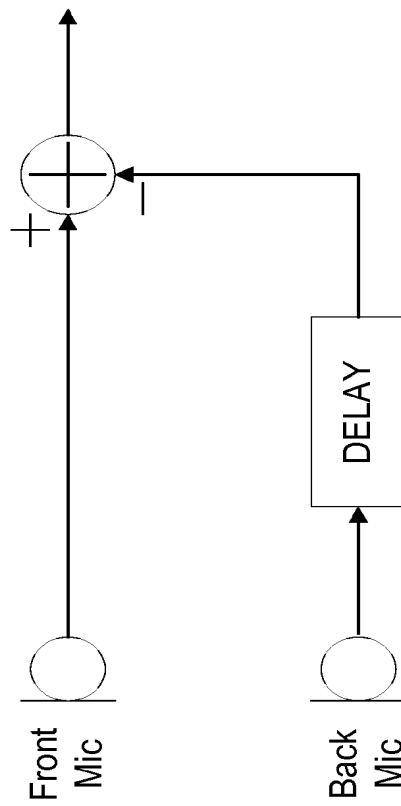
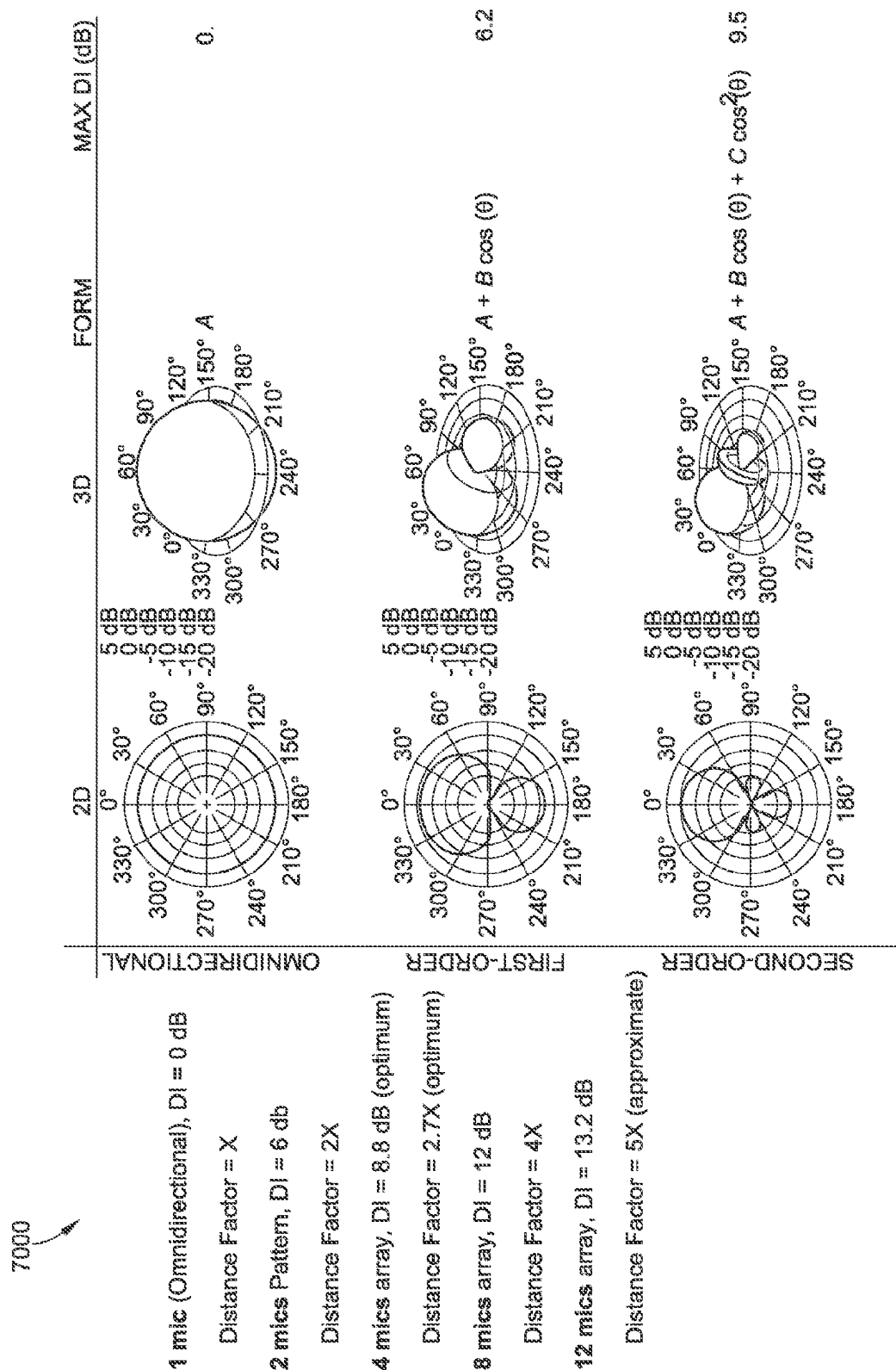


Fig. 69



Adaptive Arrays

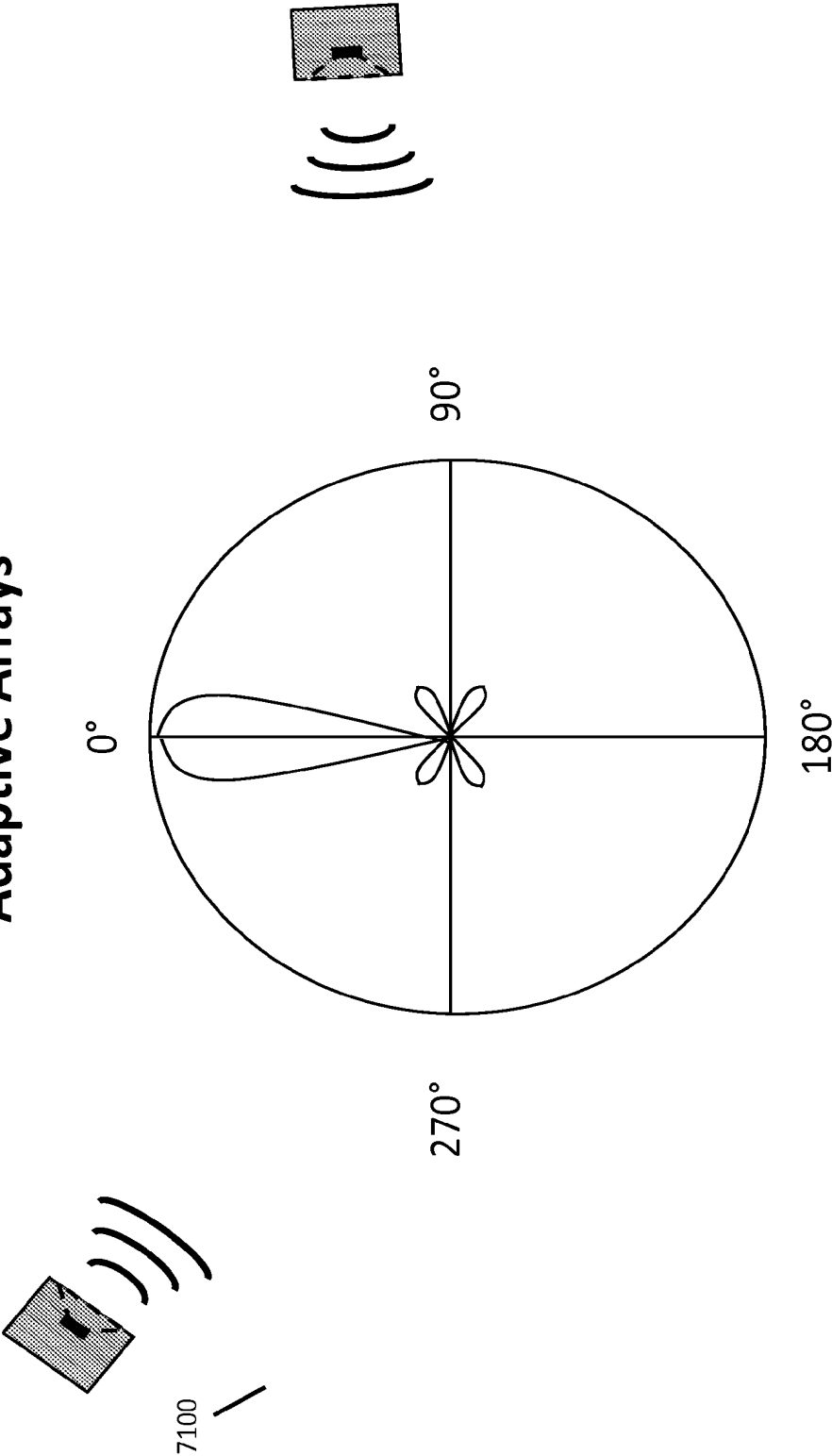


Fig. 71

7200

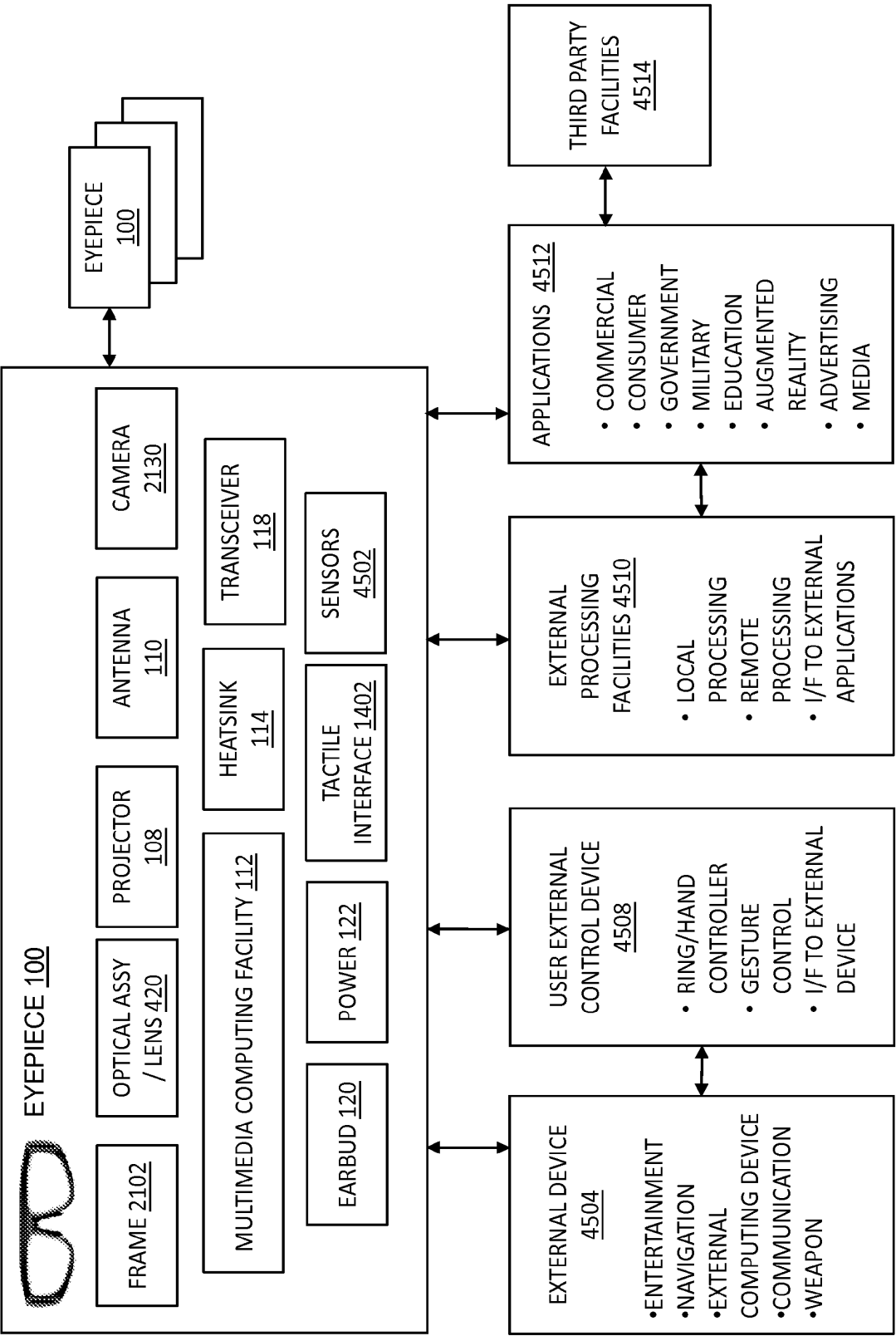


Fig. 72

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2011/026559

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER INV. G02B27/01 G02C7/00 G06Q30/00 G06F3/01 G06F3/048 ADD. G06F3/03 G06F1/16 According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC											
B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) G02B G02C G06Q G06F Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used) EPO-Internal											
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;">Category*</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Relevant to claim No.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">X</td> <td>US 2006/028400 A1 (LAPSTUN PAUL [AU] ET AL) 9 February 2006 (2006-02-09) paragraph [0009] - paragraph [0066] paragraph [0189] - paragraph [0365] figures 11-40 -----</td> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">1-17</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">A</td> <td>STARNER ET AL: "Augmented reality through wearable computing", MIT MEDIA LABORATORY PERCEPTUAL COMPUTING SECTION TECHNICALREPORT, XX, XX, vol. 397, 1 January 1997 (1997-01-01), pages 1-9, XP002976745, page 1, column 1, line 2 - page 8, column 2, line 39 figures 1, 4-14 ----- -/--</td> <td style="text-align: center; vertical-align: top;">1-17</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.	X	US 2006/028400 A1 (LAPSTUN PAUL [AU] ET AL) 9 February 2006 (2006-02-09) paragraph [0009] - paragraph [0066] paragraph [0189] - paragraph [0365] figures 11-40 -----	1-17	A	STARNER ET AL: "Augmented reality through wearable computing", MIT MEDIA LABORATORY PERCEPTUAL COMPUTING SECTION TECHNICALREPORT, XX, XX, vol. 397, 1 January 1997 (1997-01-01), pages 1-9, XP002976745, page 1, column 1, line 2 - page 8, column 2, line 39 figures 1, 4-14 ----- -/--	1-17
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.									
X	US 2006/028400 A1 (LAPSTUN PAUL [AU] ET AL) 9 February 2006 (2006-02-09) paragraph [0009] - paragraph [0066] paragraph [0189] - paragraph [0365] figures 11-40 -----	1-17									
A	STARNER ET AL: "Augmented reality through wearable computing", MIT MEDIA LABORATORY PERCEPTUAL COMPUTING SECTION TECHNICALREPORT, XX, XX, vol. 397, 1 January 1997 (1997-01-01), pages 1-9, XP002976745, page 1, column 1, line 2 - page 8, column 2, line 39 figures 1, 4-14 ----- -/--	1-17									
☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☒ See patent family annex.											
* Special categories of cited documents : "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art. "&" document member of the same patent family											
Date of the actual completion of the international search 3 August 2011		Date of mailing of the international search report 11/08/2011									
Name and mailing address of the ISA/ European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016		Authorized officer Szachowicz, Marta									

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No

PCT/US2011/026559

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	US 6 091 546 A (SPITZER MARK B [US]) 18 July 2000 (2000-07-18) column 1, line 50 - column 3, line 20 column 11, line 10 - line 22 figures 1-21 -----	1-17
A	EP 1 637 975 A1 (SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO LTD [KR]) 22 March 2006 (2006-03-22) paragraph [0001] - paragraph [0022] figures 1-7B -----	1-17
A	US 2007/035563 A1 (BIOCCA FRANK [US] ET AL) 15 February 2007 (2007-02-15) paragraph [0014] - paragraph [0028] paragraph [0043] figures 1-3 -----	1-17
A	US 2006/284791 A1 (CHEN KUEN-MEAU [TW] ET AL) 21 December 2006 (2006-12-21) paragraph [0008] - paragraph [0042] figures 1-4 -----	1-17

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No

PCT/US2011/026559

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 2006028400	A1	09-02-2006	WO 2006012677 A1
			WO 2006012678 A1
			WO 2006012679 A1
			CA 2576010 A1
			CA 2576016 A1
			CA 2576026 A1
			EP 1779081 A1
			EP 1782228 A1
			EP 1779178 A1
			JP 4638493 B2
			JP 2008509380 A
			JP 2008508621 A
			KR 20070040408 A
			KR 20070048770 A
			SG 155167 A1
			US 2006028458 A1
			US 2006028674 A1
			US 2006028459 A1
			US 2009273588 A1
			US 2011018903 A1
US 6091546	A	18-07-2000	US 6349001 B1
EP 1637975	A1	22-03-2006	NONE
US 2007035563	A1	15-02-2007	NONE
US 2006284791	A1	21-12-2006	NONE



Espacenet

Bibliographic data: WO2012105175 (A1) — 2012-08-09

FUNCTION EXTENSION DEVICE, FUNCTION EXTENSION METHOD, FUNCTION EXTENSION PROGRAM, AND INTEGRATED CIRCUIT

Inventor(s): HORII YUKI ± (HORII, YUKI)

Applicant(s): PANASONIC CORP [JP]; HORII YUKI ± (PANASONIC CORPORATION, ; HORII, YUKI)

Classification: - **international:** G06F3/01; G06F3/0481; G06F3/0483
 - **cooperative:** G02B27/017; G06F3/012; G06F3/016;
G06F3/04815; G06F3/0483; G06K9/00624;
G02B2027/0134; G02B2027/014

Application number: WO2012JP00357 20120120 Global Dossier

Priority number (s): JP20110019784 20110201

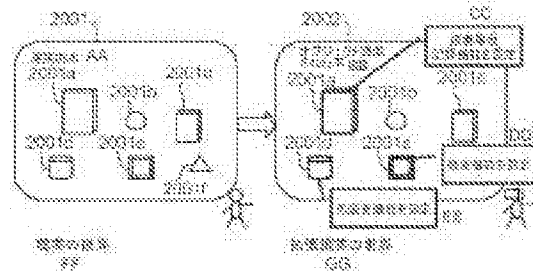
Also published as: CN103003783 (A) CN103003783 (B) JP5844288 (B2)
JPWO2012105175 (A1) US2013156266 (A1) more

Abstract of WO2012105175 (A1)

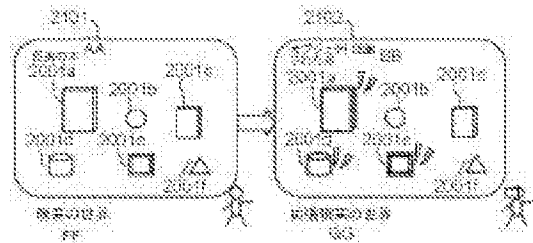
An object recognition unit (1101) recognizes, from real-space image data, objects included in the image data. A function setting unit (1103) retains function information in which a function is stipulated, such function being comprised of groups of actions and processes which can be set for each type of object. With respect to each object recognized by the object recognition unit (1101), the function setting unit (1103) sets settable functions on the basis of the type of object. A selection determination unit (1105) determines, from among the objects recognized by the object recognition unit (1101), the object that was selected by a user as the object of operation. An operation determination unit (1106) determines the operation that the user performed on the selected object. A processing determination unit (1107) determines the processing for that operation, from among the operations that constitute the function set by the function setting unit (1103), determined by the operation determination unit (1106).

18823

(A)



(B)



- AA: Real time
- BB: Books recognized as objects
- CC: Set reading history storage function
- DD: Set search function
- EE: Set color-modification function
- FF: Reality
- GG: Augmented reality

(12) 特許協力条約に基づいて公開された国際出願

(19) 世界知的所有権機関
国際事務局

(43) 国際公開日
2012 年 8 月 9 日(09.08.2012)



(10) 国際公開番号
WO 2012/105175 A1

- (51) 国際特許分類:
G06F 3/048 (2006.01) G06F 3/01 (2006.01)
- (21) 国際出願番号: PCT/JP2012/000357
- (22) 国際出願日: 2012 年 1 月 20 日(20.01.2012)
- (25) 国際出願の言語: 日本語
- (26) 国際公開の言語: 日本語
- (30) 優先権データ:
特願 2011-019784 2011 年 2 月 1 日(01.02.2011) JP
- (71) 出願人 (米国を除く全ての指定国について): パナソニック株式会社(PANASONIC CORPORATION)
[JP/JP]; 〒5718501 大阪府門真市大字門真 1 0 0
6 番地 Osaka (JP).
- (72) 発明者; および
- (75) 発明者/出願人 (米国についてのみ): 堀井 幸
(HORII, Yuki).
- (74) 代理人: 小谷 悦司, 外(KOTANI, Etsuji et al.); 〒
5300005 大阪府大阪市北区中之島 2 丁目 2 番 2
号大阪中之島ビル 2 階 Osaka (JP).

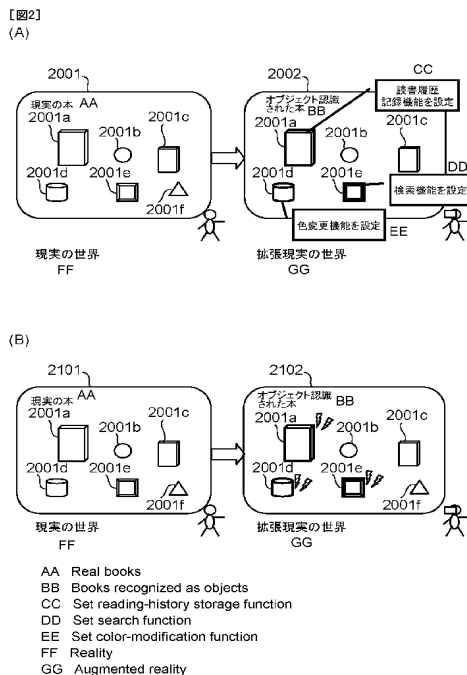
- (81) 指定国 (表示のない限り、全ての種類の国内保護が可能): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.
- (84) 指定国 (表示のない限り、全ての種類の広域保護が可能): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), ユーラシア (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), ヨーロッパ (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

添付公開書類:

— 国際調査報告 (条約第 21 条(3))

(54) Title: FUNCTION EXTENSION DEVICE, FUNCTION EXTENSION METHOD, FUNCTION EXTENSION PROGRAM, AND INTEGRATED CIRCUIT

(54) 発明の名称: 機能拡張装置、機能拡張方法、機能拡張プログラム、及び集積回路



(57) Abstract: An object recognition unit (1101) recognizes, from real-space image data, objects included in the image data. A function setting unit (1103) retains function information in which a function is stipulated, such function being comprised of groups of actions and processes which can be set for each type of object. With respect to each object recognized by the object recognition unit (1101), the function setting unit (1103) sets settable functions on the basis of the type of object. A selection determination unit (1105) determines, from among the objects recognized by the object recognition unit (1101), the object that was selected by a user as the object of operation. An operation determination unit (1106) determines the operation that the user performed on the selected object. A processing determination unit (1107) determines the processing for that operation, from among the operations that constitute the function set by the function setting unit (1103), determined by the operation determination unit (1106).

(57) 要約: オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、現実空間の映像データから、当該映像データに含まれる物体を認識する。機能設定部 1103 は、物体の種類ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持する。そして、機能設定部 1103 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 により認識された各物体に対して、各物体の種類から設定可能な機能を設定する。選択判定部 1105 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 により認識された各物体のうち、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する。操作判定部 1106 は、ユーザが選択物体に対して行った操作を判定する。処理決定部 1107 は、機能設定部 1103 により設定された機能を構成する操作のうち、操作判定部 1106 により判定された操作に対する処理を決定する。

WO 2012/105175 A1

明 細 書

発明の名称：

機能拡張装置、機能拡張方法、機能拡張プログラム、及び集積回路

技術分野

[0001] 本発明は、拡張現実空間において、認識された物体に機能を設定する技術に関するものである。

背景技術

[0002] 拡張現実空間において、オブジェクト認識された物体に機能を設定する技術として、従来、物体に予め付与された検索機能を利用する技術が知られている。

[0003] ここで、オブジェクト認識された物体に設定する「機能」とは、ユーザと物体間のインタラクションであり、ユーザによる一連の操作と一連の操作のそれぞれに対する処理との組から成る。より詳細には、「機能」とは、ユーザから物体への入力である「操作」と、ユーザによる操作に対するフィードバックとして実行される「処理」との組から構成される。

[0004] 「機能」の例としては、書き込み履歴記録機能、色変更機能、及び検索機能等が考えられる。検索機能の場合、ユーザが物体を指示するという「操作」に対して、指示された物体の情報を検索し、検索結果をユーザに視覚的に提示するという「処理」が行われる。

[0005] 例えば、特許文献1には、ユーザの関心ある物に関する情報を提供するポインティングシステムが開示されている。

[0006] ユーザは、手持ち式装置をアドレスしたい物へ向けて指し示す（前述の「操作」に相当する）。この手持ち式装置は、位置及び姿勢を測定し、基準を作成し、予めプログラムされた物に関する情報を含むデータベースを検索することによって、いずれの物がアドレスされているのかを判断する。そして、現在アドレスされている物と判断された物に関する情報が、ユーザ・インターフェースに提示される（前述の「処理」に相当する）。

- [0007] しかしながら、特許文献１の構成では、アドレスされた物体に対してどのような情報を提示するかが予め定められている。つまり、アドレスされた物体に付与される機能が予め定まっている。したがって、特許文献１では、物体に対して、複数の機能の中から、いずれかの機能を追加したり、削除したりする機構がない。そのため、物体に予め定められた機能を利用することはできるが、動的に機能を追加したり、削除したりすることができない。
- [0008] また、特許文献１では、物体の種別に応じて、物体に対して設定可能な機能を定める機構や、物体の種別ごとに付与可能な機能を判断する機構もない。そのため、物体の種別に合わせた機能を物体に追加することができない。
- [0009] 例えば、本という種別の物体に対しては書き込み履歴記録機能が付与可能な機能であり、地球儀という種別の物体に対しては検索機能と色変更機能が付与可能な機能である。
- [0010] しかしながら、特許文献１の技術では、物体の種別ごとに付与可能な機能を判断する機構がない。そのため、物体の種別として、本、ホワイトボード、地球儀が存在し、システムが物体に付与する機能として、書き込み履歴記録機能、色変更機能、及び検索機能が存在するような場合に、どの物体にどの機能を付与するかを判断して、機能を追加することができない。

先行技術文献

特許文献

- [0011] 特許文献１：特表２００４－５３１７９１号公報

発明の概要

- [0012] 本発明の目的は、拡張現実空間に取り込まれた現実空間の物体に対し、その物体の種別に適合する機能を動的に設定することができる機能拡張装置、機能拡張方法、機能拡張プログラム、及び集積回路を提供することである。
- [0013] 本発明の一局面による機能拡張装置は、現実空間における物体を拡張現実空間に取り込み、当該物体に機能を設定する機能拡張装置であって、映像入力装置により取得された現実空間の映像データから当該映像データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別及び現実空間での位置を認識するオブ

ジェクト認識部と、物体の種別ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持し、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、前記機能情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する機能設定部と、前記現実空間において、ユーザにより行われた入力動作及び前記入力動作が行われた現実空間での入力位置を認識する入力認識部と、前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の現実空間での位置及び前記入力認識部が認識した現実空間での入力位置に基づいて、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する選択判定部と、前記入力認識部が認識した入力動作を用いて、ユーザの操作を判定する操作判定部と、前記選択判定部が選択した選択物体に対して、前記機能設定部により設定された機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定部により判定された操作に対する処理を決定する処理決定部と、前記処理決定部が決定した処理を実行する実行部とを備える。

[0014] また、本発明の別の一局面による機能拡張方法、機能拡張プログラム、及び集積回路は、上記の機能拡張装置と同様の特徴を備えている。

図面の簡単な説明

[0015] [図1]本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置が適用された機能拡張システムの構成例を示すブロック図である。

[図2]図1に示す機能拡張システムが、現実空間の物体を認識し、その物体の種別に合わせた機能を設定する処理、及び設定した機能を利用する処理の一例を模式的に示した図である。

[図3]機能設定部が保持する機能情報の一例を模式的に示した図である。

[図4] (A) は、機能設定部が、オブジェクト認識部によりオブジェクト認識された各物体に対して設定した機能を示す機能設定情報の一例を示す図である。(B) は、本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置が、オブジェクト認識した物体に対して設定した機能の一例を模式的に示した図である。

[図5]本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置において実行される初期化処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。

[図6]本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置が物体をオブジェクト認識し、オブジェクト認識した物体に対して機能を設定する処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。

[図7]本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置が、ユーザの操作を認識し、物体に設定された機能を実行する際の処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。

発明を実施するための形態

[0016] 以下、本発明の実施の形態について、図面を参照しながら説明する。なお、説明に使用する図面は、本発明が採用しうる技術的特徴を説明するために用いられるものであり、記載されている装置の構成、及び処理等は、単なる一例を示したにすぎない。したがって、限定することを意図する記載が特段ない限り、装置の構成及び処理は、記載された内容に限定されない。

[0017] 本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置は、現実空間に存在する物体を、オブジェクト認識して、拡張現実空間に取り込み、オブジェクト認識した物体に対して新たな機能を追加し、追加した機能をユーザに利用させる装置である。つまり、本機能拡張装置は、オブジェクト認識した物体に、固定の機能を設定するだけでなく、その物体の種別に合わせた機能や、その物体にふさわしい機能を追加し、固定の機能及び追加した機能をユーザに利用させる装置である。

[0018] ここで、オブジェクト認識された物体に設定される「機能」とは、ユーザ及び物体間のインタラクションであり、ユーザによる一連の操作と処理との組から成る。ここで、「操作」とは、ユーザが物体に対して行う操作である。また、「処理」とは、物体からユーザに対して、上記の「操作」のフィードバックとして実行される処理である。

[0019] より詳細には、「機能」とは、ユーザから物体への入力である「操作」と、物体からユーザへの出力であり、「操作」に対するフィードバックとして実行される「処理」との組から構成されるものである。「機能」としては、例えば、書き込み履歴記録機能、色変更機能、検索機能等が含まれる。

- [0020] ここで、検索機能は、例えば、ユーザが物体を指示する「操作」と、指示された物体に関する情報をデータベースから検索し、検索結果をユーザに視覚的に提示する「処理」との組からなる。
- [0021] ここで、「処理」としては、例えば、ユーザにより操作された物体に対して、同期又は非同期で映像を出力する処理が該当する。物体に対して映像を同期して出力する処理としては、例えば、ユーザが物体を操作した時に、操作対象の物体に関連するグラフィックスを生成し、生成したグラフィックスを操作対象の物体に重畳して出力することが挙げられる。また、物体にして映像を非同期で出力する処理としては、例えば、ユーザが物体を操作したときに、操作内容に応じたデータを保持しておき、物体への操作が終了した後で、保持したデータからグラフィックスを生成し、生成したグラフィックスを物体に関連付けて出力することが挙げられる。
- [0022] これにより、拡張現実空間において、ユーザは、ヘッドマウントディスプレイ、3D立体視テレビ、又は触覚出力デバイス等の出力デバイスを通して、物体に追加された新たな機能を利用することができる。
- [0023] 例えば、「機能」として書き込み履歴記録機能が追加された場合、ユーザが現実空間の本に対して“なぞる”という操作を行うと、拡張現実空間の本に対して、なぞった箇所にアンダーラインのグラフィックスが重畳表示される。ここで、重畳表示としては、拡張現実空間の物体に対して、操作に伴うグラフィックスのみを重畳表示するものであってもよいし、重畳表示したグラフィックスに対して更に操作に伴うグラフィックスを重畳表示するものであってもよい。
- [0024] また、ユーザが過去に操作を行った拡張現実空間のある本を、再度、ユーザが開いたとき、過去の操作時に保持しておいたデータからグラフィックスを生成し、物体に重畳表示してもよい。これにより、ユーザは、拡張現実空間において、本に対して指でアンダーラインを引き、事後にアンダーラインを確認する体験を得ることができる。
- [0025] 本実施の形態では、「操作」として、ユーザが手を動かして操作を入力と

することを基本に説明する。しかしながら、本発明における「操作」は、手の動きに限定されず、視線や音声（言語）等を操作として採用してもよい。

[0026] また、本実施の形態では、「処理」として、物体に対してグラフィックスを重畳表示するような映像出力を基本に説明する。しかしながら、「処理」として、映像出力に限定されず、例えば、音声出力や触覚出力等、他の出力を採用してもよい。

[0027] 以下、本発明の実施の形態における機能拡張装置を機能拡張システムに適用した場合を例に挙げて具体的に説明する。図1は、本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置1002が適用された機能拡張システム1001の構成例を示すブロック図である。なお、図1に示す機能拡張システム1001は、例えばヘッドマウントディスプレイ（HMD）に搭載されている。また、図1に示す機能拡張装置1002は、例えばCPU、ROM、及びRAM等を備えるマイクロコンピュータにより構成され、例えばCPUが本発明による機能拡張プログラムを実行することで、各ブロックの機能が実現される。拡張機能プログラムは、例えばROMまたはRAM等の記憶装置に格納されている。

[0028] 具体的には、オブジェクト認識部1101、3Dモデル管理部1102、入力認識部1104、選択判定部1105、操作判定部1106、処理決定部1107、グラフィックス生成部1108、映像出力制御部1109、触覚出力制御部1110は、それぞれが例えば、記憶装置1007に記憶された拡張機能プログラムに含まれるプログラムであり、記憶装置1007から読み出されてCPUにより実行される構成であり、機能設定部1103は、記憶装置1007に記憶された拡張機能プログラムに含まれるプログラムであり、記憶装置1007から読み出されてCPUにより実行される構成である。

[0029] 記憶装置1007から読み出されてCPUにより実行される機能設定部1103は、例えば、機能情報を記憶装置1007から読み出してRAMに格納する。なお、図1に示す機能拡張装置1002に含まれるオブジェクト認

識部 1101、3Dモデル管理部 1102、入力認識部 1104、選択判定部 1105、操作判定部 1106、処理決定部 1107、グラフィックス生成部 1108、映像出力制御部 1109、触覚出力制御部 1110および機能設定部 1103をそれぞれ記憶装置 1007に格納されたプログラムとし、CPUにて実行する構成としたが、これに限定される必要はない。

[0030] 例えば、図1に示す機能拡張装置 1002に含まれるオブジェクト認識部 1101、3Dモデル管理部 1102、入力認識部 1104、選択判定部 1105、操作判定部 1106、処理決定部 1107、グラフィックス生成部 1108、映像出力制御部 1109、触覚出力制御部 1110および機能設定部 1103を専用の処理回路（例えばLSIなどの集積回路）を用いて構成しても良い。

[0031] 機能拡張システム 1001は、機能拡張装置 1002、映像入力装置 1003、ユーザ入力認識装置 1004、映像出力装置 1005、触覚出力装置 1006、記憶装置 1007、及び通信部 1008を備える。

[0032] 機能拡張装置 1002は、オブジェクト認識部 1101、3Dモデル管理部 1102、機能設定部 1103、入力認識部 1104、選択判定部 1105、操作判定部 1106、処理決定部 1107、グラフィックス生成部 1108、映像出力制御部 1109（実行部の一例）、及び触覚出力制御部 1110（実行部の一例）を備える。

[0033] 以下、機能拡張装置 1002が備える各構成について説明する。オブジェクト認識部 1101は、映像入力装置 1003により取得された現実空間の映像データから、当該映像データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別及び現実空間での位置を認識する。具体的には、オブジェクト認識部 1101は、映像入力装置 1003が現実空間を撮影することで取得した映像データが映像入力装置 1003から供給される。そして、オブジェクト認識部 1101は、供給された映像データに含まれる物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を認識し、3Dモデル管理部 1102に通知する。

[0034] ここで、映像入力装置 1003が、例えば、3Dカメラにより構成されて

いる場合、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は下記の処理を行って物体を認識すればよい。まず、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、映像入力装置 1003 から視線の異なる 2 系統の映像データを取得する。そして、映像入力装置 1003 は、一方の系統の映像データに対して特徴点抽出処理を行い映像データに含まれる特徴点を抽出する。特徴点としては、例えば、物体の輪郭上の点であって、頂点や曲率が大きな点等の物体の形状を特徴付ける点が該当する。そして、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、映像データから抽出した特徴点をクラスタリングして複数の特徴点群に分け、特徴点群における特徴点の配置パターンから、特徴点群が示す物体を特定する。この場合、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、種々の物体について基準となる特徴点の配置パターンである基準配置パターンを予め保持しておき、この基準配置パターンと映像データから抽出した特徴点の配置パターンとを比較することで、特徴点群が示す物体を特定すればよい。

[0035] なお、このような物体を認識する技術は例えばデジタルカメラ等で広く採用されている顔認識技術が知られており、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、この顔認識技術と同様の手法を用いて映像データに含まれる物体を認識すればよい。

[0036] そして、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、特定した物体の各特徴点と同一箇所を示す対応点を別系統の映像データから特定する。そして、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、各特徴点と各対応点との視差からステレオ法を用いて各特徴点の現実空間における 3 次元位置を求め、各特徴点の現実空間における位置を物体の位置として認識すればよい。

[0037] また、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、現実空間の物体に対して付与されたマーカ情報を認識することで、映像データに含まれる物体を認識してもよい。ここで、マーカ情報とは、物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び位置等の情報を記述する情報である。例えば、マーカ情報をバーコードや記号列で表したものを物体に付与しておき、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、映像データからこのバーコードを認識し、認識したバーコードや記号列から物体の種別

、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を認識すればよい。

[0038] また、マーカ情報をＩＣタグに記憶させて物体に保持させ、オブジェクト認識部１１０１は、ＩＣタグに保持されたデータを読み出してマーカ情報を取得してもよい。この場合、機能拡張システム１００１にＩＣタグリーダを設け、オブジェクト認識部１１０１は、このＩＣタグリーダにマーカ情報を読み出させ、マーカ情報を取得してもよい。

[0039] なお、マーカ情報に含まれる位置は、例えば、物体が配置された経度及び緯度が採用されている。そして、機能拡張システム１００１にＧＰＳを設ける。オブジェクト認識部１１０１は、ＧＰＳから機能拡張システム１００１の現実空間の位置を認識し、マーカ情報に含まれる物体の位置と比較して、機能拡張システム１００１に対する物体の相対的な位置を求めればよい。

[0040] また、映像入力装置１００３が、例えば、深度センサーにより構成されている場合、オブジェクト認識部１１０１は、映像入力装置１００３により取得された距離成分の画像データから物体の特徴点を抽出する。そして、抽出した特徴点の配置パターンから物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を認識すればよい。

[0041] ３Ｄモデル管理部１１０２は、オブジェクト認識部１１０１が認識した各物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置がオブジェクト認識部１１０１から通知され、通知された各物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を含むデータを各物体の３Ｄ立体視モデルとして生成し、保持する。

[0042] また、３Ｄモデル管理部１１０２は、各物体の３Ｄ立体視モデルに対して、各物体を識別するための物体識別子を付与する。つまり、各物体の３Ｄ立体視モデルは、物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を示すデータに物体の物体識別子が紐付けられたデータとなる。なお、３Ｄモデル管理部１１０２は、生成した３Ｄ立体視モデルを物体認識通知Ｄ１として、機能設定部１１０３に通知する。

[0043] また、３Ｄモデル管理部１１０２は、処理決定部１１０７から、物体識別子を指定して物体（選択物体）へのグラフィックスの重畳依頼Ｄ２が供給さ

れると、当該物体に関するグラフィックス生成情報を生成して保持する。ここで、グラフィックス生成情報は、仮想現実空間で物体に重畳表示するグラフィックスを生成するために必要な情報である。グラフィックスの重畳依頼D2には、グラフィックスの大きさ、形状、及び重畳位置を示すデータが含まれている。したがって、3Dモデル管理部1102は、グラフィックスの大きさ、形状、及び重畳位置を示すデータをグラフィックス生成情報として生成すればよい。

[0044] 3Dモデル管理部1102は、生成したグラフィックス生成情報をグラフィックス生成依頼D3としてグラフィックス生成部1108に通知する。

[0045] 機能設定部1103は、物体の種別ごとに設定可能な一連の操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持する。機能情報については、図3を用いて後述する。そして、機能設定部1103は、オブジェクト認識部1101により物体が認識された際に、機能情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する。なお、機能設定部1103は、物体認識通知D1が3Dモデル管理部1102から供給されたときに、この物体認識通知D1が示す物体がオブジェクト認識部1101により認識されたと判定すればよい。

[0046] そして、機能設定部1103は、3Dモデル管理部1102からの物体認識通知D1が通知されると、図3(A)に示す機能力カテゴリー候補情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から設定可能な機能力カテゴリーの候補を検索し、検索した機能力カテゴリーの候補の中から当該物体に設定する機能を決定する。

[0047] なお、本発明では、3Dモデル管理部1102を省いてもよい。この場合、オブジェクト認識部1101は認識した物体に物体識別子を付与し、物体識別子、並びに認識した物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を物体認識通知D1として機能設定部1103に通知する。そして、機能設定部1103は、オブジェクト認識部1101から通知された物体認識通知D1と、図3(A)に示す機能力カテゴリー候補情報とを照合し、認識された各物体の種別から設定可能な機能力カテゴリーの候補を検索し、検索した機能力カテ

りの候補の中から各物体に設定する機能を決定すればよい。

[0048] ここで、機能設定部 1103 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 により物体が認識された際に、当該物体の種別に対して設定可能な操作及び処理の候補をユーザに提示し、ユーザにより選択された操作及び処理を当該物体の機能として設定し、設定した機能を、ユーザ識別子と対応付けて保持してもよい。この場合、認識された物体に対して設定可能な全ての操作及び処理が物体の機能として設定されるのではなく、物体に対して設定可能な全ての操作及び処理のうち、ユーザが選択した一連の操作及び処理が物体の機能として設定される。このように、機能設定部 1103 は、機能をユーザ識別子と対応付けて記録しておくことで、同一の物体であってもユーザ毎に異なる機能を設定することができ、ユーザの好みに合わせた機能を各物体に設定することができる。

[0049] ここで、ユーザに好みの機能を問い合わせるタイミングとしては、物体が認識されたときに限らず、物体の認識後であってもよい。物体の認識後においては、ユーザから機能の変更依頼が入力されたときに、ユーザに好みの機能の問い合わせを行えばよい。

[0050] また、機能設定部 1103 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 により物体が認識された際に、認識された物体の特徴から設定可能な操作及び処理を判定し、判定した操作及び処理を物体の機能として設定してもよい。ここで、特徴としては、認識された物体の形状及び大きさの少なくともいずれか一方が該当する。

[0051] 更に、機能設定部 1103 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 により物体が認識された際に、機能拡張装置 1002 の能力及び機能拡張装置 1002 に接続される周辺機器の能力から、認識された物体に対して設定可能な操作及び処理を決定し、決定した操作及び処理を物体の機能として設定してもよい。

[0052] つまり、本実施の形態では、認識された物体に対して設定可能な全ての操作及び処理を物体の機能として設定するのではなく、物体の特徴及び機能拡張

張システム１００１の性能（スペック）に合う操作及び処理を物体の機能として選択的に設定してもよい。

[0053] また、機能設定部１１０３は、後述する処理決定部１１０７からある物体についての物体識別子を通知することで、当該物体に対して設定された機能を問い合わせるための機能問い合わせ依頼Ｄ４が通知されると、当該物体に設定された機能設定情報（図４（Ａ））を参照し、当該物体に対して設定された機能を特定し、特定した機能に対応する機能対応情報Ｄ７（図３（Ｃ）参照）を処理決定部１１０７に通知する。

[0054] 入力認識部１１０４は、ユーザ入力認識装置１００４により取得されたユーザの動作を示す情報から、ユーザによる入力動作及び入力動作が行われた現実空間の位置である入力位置を認識する。具体的には、入力認識部１１０４は、ユーザ入力認識装置１００４からユーザの動作を示す情報として出力されるユーザの手の動作を示す情報を取得することで、ユーザによる入力動作及び入力位置を認識する。そして、入力認識部１１０４は、ユーザによる入力動作及び入力位置を認識すると、手の動作を示す情報を操作判定部１１０６に通知し、かつ、入力位置を選択判定部１１０５に通知する。ここで、手の動作を示す情報としては、例えば、ユーザの手の特徴点の現実空間における位置を示す位置データを時系列に並べたデータが採用される。

[0055] また、入力認識部１１０４は、本機能拡張システムの使用がユーザにより開始される際（例えば電源投入時）、そのユーザからユーザ識別子を取得する。ここで、入力認識部１１０４は、ユーザの指紋を認証したり、ユーザにユーザ識別子を入力させたりすることで、ユーザ識別子を取得すればよい。ユーザの指紋を認証する場合、入力認識部１１０４は、本機能拡張システム１００１の使用が許可されているユーザの指紋の画像データをユーザ識別子と対応付けて予め保持しておく。そして、入力認識部１１０４は、本機能拡張システム１００１の使用開始時にユーザ入力認識装置１００４にユーザの指紋の画像データを取得させる。そして、入力認識部１１０４は、取得した指紋の画像データと、予め保持している指紋の画像データとを照合し、本機

能拡張システムを使用しているユーザを特定し、特定したユーザのユーザ識別子を取得すればよい。

[0056] また、ユーザにユーザ識別子を入力させる場合は、映像出力装置 1005 にキーボードのグラフィックスを表示させ、そのグラフィックスを通じてユーザにユーザ識別子を入力させてもよい。或いは、本機能拡張システムに物理的なキーボードを設け、このキーボードを操作することで、ユーザ識別子を入力させてもよい。なお、入力認識部 1104 は、取得したユーザ識別子を操作判定部 1106 に通知する。

[0057] 選択判定部 1105 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 により認識された各物体の現実空間での位置と、入力認識部 1104 により認識された現実空間での入力位置とに基づいて、オブジェクト認識部 1101 により認識された各物体のうち、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する。

[0058] 具体的には、選択判定部 1105 は、3Dモデル管理部 1102 から各物体の位置データと物体識別子とが対応付けられた物体情報 D5 が通知されて、供給された物体情報 D5 から各物体の現実空間での位置を認識する。そして、選択判定部 1105 は、入力認識部 1104 から通知されたユーザの現在の入力位置に対して重なって位置する物体を選択物体として判定する。ここで、選択判定部 1105 は、入力位置に対して所定範囲内に物体が位置する場合、その物体が選択物体であると判定すればよい。また、入力位置に対して所定範囲内に複数の物体が存在する場合、入力位置に最も近い物体を選択物体として判定すればよい。そして、選択判定部 1105 は、選択物体の物体識別子を操作判定部 1106 に通知する。

[0059] なお、3Dモデル管理部 1102 を省いた場合、選択判定部 1105 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 から、認識された各物体の現実空間の位置が通知される。そして、選択判定部 1105 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 から通知された各物体の現実空間の位置と、入力認識部 1104 から通知された入力位置とからユーザが選択した選択物体を判定する。そして、選択判定部 1105 は、選択物体の物体識別子を操作判定部 1106 に通知する。

- [0060] 操作判定部 1106 は、入力認識部 1104 により認識された入力動作から、ユーザが選択物体に対して行った操作を判定する。ここで、操作判定部 1106 が判定する「操作」は、手の座標情報や、加速度情報ではなく、“なぞる”、“つかむ”、“たたく”といった人間の動作に意味付けされた操作情報である。
- [0061] 具体的には、操作判定部 1106 は、入力認識部 1104 から供給される手の動作を示す情報と、ユーザの「操作」とを対応付けた辞書情報を管理している。そして、操作判定部 1106 は、入力認識部 1104 から手の動作を示す情報が供給されると、辞書情報を参照し、手の動作を示す情報に対応する操作を判定する処理を行う。ここで、辞書情報は予め登録されたものであってもよいし、ユーザの手の動作の履歴から学習するものであってもよい。なお、ユーザの手の動作からユーザの操作を判定する技術としては、例えば、プライムセンス社のプライムセンサー用ソフトウェアである N I T E (P r i m e S e n s e ' s N a t u r a l I n t e r f a c e M i d d l e w a r e) のジェスチャ認識機能が知られており、操作判定部 1106 は、この技術を用いてユーザの操作を判定すればよい。
- [0062] そして、操作判定部 1106 は、ユーザの操作を判定すると、ユーザの操作と、選択判定部 1105 により判定された選択物体の物体識別子と、ユーザ識別子とを対応付けた処理依頼 D6 を、処理決定部 1107 に通知する。
- [0063] 処理決定部 1107 は、操作判定部 1106 から処理依頼 D6 が通知されると、その処理依頼 D6 に含まれる物体識別子（選択物体の物体識別子）及びユーザ識別子を取り出し、取り出した物体識別子及びユーザ識別子を、選択物体に設定された機能（操作及び処理の組）を問い合わせるための機能問い合わせ依頼 D4 として機能設定部 1103 に通知する。
- [0064] なお、処理決定部 1107 は、選択判定部 1105 に選択物体の物体識別子を通知させることで選択物体を認識するようにしてもよい。
- [0065] 機能設定部 1103 は、機能問い合わせ依頼 D4 が通知されると、図 4 (A) に示す機能設定情報を参照し、機能問い合わせ依頼 D4 を構成する物体

Original document is not available for WO2012105175

制御部 1109 に出力すればよい。

[0072] また、本発明では、3Dモデル管理部 1102 に加えてグラフィックス生成部 1108 を省いてもよい。この場合、処理決定部 1107 は、選択物体に対して重畳するグラフィックスを生成し、生成したグラフィックスと、映像データにおける重畳位置とを対応付けたデータを描画依頼 D9 として映像出力制御部 1109 に出力し、選択物体にグラフィックスを重畳させればよい。

[0073] グラフィックス生成部 1108 は、3Dモデル管理部 1102 が管理する物体に重畳するグラフィックスを生成する。具体的には、グラフィックス生成部 1108 は、3Dモデル管理部 1102 からグラフィックス生成依頼 D3 が供給されると、グラフィックス生成依頼 D3 に含まれるグラフィックス生成情報に従ってグラフィックスを生成する。ここで、グラフィックス生成部 1108 は、例えば、グラフィックス生成情報に規定された選択物体の映像データにおける位置に生成したグラフィックスを表示するための描画依頼 D9 を映像出力制御部 1109 に出力する。

[0074] なお、本発明では、グラフィックス生成部 1108 を省いてもよい。この場合、処理決定部 1107 は、映像データに含まれる選択物体に重畳するグラフィックスを生成し、選択物体の映像データにおける位置に生成したグラフィックスを表示するための描画依頼 D9 を映像出力制御部 1109 に出力すればよい。

[0075] 映像出力制御部 1109 は、処理決定部 1107 が決定した処理が選択物体へのグラフィックスの重畳を伴う処理である場合には、映像入力装置 1003 が取得した映像データに表示された選択物体に、グラフィックス生成部 1108 が生成したグラフィックスが重畳された映像データを映像出力装置 1005 に供給する。

[0076] また、映像出力制御部 1109 は、処理決定部 1107 が決定した処理が物体へのグラフィックスの重畳を伴わない処理である場合には、映像入力装置 1003 により取得された映像データにグラフィックスを重畳することな

く映像出力装置 1005 に供給する。

[0077] 触覚出力制御部 1110 は、処理決定部 1107 から通知された触覚出力依頼 D8 に従って、触覚出力装置 1006 を動作させる。触覚出力依頼 D8 としては、例えば、触覚出力装置 1006 を駆動するための電子信号が採用され、この電子信号が触覚出力装置 1006 に所定時間供給され、触覚出力装置 1006 は所定時間駆動して、ユーザに触覚を付与する。

[0078] 以上が、機能拡張装置 1002 が備える各構成についての説明である。

[0079] 映像入力装置 1003 は、例えば所定のフレームレートで現実空間の映像を撮影し、現実空間の映像データを取得し、取得した映像データを順次に機能拡張装置 1002 に供給する。ここで、映像入力装置 1003 としては、例えば 3D カメラ、深度センサーが挙げられる。

[0080] ユーザ入力認識装置 1004 は、ユーザの動作を示す情報を取得し、機能拡張装置 1002 に供給する。ユーザの動作を認識する装置としては、大きく、ユーザの手の動作を認識する 3D 位置推定デバイス、ユーザの視線の動作を認識するデバイス、ユーザの音声（言語）入力を認識するデバイス、及びユーザの脳波を認識するデバイス、ユーザの位置情報を認識するデバイスに大別される。

[0081] 3D 位置推定デバイスとしては、例えば、深度センサー、赤外線センサー、磁気センサー、超音波センサー、ステレオカメラ、及び加速度センサー等が挙げられる。深度センサーとしては、例えば Panasonic 電工社の D-IMager（登録商標）、Microsoft 社の KINECT（登録商標）、プライムセンスのプライムセンサーなどが挙げられる。

[0082] 加速度センサーとしては任天堂社の Wii リモコン（登録商標）が挙げられる。また、ユーザの位置情報を認識するデバイスとしては、GPS が挙げられる。

[0083] 本実施の形態では、ユーザ入力認識装置 1004 として、3D 位置推定デバイス、ユーザの視線の動きを認識するデバイス、ユーザの音声（言語）入力を認識するデバイス、及びユーザの脳波を認識するデバイス、及びユーザ

の位置情報を認識するデバイスのいずれを採用してもよいが、以下の説明では、ユーザの動作としてユーザの手の動作を認識する場合を例に挙げて説明するため、ユーザ入力認識装置 1004 としては、深度センサーや 3D カメラが採用される。なお、図 1 では、映像入力装置 1003 とユーザ入力認識装置 1004 とを別のブロックで記述しているが、映像入力装置 1003 とユーザ入力認識装置 1004 とを深度センサー又は 3D カメラで構成する場合、両ブロックを同じ深度センサー又は 3D カメラで構成すればよい。

[0084] 映像出力装置 1005 は、機能拡張装置 1002 が構築した映像を出力する。本実施の形態では、映像出力装置 1005 として、例えばヘッドマウントディスプレイが採用される。

[0085] 触覚出力装置 1006 は、触覚出力制御部 1110 からの指示を受け、ユーザに触覚を付与する。具体的には、触覚出力装置 1006 は、触覚出力制御部 1110 から出力される電子信号をユーザにとって知覚可能な物理的表現に変換する。ここで、物理的表現としては、例えば、振動が採用される。この場合、触覚出力装置 1006 としてユーザの体に装着されるバイブレータを採用すればよい。バイブレータの装着箇所としては、例えば、ユーザの指先やユーザの腰の位置等が採用されるが、ユーザが触覚を体感できる箇所であればどのような箇所を採用してもよい。このように、バイブレータを触覚出力装置 1006 としてユーザに装着させることで、HMD を装着して移動するユーザに対して確実に触覚を付与することができる。

[0086] なお、グラフィックスの重畳に付随してユーザに付与する物理現象としては触覚に限定されず、例えば音声を採用してもよい。この場合、ユーザの耳にイヤホン装着させて、選択物体に対する処理が実行される際、処理決定部 1107 は、処理の実行を説明する音声信号をイヤホンに出力し、イヤホンから音声出力させればよい。

[0087] 記憶装置 1007 は、例えば、不揮発性の記憶装置により構成され、機能設定部 1103 が物体に設定された機能（操作及び処理の組）、並びに、処理決定部 1107 が決定したデータを記録する。

[0088] 図2は、図1に示す機能拡張システム1001が、現実空間の物体を認識し、その物体の種別に合わせた機能を設定する処理、及び設定した機能を利用する処理の一例を模式的に示した図である。

[0089] 拡張現実空間とは、ユーザがヘッドマウントディスプレイなどの出力デバイスを通して認識する仮想空間である。ヘッドマウントディスプレイを装備しないとき、ユーザは現実空間を認識し、ヘッドマウントディスプレイを装備したとき、ユーザは拡張現実空間を認識する。

[0090] 図2(A)は、現実空間の物体をオブジェクト認識し、オブジェクト認識した物体に機能を設定する処理の一例を模式的に示した図である。図2(A)の左側の枠内の図は現実空間2001を示している。現実空間内2001には、例えば6個の物体2001a~2001fが存在している。

[0091] 図2(A)の右側の枠内の図は、拡張現実空間2002を示している。図2(A)の例では、現実空間2001における物体2001a, 2001d, 2001eがオブジェクト認識され、オブジェクト認識された物体2001a, 2001d, 2001eが拡張現実空間2002に取り込まれ、それぞれに機能が設定されている。オブジェクト認識とは、機能拡張装置1002が映像入力装置1003により取得された映像データに現れる物体を認識することを意味する。

[0092] 本実施の形態では、例えば、物体の種別、大きさ、ユーザへの問い合わせ結果等に基づいて、その物体に適した機能を設定する。例えば、物体2001aは、種別が「本」であるため、拡張現実空間2002において、「読書履歴記録機能」が設定されている。

[0093] また、物体2001dは、種別が「缶」であるため、拡張現実空間2002において、「色変更機能」が設定されている。この場合、ユーザが例えば缶を開ける前は青、缶を開けた後は赤というように缶にグラフィックスが重畳表示される。

[0094] また、物体2001eは、種別が「地球儀」であるため、拡張現実空間2002において、「検索機能」が設定されている。この場合、ユーザが地球

儀上に記載されたある場所に指を接触させると、その場所についての情報が拡張現実空間 2 0 0 2 内に表示される。

[0095] 図 2 (B) は、オブジェクト認識された物体に設定された機能を利用する処理の一例を模式的に示した図である。図 2 (B) の左側の枠内の図は現実空間 2 1 0 1 を示し、右側の枠内の図は拡張現実空間 2 1 0 2 を示している。

[0096] 図 2 (B) の右側に示す拡張現実空間 2 1 0 2 に示すように、機能が設定された物体 2 0 0 1 a, 2 0 0 1 d, 2 0 0 1 e には機能が設定されていることをユーザに対して視覚的に示すための視覚効果が施されている。したがって、ユーザは、物体に視覚効果が施されている場合、その物体には機能が設定されていることを認識し、その機能を利用することができる。

[0097] 図 2 (B) の例では、物体 2 0 0 1 a, 2 0 0 1 d, 2 0 0 1 e に対して機能が設定されており、そのことをユーザに視覚的に認識させるために、物体 2 0 0 1 a, 2 0 0 1 d, 2 0 0 1 e の輝度が現実空間 2 1 0 1 の輝度よりも高く設定されている。

[0098] なお、本実施の形態による機能拡張装置 1 0 0 2 が、現実世界における物体を認識し、その物体に適した機能を設定する処理、及び、物体に設定した機能を利用する処理は、この例に限定しない。

[0099] 図 3 は、機能設定部 1 1 0 3 が保持する機能情報の一例を模式的に示した図である。図 3 の例では、機能情報は、上位の層から順に、(A) に示す「機能カテゴリ候補情報」、(B) に示す「機能一覧情報」、及び (C) に示す「機能対応情報」からなる 3 層の階層構造を持つ。

[0100] 「機能カテゴリ候補情報」は、物体の種別ごと設定可能な機能カテゴリの候補を保持する。「機能一覧情報」は、各々の機能カテゴリが備える機能の一覧を保持する。「機能対応情報」は、(B) に示す機能のそれぞれに対して規定された、操作及び処理の組を保持する。

[0101] 図 3 (A) に示す機能カテゴリ候補情報は、列 3 0 0 1 ~ 3 0 0 4 を持つ。列 3 0 0 1 には、機能カテゴリの識別子が格納されている。列 3 0 0 2 に

は、機能カテゴリが格納されている。列 3 0 0 3 には、各機能カテゴリに対して設定可能な物体の種別が格納されている。列 3 0 0 4 には、各機能カテゴリに対応する機能一覧情報を参照するためのポインタが格納されている。

[0102] 図 3 (B) に示す機能一覧情報は、図 3 (A) の行 3 0 1 1 に格納された機能カテゴリが「書込み履歴の記録」に対する機能一覧情報である。図 3 (B) の例では、機能一覧情報は、列 3 1 0 1 ~ 3 1 0 3 及び行 3 1 1 1 ~ 3 1 1 3 を持つ。

[0103] 列 3 1 0 1 には、機能の識別子が格納されている。列 3 1 0 2 には、各機能がデフォルト機能であるかカスタマイズ機能であるかを示す情報が格納されている。ここで、デフォルト機能は、列 3 0 0 3 に記載される物体種別に該当する物体に対して予め設定されている機能である。

[0104] カスタマイズ機能 1、2 は、機能拡張システム 1 0 0 1 を利用するユーザによって選択された操作及び処理、物体の特徴（形状及び大きさ）に適すると判定されて設定された操作及び処理、或いは、機能拡張システム 1 0 0 1 を構成する装置の性能から選択可能な操作及び処理等のデフォルト機能とは異なる操作及び処理の組から構成されている。列 3 1 0 3 には、各機能に対応する機能対応情報を参照するためのポインタが格納されている。

[0105] 図 3 (C) に示す機能対応情報は、図 3 (B) の機能一覧情報に挙げられた各機能を構成する操作及び処理の組を規定する。

[0106] 図 3 (C) の例では、図 3 (A) に示す機能カテゴリが「書込み履歴の記録」のデフォルト機能を構成する一連の操作と処理との組を規定する機能対応情報が示されている。機能対応情報は、列 3 2 0 1、3 2 0 2 を持つ。列 3 2 0 1 には、ユーザが行う操作を規定する情報が格納されている。列 3 2 0 2 には、各操作に対応する処理の内容が格納されている。

[0107] 例えば、オブジェクト認識部 1 1 0 1 が、種別が“本”の物体を認識すると、機能設定部 1 1 0 3 は、図 3 (A) の機能カテゴリ候補情報を参照して、“本”に対しては識別子が“A”の“書き込み履歴の記録”及び識別子が“T”の“種別表示”が機能として設定可能であると判断する。

[0108] 図3（B）の機能一覧情報が示すように、“書き込み履歴の記録”に対しては、識別子が“A－a”の“デフォルト機能”と、識別子が“A－b”の“カスタマイズ機能1”と、識別子が“A－c”の“カスタマイズ機能2”とが選択可能である。ここで、特に指定のない場合には、“デフォルト機能”が選択され、図3（C）の機能対応情報に示す操作及び処理が“本”の物体の機能として設定される。

[0109] そして、操作判定部1106が“なぞる”の操作がユーザにより入力されたと認識すると、処理決定部1107は、図3（C）に示す機能対応情報を参照し、“なぞる”の操作に対応する処理である“アンダーラインを引く”の処理を決定する。これにより、グラフィックス生成部1108は、拡張現実空間の本において、ユーザが指をなぞった箇所を示すアンダーラインのグラフィックスを生成し、映像出力装置1005は、そのアンダーラインのグラフィックスを拡張現実空間の本に重畳表示する。これにより、ユーザは拡張現実空間において、本にアンダーラインを引くことができる。

[0110] 図4（A）は、機能設定部1103が、オブジェクト認識部1101によりオブジェクト認識された各物体に対して設定した機能を示す機能設定情報の一例を示す図である。機能設定情報は、オブジェクト認識されて拡張現実空間に取込まれた物体と、その物体に設定された機能とを対応付けて記憶している。

[0111] 機能設定情報は、列4001～4005を備える。列4001には、オブジェクト認識された物体の物体識別子“Object ID”が格納されている。列4002には、オブジェクト認識された各物体の種別が格納されている。列4003には、オブジェクト認識された各物体に設定された機能カテゴリの識別子が格納されている。列4004には、オブジェクト認識された各物体に設定された機能の識別子が格納されている。ここでは、簡単のため、ハイフン以下が“－a”の識別子はデフォルト機能を示し、ハイフン以下が“－b”の識別子はカスタマイズ機能を示すものとする。列4005には、オブジェクト認識された各物体に設定された機能がどのユーザに関するも

のであるかを示すユーザ識別子が格納されている。

[0112] 行4011～4018は、それぞれ、オブジェクト認識された各物体に対応するレコードを示す。ここでは、同一の物体であっても、複数のユーザが異なる機能を設定している場合は、ユーザごとに行が分けられている。

[0113] 図4（B）は、本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置1002が、オブジェクト認識した物体に対して設定した機能の一例を模式的に示した図である。

[0114] 図4（B）に示す枠内の図は、拡張現実空間4101において、オブジェクト認識された物体を示している。物体2001a～2001fは、映像入力装置1003が取得した映像データに含まれる物体である。物体2001a～2001fはオブジェクト認識され、物体識別子（Object ID）ID1～ID6が付与されている。

[0115] 物体2001aは、Object IDが「ID1」、種別が「本」の物体である。そして、物体2001aは、拡張現実空間4101において、例えば「書き込み履歴の記録」の機能が設定されている。物体2001dは、Object IDが「ID5」、種別が「缶」の物体である。そして、物体2001dは、拡張現実空間4101において、例えば「色変更機能」が設定されている。物体2001eは、Object IDが「ID6」、種別が「地球儀」の物体である。そして、物体2001eは、拡張現実空間4101において、例えば「検索機能」が設定されている。

[0116] 機能拡張システム1001が、オブジェクト認識した物体に機能を設定する処理は、この例に限定されない。また、機能を設定する処理については図6のフローチャートを用いて後述する。

[0117] 図5は、本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置1002において実行される初期化処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。まず、機能設定部1103は、図3に示す予め作成された機能情報を保持する（S5001）。ここで、機能情報は記憶装置1007に予め記憶されており、例えば、機能拡張装置1002の電源がユーザにオンされると、機能設定部1103は、記

憶装置 1007 から機能情報を読み出し、図略の RAM 等に格納することで、機能情報を保持する。

[0118] なお、機能設定部 1103 は、機能拡張装置 1002 に対して通信ネットワークを介して接続されたサーバから随時、最新の機能情報を取り込むようにしてもよい。この場合、図 1 に示す機能拡張装置 1002 の通信部 1008 を用いればよい。通信部 1008 は、機能拡張装置 1002 を通信ネットワーク NT に接続するための通信装置により構成されている。通信ネットワーク NT としては、例えばインターネットが採用されている。

[0119] サーバ 1009（外部判定装置の一例）は、例えば、機能拡張システム 1001 を管理する管理者により所持され、オペレータによって随時、作成された最新の機能情報を保持している。そして、機能拡張装置 1002 の電源がオンされると、サーバ 1009 に対して機能情報の取り込み要求を送信する。そして、サーバ 1009 は、機能情報の取り込み要求を受信すると、機能取り込み要求を送信した機能拡張システム 1001 に最新の機能情報を送信する。通信部 1008 は、機能情報を受信すると、その機能情報を機能設定部 1103 に供給する。

[0120] これにより、機能設定部 1103 は、常に最新の機能情報を用いて、オブジェクト認識した物体に対して機能を設定することができる。そのため、オブジェクト認識された物体に対して不要な機能が設定されることを防止することができる。

[0121] 図 6 は、本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置 1002 が物体をオブジェクト認識し、オブジェクト認識した物体に対して機能を設定する処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。

[0122] まず、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、映像入力装置 1003 により取得された現実空間の映像データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を 3D モデル管理部 1102 に通知する（S6001）。なお、3D モデル管理部 1102 を省いた場合、オブジェクト認識部 1101 は、認識した物体に対して物体識別子を付与し、物体

識別子、並びに認識した各物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び現実空間の位置を物体認識通知 D 1 として機能設定部 1 1 0 3 に通知すればよい。

[0123] ここで、物体の形状を示すデータとしては、例えば、物体の特徴点の配置パターンを示すデータを採用すればよい。また、物体の大きさを示すデータとしては、物体の輪郭内の面積を採用すればよい。また、現実空間の位置としては、機能拡張システム 1 0 0 1 を基準としたときの物体の位置を示す 3 次元データを採用すればよい。

[0124] 3 D モデル管理部 1 1 0 2 は、オブジェクト認識部 1 1 0 1 が認識した物体の種別、形状、大きさ、及び位置に対して、物体識別子を付与して、物体毎の 3 D 立体視モデルを生成する (S 6 0 0 2)。そして、3 D モデル管理部 1 1 0 2 は、生成した各 3 D 立体視モデルを保持すると共に、物体認識通知 D 1 として機能設定部 1 1 0 3 に通知する。

[0125] なお、3 D モデル管理部 1 1 0 2 を省いた場合、オブジェクト認識部 1 1 0 1 が機能設定部 1 1 0 3 に物体認識通知 D 1 を通知すればよい。

[0126] 次に、機能設定部 1 1 0 3 は、認識した物体に対応するオブジェクトクラスのインスタンスが存在しない場合には、オブジェクトクラスのインスタンスを生成して保存する (S 6 0 0 3)。

[0127] ここで、オブジェクトクラスとは、認識した物体の“物体識別子”、“種別”、“設定された機能”、“設定したユーザ”、及び“機能設定実施済みフラグ”が定義されたクラスである。また、インスタンスとは、認識された各物体の“物体識別子”、“種別”、“設定された機能”、“設定したユーザ”、及び“機能設定実施済みフラグ”を規定するインスタンスである。

[0128] 次に、機能設定部 1 1 0 3 は、インスタンスの“機能設定実施済みフラグ”が O F F か O N かを判定する (S 6 0 0 4)。

[0129] S 6 0 0 4 において、“機能設定実施済みフラグ”が O F F のインスタンスが存在する場合 (S 6 0 0 4 で Y E S)、すなわち、機能が設定済でない物体が存在する場合、機能設定部 1 1 0 3 は、図 3 (A) に示す機能カテゴリ候補情報を参照して、認識された物体の種別から、当該物体に対して設定

可能な機能カテゴリの候補を検索する（S 6 0 0 5）。図 3（A）の例では、種別が本の物体について、設定可能な機能カテゴリの候補は、識別子が“A”の“書き込み履歴の記録”と、識別子が“T”の“種別表示”となる。

[0130] 一方、S 6 0 0 4において、全てのインスタンスの“機能設定済みフラグ”がONである場合（S 6 0 0 4でNO）、すなわち、全ての物体について機能が設定済である場合、処理を終了する。

[0131] 次に、機能設定部 1 1 0 3は、検索した設定可能な機能カテゴリの候補の中から一つの機能カテゴリの候補を選択する（S 6 0 0 6）。図 3（A）の例において、種別が本の物体は、設定可能な機能カテゴリの候補が、“書き込み履歴の記録”及び“種別表示”である。そのため、機能設定部 1 1 0 3は、まず、上側の行に格納された“書き込み履歴の記録”を選択し、次に、“種別表示”を選択するというように、図 3（A）に示す機能カテゴリの候補を上から順に選択する。

[0132] 次に、機能設定部 1 1 0 3は、選択した機能カテゴリに定義された一連の操作及び処理のうち、いずれの操作及び処理を該当する物体に設定するか否かを決定する（S 6 0 0 7）。

[0133] 以下に、機能設定部 1 1 0 3が操作及び処理を決定する方法の例を 3 つ記載する。

[0134] （方法 1）

方法 1 は、認識した物体の形状、大きさ、及び機能拡張システム 1 0 0 1 のスペックから、当該物体に適合する操作及び機能を決定する方法である。

[0135] 具体的には、以下のような（例 1 - a）～（例 1 - d）が挙げられる。

[0136] （例 1 - a）

機能設定部 1 1 0 3は、操作判定部 1 1 0 6が文字を認識する機能を持つか持たないかに応じて、“書く”についての操作を機能として設定するか否かを判定する。例えば、操作判定部 1 1 0 6が、ユーザの“なぞる”の動作を認識することはできるが、認識した“なぞる”の動作からユーザが入力した文字を認識する機能を持たない場合もある。この場合、図 3（C）に示す

“書く”の操作を機能として設定しても無駄である。そこで、機能設定部 1103 は、操作判定部 1106 が文字認識機能を持たない場合、“書く”の操作を機能として設定しない。

[0137] 例えば、種別が本の物体において、機能設定部 1103 は、以下の処理を行う。まず、機能設定部 1103 は、“書込み履歴の記録”のデフォルト機能に対応する機能対応情報（図 3（C））を参照する。そして、機能設定部 1103 は、“書く”についての操作を省くと決定すると、デフォルト機能の機能対応情報の中から“書く”についての操作及び処理を規定する行 3214 を削除する。そして、機能設定部 1103 は、行 3214 が削除された機能対応情報をカスタマイズ機能 1 として生成し、カスタマイズ機能 1 を本に対応付ける。具体的には、機能設定部 1103 は、カスタマイズ機能 1 に識別子“A－b”を付与してカスタマイズ機能 1 の機能対応情報を生成して保存し、識別子“A－b”を本のインスタンスの“設定された機能”に書き込む。これにより、カスタマイズ機能 1 の機能対応情報で規定された一連の操作及び処理が本の機能として設定される。

[0138] （例 1－b）

機能設定部 1103 は、物体の大きさから図 3（C）に示す“文字記入”の処理を機能として設定するか否かを判定する。例えば、オブジェクト認識部 1101 が認識した物体が本である場合、大きな本であればユーザは文字を書き込むが、小さな本であればユーザは文字を書き込まない。この場合、機能設定部 1103 は、物体の大きさが規定値より小さい場合、この物体に対して“文字記入”の処理を設定しない。

[0139] 例えば、種別が本の物体において、機能設定部 1103 は、以下の処理を行う。まず、機能設定部 1103 は、“書込み履歴の記録”のデフォルト機能に対応する機能対応情報（図 3（C））を参照する。そして、機能設定部 1103 は、“文字記入”についての処理を省くと決定すると、デフォルト機能の機能対応情報の中から“文字記入”についての操作及び処理を規定する行 3214 を削除する。そして、機能設定部 1103 は、行 3214 が削

除された機能対応情報をカスタマイズ機能 1 として生成し、カスタマイズ機能 1 を本に対応付ける。

[0140] (例 1 - c)

機能設定部 1103 は、記憶装置 1007 の容量やアクセス制限機能の有無から、“書き込み履歴の記録”を機能として設定するか否か判断する。例えば、記憶装置 1007 の容量が小さい場合や記憶装置 1007 のアクセスに制限が加えられている場合、記憶装置 1007 は、ユーザの書き込み履歴を記憶することができない。この場合、“書き込み履歴の記録”を物体の機能として設定しても無駄である。

[0141] そこで、機能設定部 1103 は、記憶装置 1007 の容量が規定値より小さい場合又は記憶装置 1007 にアクセス制限が掛けられている場合、“書き込み履歴の記録”を機能として設定しない。

[0142] 例えば、種別が本の物体において、機能設定部 1103 は、“書き込み履歴の記録”の機能を本に対して設定しないと判定した場合、本の物体識別子に対して“書き込み履歴の記録”の識別子“A”を対応づけない。これにより、本に対して“書き込み履歴の記録”が規定する全ての操作及び処理が設定されない。

[0143] (例 1 - d)

例えば、物体として椅子を考える。椅子には、回転式の椅子と固定式の椅子とが存在する。固定式の椅子の形状は、脚が 4 本であることが一般的である。回転式の椅子は、脚が一本であることが一般的である。固定式の椅子に対してユーザは“回転”の操作は行わない。この場合、固定式の椅子に対して“回転”の操作を機能として設定しても無駄である。

[0144] そこで、機能設定部 1103 は、オブジェクト認識部 1101 が認識した物体が、椅子であり、形状が 4 本の脚を持つ場合、“回転”についての操作及び処理を椅子に対して設定しない。

[0145] 例えば図 3 (C) に示すデフォルト機能を示す機能対応情報において、回転についての操作及び処理が規定されていたとする。この場合、機能設定部

１１０３は、種別が椅子、で形状が４本の脚を持つ物体に対して、“回転”についての操作及び処理を規定する行を機能対応情報から削除したものをカスタマイズ機能１として生成する。そして、生成したカスタマイズ機能１の識別子を椅子の物体識別子と対応付ける。

[0146] （方法２）

方法２は、機能拡張システム１００１を管理する管理者が認識した各物体に対して機能を設定する方法である。具体的には、機能設定部１１０３は、認識された各物体について、設定可能な操作及び処理の判定処理をサーバ１００９に依頼する。すると、サーバ１００９は、判定処理が依頼された物体について操作及び処理を判定し、判定した操作及び処理を含む判定結果を機能拡張システム１００１に送信する。なお、管理者としては、機能拡張システム１００１の製造者や機能拡張システム１００１にアプリケーションを提供する提供者や、機能拡張システム１００１の管理サービスを行うサービス提供者が該当する。

[0147] そして、機能設定部１１０３は、サーバ１００９の判定結果が示す操作及び処理を判定依頼を行った物体に対する機能として設定する。

[0148] ここで、サーバ１００９は、上述した方法１と同じ手法を用いて、判定処理を行う。つまり、サーバ１００９は、図３に示す機能情報を保持しており、判定依頼を受信すると、機能情報を参照して、判定依頼がされた物体の操作及び処理を決定する。ここで、判定依頼には、物体識別子、形状、大きさ、機器情報等を含ませる。そして、サーバ１００９は、判定依頼に含まれる物体識別子、形状、大きさ、及び機器情報から操作及び処理を決定すればよい。なお、機器情報としては、操作判定部１１０６が文字認識機能を持つか否か、及び記憶装置１００７の記憶容量等の情報が含まれる。

[0149] （方法３）

方法３は、ユーザに設定可能な操作及び処理を提示し、提示した操作及び処理の中から希望する操作及び処理を選択させる方法である。具体的には、オブジェクト認識部１１０１により種別が本の物体が認識されたとすると、

機能設定部 1103 は、本のデフォルト機能に対応する機能対応情報に規定される操作及び処理（図 3（C））をユーザに提示する。

[0150] この場合、機能設定部 1103 は、図 3（C）に示す操作及び処理を表示するための表示依頼をグラフィックス生成部 1108 に通知して、図 3（C）に示す操作及び処理をリスト表示するグラフィックスを映像出力装置 1005 に表示させればよい。

[0151] ユーザは、映像出力装置 1005 にリスト表示された操作及び処理の中から希望する操作及び処理を選択する選択指令をユーザ入力認識装置 1004 に入力する。すると、機能設定部 1103 は、ユーザにより選択された操作及び処理から構成される機能対応情報をカスタマイズ機能 1 として生成し、カスタマイズ機能 1 を操作及び処理を選択したユーザのユーザ識別子とを本に対応付ける。

[0152] ここで、既にあるユーザによってカスタマイズ機能 1 が対応付けられた物体と同一の物体（物体識別子が同一の物体）に対して、別のユーザが操作及び処理を選択することもある。この場合、機能設定部 1103 は、別のユーザが選択した操作及び処理から構成される機能対応情報をカスタマイズ機能 2 として生成し、別のユーザのユーザ識別子と、カスタマイズ機能 2 とを物体に対応付ければよい。これにより、同一の物体であっても、当該物体に対してユーザ別に機能を設定することができる。以上により、各物体に適した機能が設定される。

[0153] 図 6 に戻り、機能設定部 1103 は、設定可能な機能カテゴリの候補をすべて選択したか否かを判定する（S6008）。そして、設定可能な機能カテゴリを全て選択した場合（S6008 で YES）、機能設定部 1103 は、設定すると決定した機能をオブジェクトクラスのインスタンスに設定し、“機能設定実施済みフラグ”を ON に設定する（S6009）。一方、機能設定部 1103 は、設定可能な機能カテゴリを全て選択していない場合（S6008 で NO）、処理を S6006 に戻し、処理を継続する。

[0154] つまり、機能設定部 1103 は、認識された全ての物体のインスタンスの

“機能実施済みフラグ”がONになるまでS6006～S6008の処理を繰り返し、処理を終了する。

[0155] 例えば、本については、図3（A）において、まず“書き込み履歴の記録”が選択される。そして、“書き込み履歴の記録”について、方法1～方法3のいずれかを用いて機能対応情報が生成されると、次に、“種別表示”が選択され、“種別表示”について、方法1～方法3のいずれかを用いて機能対応情報が生成される。なお、図3では、“種別表示”に対応する機能対応情報は示されていないが、図3（C）に示すようなデフォルトの機能対応情報を持っている場合、機能設定部1103は、そのデフォルトの機能対応情報を用いて機能対応情報を生成すればよい。

[0156] 図7は、本発明の実施の形態による機能拡張装置1002が、ユーザの操作を認識し、物体に設定された機能を実行する際の処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。

[0157] 入力認識部1104は、ユーザ入力認識装置1004により取得されたユーザの手の動作を示す情報からユーザの入力動作及び入力位置を認識し、入力位置を選択判定部1105に通知し、かつ、手の動作を示す情報を操作判定部1106に通知する（S7001）。

[0158] 次に、選択判定部1105は、入力認識部1104から通知された入力位置と、3Dモデル管理部1102から通知された物体情報D5とから、ユーザが選択した選択物体を判定する（S7002）。

[0159] 次に、操作判定部1106は、入力認識部1104から通知されたユーザの手の動作を示すからユーザの操作を判定する（S7003）。

[0160] 次に、処理決定部1107は、選択物体に対して設定された機能を問い合わせるための機能問い合わせ依頼D4を機能設定部1103に通知し（S7004）、当該物体に対して設定された機能を取得する。

[0161] 具体的には、機能設定部1103は、まず、図4に示す機能設定情報を参照し、選択物体に対して設定されている機能を特定する。例えば、機能問い合わせ依頼D4に含まれる物体識別子が“ID1”であり、現在、機能選択

システムを使用しているユーザがAさんであったとする。この場合、機能設定部1103は、図4に示す行4011を参照する。すると、行4011の列4004に機能の識別子として“A-a”が格納されている。つまり、機能問い合わせ依頼D4に係る本に対して“書き込み履歴の記録”のデフォルト機能が設定されている。

[0162] よって、機能設定部1103は、機能の識別子“A-a”に対応する機能対応情報（図3（C）参照）を処理決定部1107に通知する。これにより、処理決定部1107は、選択物体である本に対して設定された機能を取得する。

[0163] 次に、処理決定部1107は、取得した機能を参照し、操作判定部1106により判定された操作に対応する処理を決定する（S7005）。例えば、ユーザにより入力された操作が“なぞる”であったとすると、処理決定部1107が図3（C）に示す機能対応情報を参照し、“なぞる”の操作に対応する“アンダーラインを引く”の処理を決定する。

[0164] 次に、処理決定部1107は、決定した処理がグラフィックス重畳を伴うものであるか否かを判定する（S7006）。ここで、処理がグラフィックス重畳を伴うか否かの判定は、決定した処理の内容から判定すればよい。例えば、図3（C）の例では、“前回までの書き込み履歴を表示する”、“アンダーラインを引く”、“文字を記入”の処理は、グラフィックスの重畳を伴う処理である。したがって、処理決定部1107は決定した処理が上記の処理に該当する場合は、グラフィックスの重畳を伴う処理であると判定する。

[0165] そして、決定した処理がグラフィックスの重畳を伴う場合（S7006でYES）、処理決定部1107は、グラフィックスの大きさ、形状、及び重畳位置を含むグラフィックスの重畳依頼D2を3Dモデル管理部1102に通知する（S7007）。

[0166] 次に、3Dモデル管理部1102は、通知されたグラフィックスの重畳依頼D2をグラフィックス生成情報として生成し、このグラフィックス生成情報をグラフィックス生成依頼D3としてグラフィックス生成部1108に通

知する（Ｓ７００８）。

[0167] 次に、グラフィックス生成部１１０８は、グラフィックス生成依頼Ｄ３に従って、グラフィックスを生成し（Ｓ７００９）、描画依頼Ｄ９を映像出力制御部１１０９に通知する。次に、映像出力制御部１１０９は、描画依頼Ｄ９に従って、映像データに表示された選択物体にグラフィックス生成部１１０８により生成されたグラフィックスを重畳し（Ｓ７０１０）、映像出力装置１００５に供給する。Ｓ７００６において、処理がグラフィックスの重畳を伴うものではない場合（Ｓ７００６でＮＯ）、処理がＳ７０１１に進められる。

[0168] なお、３Ｄモデル管理部１１０２及びグラフィックス生成部１１０８を省いた場合、Ｓ７００７～Ｓ７００９において、処理決定部１１０７が選択物体に重畳するグラフィックスを生成し、生成したグラフィックスと重畳位置とを示す描画依頼Ｄ９を映像出力制御部１１０９に通知すればよい。

[0169] 次に、処理決定部１１０７は、決定した処理が、操作／利用状況の記録を含むか否かを判定する（Ｓ７０１１）。そして、決定した処理が操作／利用状況の記録を含むと判定した場合（Ｓ７０１１でＹＥＳ）、処理決定部１１０７は、操作／利用状況を記憶装置１００７に記録し（Ｓ７０１２）、処理を終了する。ここで、操作／利用状況の記録を含む処理としては、例えば図３（Ｃ）に示す“書き込み履歴を記録開始”及び“書き込み履歴を記録終了”の処理が該当する。

[0170] 処理決定部１１０７は、“書き込み履歴を記録開始”の処理を決定すると、ユーザにより入力された文字の記録を開始する。以後、ユーザにより文字が入力される都度、その文字が記憶装置１００７に格納される。そして、処理決定部１１０７は、“書き込み履歴を記録終了”の処理を決定すると、文字の記憶装置１００７への格納を終了する。

[0171] 一方、決定した処理が、操作／利用状況の記録を含まない場合（Ｓ７０１１でＮＯ）、Ｓ７０１２をスルーして処理が終了される。

[0172] このように、本実施の形態における機能拡張装置１００２によれば、オブ

ジェクト認識された物体に、固定の機能を設定するのではなく、その物体の種別に適した機能が動的に設定される。

[0173] そのため、各物体に対して個別に機能を設定しなくても、物体に対して機能を設定することができる。したがって、機能が全く設定されていない現実空間をユーザが移動したとしても、当該物体に対して機能を設定することができる。

[0174] なお、図1に記載の全ブロックをヘッドマウントディスプレイに搭載してもよいし、一部のブロックをヘッドマウントディスプレイに搭載し、他のブロックを集積回路等により構成し、ヘッドマウントディスプレイに外付けさせてもよい。

[0175] また、上述した本発明の実施の形態にかかる機能拡張装置の処理手順は、記憶装置（ROM、RAM、ハードディスク等）に格納された上述した処理手順を実行可能な機能拡張プログラムが、CPUによって解釈実行されることで実現されてもよい。この場合、機能拡張プログラムは、記憶媒体を介して記憶装置内に導入されてもよいし、記憶媒体上から直接実行されてもよい。なお、記憶媒体は、ROMやRAMやフラッシュメモリ等の半導体メモリ、フレキシブルディスクやハードディスク等の磁気ディスクメモリ、CD-ROMやDVDやBD等の光ディスクメモリ、及びメモリカード等をいう。また、記憶媒体は、電話回線や搬送路等の通信媒体を含む概念である。

[0176] また、上述した本発明の実施形態に係る機能拡張装置の各構成は、それぞれ集積回路であるLSIとして実現することができる。これらは、個別に1チップ化されてもよいし、それぞれにおいて全てまたは一部を含むように1チップ化されてもよい。ここでは、LSIとしたが、集積度の違いにより、IC、システムLSI、スーパーLSI、ウルトラLSIと呼称されることもある。

[0177] また、集積回路化の手法はLSIに限るものではなく、専用回路又は汎用プロセッサで実現してもよい。LSI製造後に、プログラムすることが可能なFPGA（Field Programmable Gate Arra

y) や、LSI 内部の回路セルの接続や設定を再構成可能なりコンフィギュラブル・プロセッサを利用してもよい。さらには、半導体技術の進歩又は派生する別技術によりLSIに置き換わる集積回路化の技術が登場すれば、当然、その技術を用いて機能ブロックの集積化を行ってもよい。バイオ技術の適応例が可能性としてありえる。

[0178] 上記の機能拡張装置の技術的特徴は以下のようにまとめることができる。

[0179] (1) 機能拡張装置は、現実空間における物体を拡張現実空間に取り込み、当該物体に機能を設定する機能拡張装置であって、映像入力装置により取得された現実空間の映像データから当該映像データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別及び現実空間での位置を認識するオブジェクト認識部と、物体の種別ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持し、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、前記機能情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する機能設定部と、前記現実空間において、ユーザにより行われた入力動作及び前記入力動作が行われた現実空間での入力位置を認識する入力認識部と、前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の現実空間での位置及び前記入力認識部が認識した現実空間での入力位置に基づいて、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する選択判定部と、前記入力認識部が認識した入力動作を用いて、ユーザの操作を判定する操作判定部と、前記選択判定部が選択した選択物体に対して、前記機能設定部により設定された機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定部により判定された操作に対する処理を決定する処理決定部と、前記処理決定部が決定した処理を実行する実行部とを備える。

[0180] この構成によれば、物体の種別ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理から構成される機能を規定する機能情報が予め保持されている。そして、映像入力装置により取得された現実空間の映像データから、映像データに含まれる各物体が認識されると、機能情報が参照され、認識された各物体に対して、各物体の種別を指標として機能が設定される。

- [0181] そして、ユーザが入力動作を行うとその入力動作と入力動作が行われた現実空間での入力位置とが認識される。そして、認識された各物体の現実空間での位置と認識された入力位置とに基づいて、認識された各物体の中から、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体が判定される。そして、入力動作からユーザの操作が判定され、その操作に対応する処理が決定され、決定された処理が選択物体に対して実行される。
- [0182] したがって、認識された物体に対して適した機能を動的に設定することができる。そのため、各物体に対して予め機能を設定しておかなくても、各物体に対して機能を設定することができる。
- [0183] (2) 前記オブジェクト認識部は、認識した物体ごとに当該物体の種別を識別し、前記機能設定部は、種別が同一の物体であっても物体ごとに機能を設定することが好ましい。
- [0184] 例えば、種別が同一であっても、大きさや性能が異なる物体に対して、全く同一の機能を設定すると、不要な機能が物体に対して設定される虞がある。そこで、種別が同一の物体であっても物体ごとに個別に機能を設定することで、不要な機能が物体に対して設定されることをより確実に防止することができる。
- [0185] (3) 前記入力認識部は、入力動作を行ったユーザを識別するためのユーザ識別子を取得し、前記機能設定部は、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、当該物体の種別に対して設定可能な操作及び処理の候補をユーザに提示し、ユーザにより選択された操作及び処理を当該物体の機能として設定し、設定した機能を、前記ユーザ識別子と対応付けて保持し、前記処理決定部は、前記機能設定部が前記ユーザ識別子を持つユーザに対して設定した機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定部により判定された操作に対する処理を決定することが好ましい。
- [0186] この構成によれば、同一の物体であってもユーザの好みに合わせて、ユーザ別に機能を設定することができる。
- [0187] (4) 前記機能設定部は、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識され

た際に、当該物体の種別に対して設定可能な操作及び処理のうち、当該物体に対して設定可能な操作及び処理を判定し、判定した操作及び処理を当該物体の機能として設定することが好ましい。

[0188] この構成によれば、物体の種別から定められる一連の操作及び処理のうち、物体別に適した操作及び処理を機能として設定することができ、各物体に対してより適した機能を設定することができる。

[0189] (5) 前記オブジェクト認識部は、物体の形状及び大きさを認識し、前記機能設定部は、前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の形状及び大きさの少なくともいずれか一方に基づいて、当該物体に設定可能な操作及び処理を判定することが好ましい。

[0190] この構成によれば、物体の形状及び大きさの少なくともいずれか一方に基づいて、物体に適した操作及び処理から構成される機能を設定することができる。

[0191] (6) 前記機能設定部は、前記機能拡張装置の能力及び前記機能拡張装置に接続される周辺装置の能力に基づいて、前記オブジェクト認識部により認識された物体に対して、設定可能な操作及び処理を判定することが好ましい。

[0192] この構成によれば、機能拡張装置の能力や、周辺装置の能力に基づいて、実行可能な操作及び処理から構成される機能を物体に対して設定することができる。

[0193] (7) 機能設定部は、所定の通信ネットワークを介して外部判定装置と接続され、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、当該物体の種別に対して設定可能な操作及び処理のうち、当該物体に対して設定可能な操作及び処理の判定処理を前記外部判定装置に依頼し、前記外部判定装置による判定結果にしたがって、当該物体に対する機能を設定することが好ましい。

[0194] この構成によれば、外部判定装置が各物体に対する操作及び処理を判定するため、機能拡張装置の処理負担を軽減することができる。

- [0195] (8) 前記機能設定部は、所定の通信ネットワークを介して接続されたサーバから前記機能情報を取得することが好ましい。
- [0196] この構成によれば、適宜、最新の機能情報をサーバから取得することができる。
- [0197] (9) 前記実行部は、前記映像入力装置により取得された映像データにグラフィックスを重畳させて映像出力装置に表示させる映像出力制御部を含み、前記処理決定部により決定された処理が前記選択物体に対してグラフィックスを重畳させる処理である場合、前記選択物体に重畳させるグラフィックスを生成し、生成したグラフィックスを前記選択物体に重畳させる描画依頼を前記映像出力制御部に出力するグラフィックス生成部を更に備えることが好ましい。
- [0198] この構成によれば、ユーザが選択物体を操作することにより決定された処理が選択物体にグラフィックスを重畳させる処理である場合、グラフィックス生成部によって、選択物体に重畳するグラフィックスが生成され、生成されたグラフィックスが映像データ中の選択物体に重畳させる描画依頼が映像出力制御部に出力される。そして、描画依頼を受け付けた映像出力制御部によって映像データ中の選択物体にグラフィックスが重畳され、重畳された映像データが映像出力装置に表示される。そのため、選択物体に対する処理が視覚を通じてユーザにフィードバックされ、ユーザに対して操作感を付与することができる。
- [0199] (10) 前記実行部は、ユーザに対して触覚を付与する触覚出力装置を制御する触覚出力制御部を含み、前記触覚出力制御部は、前記選択物体へのグラフィックスの重畳に付随してユーザに触覚を付与するために前記触覚出力装置を駆動させることが好ましい。
- [0200] この構成によれば、選択物体に対してグラフィックスが重畳される際、触覚出力装置が駆動されてユーザに触覚が付与される。そのため、選択物体に対する処理が視覚のみならず触覚も通じてフィードバックされ、ユーザに対してより刺激のある操作感を付与することができ、ユーザの操作に対する好

奇心をより高めることができる。

[0201] (11) オブジェクト認識部により認識された各物体に対して物体識別子を付与し、前記物体識別子、前記物体の種別、及び前記物体の現実空間での位置を含む物体毎の3D立体視モデルを生成し、生成した物体毎の3D立体視モデルを物体認識通知として前記機能設定部に通知する3Dモデル管理部を更に備え、前記機能設定部は、前記3Dモデル管理部から物体認識通知が通知されたときに、通知された物体認識通知が示す物体が前記オブジェクト認識部により認識されたと判定し、前記機能情報を参照して認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定することが好ましい。

[0202] この構成によれば、オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識されると、3Dモデル管理部により、各物体に物体識別子が付与され、物体識別子、物体の種別、及び物体の現実空間での位置を含む3D立体視モデルが物体毎に生成され、生成された3D立体視モデルが物体認識通知として機能設定部に通知される。このように、オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識されると、認識された物体に関する情報が機能設定部に速やかに通知されるため、機能設定部は認識された各物体に対する機能を速やかに設定することができる。

[0203] (12) 前記3Dモデル管理部は、前記オブジェクト認識部により認識された各物体の位置データ及び物体識別子を対応付けた物体情報を前記選択判定部に通知し、前記選択判定部は、前記3Dモデル管理部から通知された物体情報によって前記オブジェクト認識部により認識された各物体の現実空間での位置を認識し、前記入力認識部により認識された前記入力位置に対して所定範囲内に位置する物体を前記選択物体として判定することが好ましい。

[0204] この構成によれば、オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識されると、3Dモデル管理部から選択判定部に物体識別子と各物体の位置データとが対応付けられた物体情報が通知される。そのため、選択判定部は3Dモデル管理部から通知された物体情報により各物体の現実空間での位置を認識することができる。そして、選択判定部は、認識した各物体の位置とユーザの入力位置とを照合し、入力位置に対して所定範囲内にいる物体を選択物体として正確

に判定することができる。

産業上の利用可能性

[0205] 本発明にかかる機能拡張装置は、ヘッドマウントディスプレイ等を用いた拡張現実の世界において、オブジェクト認識された物体に、物体の種別に合わせた機能を動的に設定し、その機能を利用する手段として有用である。

請求の範囲

[請求項1] 現実空間における物体を拡張現実空間に取り込み、当該物体に機能を設定する機能拡張装置であって、

映像入力装置により取得された現実空間の映像データから当該映像データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別及び現実空間での位置を認識するオブジェクト認識部と、

物体の種別ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持し、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、前記機能情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する機能設定部と、

前記現実空間において、ユーザにより行われた入力動作及び前記入力動作が行われた現実空間での入力位置を認識する入力認識部と、

前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の現実空間での位置及び前記入力認識部が認識した現実空間での入力位置に基づいて、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する選択判定部と、

前記入力認識部が認識した入力動作を用いて、ユーザの操作を判定する操作判定部と、

前記選択判定部が選択した選択物体に対して、前記機能設定部により設定された機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定部により判定された操作に対する処理を決定する処理決定部と、

前記処理決定部が決定した処理を実行する実行部とを備える機能拡張装置。

[請求項2] 前記オブジェクト認識部は、認識した物体ごとに当該物体の種別を識別し、

前記機能設定部は、種別が同一の物体であっても物体ごとに機能を設定する請求項1記載の機能拡張装置。

[請求項3] 前記入力認識部は、入力動作を行ったユーザを識別するためのユーザ識別子を取得し、

前記機能設定部は、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、当該物体の種別に対して設定可能な操作及び処理の候補をユーザに提示し、ユーザにより選択された操作及び処理を当該物体の機能として設定し、設定した機能を、前記ユーザ識別子と対応付けて保持し、

前記処理決定部は、前記機能設定部が前記ユーザ識別子を持つユーザに対して設定した機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定部により判定された操作に対する処理を決定する請求項 2 記載の機能拡張装置。

[請求項4] 前記機能設定部は、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、当該物体の種別に対して設定可能な操作及び処理のうち、当該物体に対して設定可能な操作及び処理を判定し、判定した操作及び処理を当該物体の機能として設定する請求項 2 又は 3 記載の機能拡張装置。

[請求項5] 前記オブジェクト認識部は、物体の形状及び大きさを認識し、
前記機能設定部は、前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の形状及び大きさの少なくともいずれか一方に基づいて、当該物体に設定可能な操作及び処理を判定する請求項 4 記載の機能拡張装置。

[請求項6] 前記機能設定部は、前記機能拡張装置の能力及び前記機能拡張装置に接続される周辺装置の能力に基づいて、前記オブジェクト認識部により認識された物体に対して、設定可能な操作及び処理を判定する請求項 4 又は 5 記載の機能拡張装置。

[請求項7] 前記機能設定部は、所定の通信ネットワークを介して外部判定装置と接続され、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、当該物体の種別に対して設定可能な操作及び処理のうち、当該物体に対して設定可能な操作及び処理の判定処理を前記外部判定装置に依頼し、前記外部判定装置による判定結果にしたがって、当該物体に対する機能を設定する請求項 4 ～ 6 のいずれかに記載の機能拡張装置。

- [請求項8] 前記機能設定部は、所定の通信ネットワークを介して接続されたサーバから前記機能情報を取得する請求項 1 ～ 7 のいずれかに記載の機能拡張装置。
- [請求項9] 前記実行部は、前記映像入力装置により取得された映像データにグラフィックスを重畳させて映像出力装置に表示させる映像出力制御部を含み、
前記処理決定部により決定された処理が前記選択物体に対してグラフィックスを重畳させる処理である場合、前記選択物体に重畳させるグラフィックスを生成し、生成したグラフィックスを前記選択物体に重畳させる描画依頼を前記映像出力制御部に出力するグラフィックス生成部を更に備える請求項 1 ～ 8 のいずれかに記載の機能拡張装置。
- [請求項10] 前記実行部は、ユーザに対して触覚を付与する触覚出力装置を制御する触覚出力制御部を含み、
前記触覚出力制御部は、前記選択物体へのグラフィックスの重畳に付随してユーザに触覚を付与するために前記触覚出力装置を駆動させる請求項 9 記載の機能拡張装置。
- [請求項11] オブジェクト認識部により認識された各物体に対して物体識別子を付与し、前記物体識別子、前記物体の種別、及び前記物体の現実空間での位置を含む物体毎の 3 D 立体視モデルを生成し、生成した物体毎の 3 D 立体視モデルを物体認識通知として前記機能設定部に通知する 3 D モデル管理部を更に備え、
前記機能設定部は、前記 3 D モデル管理部から物体認識通知が通知されたときに、通知された物体認識通知が示す物体が前記オブジェクト認識部により認識されたと判定し、前記機能情報を参照して認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する請求項 1 ～ 10 のいずれかに記載の機能拡張装置。
- [請求項12] 前記 3 D モデル管理部は、前記オブジェクト認識部により認識された各物体の位置データ及び物体識別子を対応付けた物体情報を前記選

択判定部に通知し、

前記選択判定部は、前記3Dモデル管理部から通知された物体情報によって前記オブジェクト認識部により認識された各物体の現実空間での位置を認識し、前記入力認識部により認識された前記入力位置に対して所定範囲内に位置する物体を前記選択物体として判定する請求項11記載の機能拡張装置。

[請求項13]

現実空間における物体を拡張現実空間に取り込み、当該物体に機能を設定する機能拡張方法であって、

機能拡張装置が、映像入力装置により取得された現実空間の映像データから当該映像データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別及び現実空間での位置を認識するオブジェクト認識ステップと、

機能拡張装置が、物体の種別ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持し、前記オブジェクト認識ステップにより物体が認識された際に、前記機能情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する機能設定ステップと、

機能拡張装置が、前記現実空間において、ユーザにより行われた入力動作及び前記入力動作が行われた現実空間での入力位置を認識する入力認識ステップと、

機能拡張装置が、前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の現実空間での位置及び前記入力認識ステップが認識した現実空間での入力位置に基づいて、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する選択判定ステップと、

機能拡張装置が、前記入力認識ステップが認識した入力動作を用いて、ユーザの操作を判定する操作判定ステップと、

機能拡張装置が、前記選択判定部が選択した選択物体に対して、前記機能設定ステップにより設定された機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定ステップにより判定された操作に対する処理を決定する処

理決定ステップと、

機能拡張装置が、前記処理決定ステップが決定した処理を実行する実行ステップとを備える機能拡張方法。

[請求項14]

現実空間における物体を拡張現実空間に取り込み、当該物体に機能を設定する機能拡張装置としてコンピュータを機能させる機能拡張プログラムであって、

映像入力装置により取得された現実空間の映像データから当該映像データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別及び現実空間での位置を認識するオブジェクト認識部と、

物体の種別ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持し、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、前記機能情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する機能設定部と、

前記現実空間において、ユーザにより行われた入力動作及び前記入力動作が行われた現実空間での入力位置を認識する入力認識部と、

前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の現実空間での位置及び前記入力認識部が認識した現実空間での入力位置に基づいて、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する選択判定部と、

前記入力認識部が認識した入力動作を用いて、ユーザの操作を判定する操作判定部と、

前記選択判定部が選択した選択物体に対して、前記機能設定部により設定された機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定部により判定された操作に対する処理を決定する処理決定部と、

前記処理決定部が決定した処理を実行する実行部としてコンピュータを機能させる機能拡張プログラム。

[請求項15]

現実空間における物体を拡張現実空間に取り込み、当該物体に機能を設定する機能拡張装置の集積回路であって、

映像入力装置により取得された現実空間の映像データから当該映像

データに含まれる物体を認識し、認識した物体の種別及び現実空間での位置を認識するオブジェクト認識部と、

物体の種別ごとに設定可能な操作及び処理の組から構成される機能が規定された機能情報を保持し、前記オブジェクト認識部により物体が認識された際に、前記機能情報を参照し、認識された物体の種別から当該物体に対する機能を設定する機能設定部と、

前記現実空間において、ユーザにより行われた入力動作及び前記入力動作が行われた現実空間での入力位置を認識する入力認識部と、

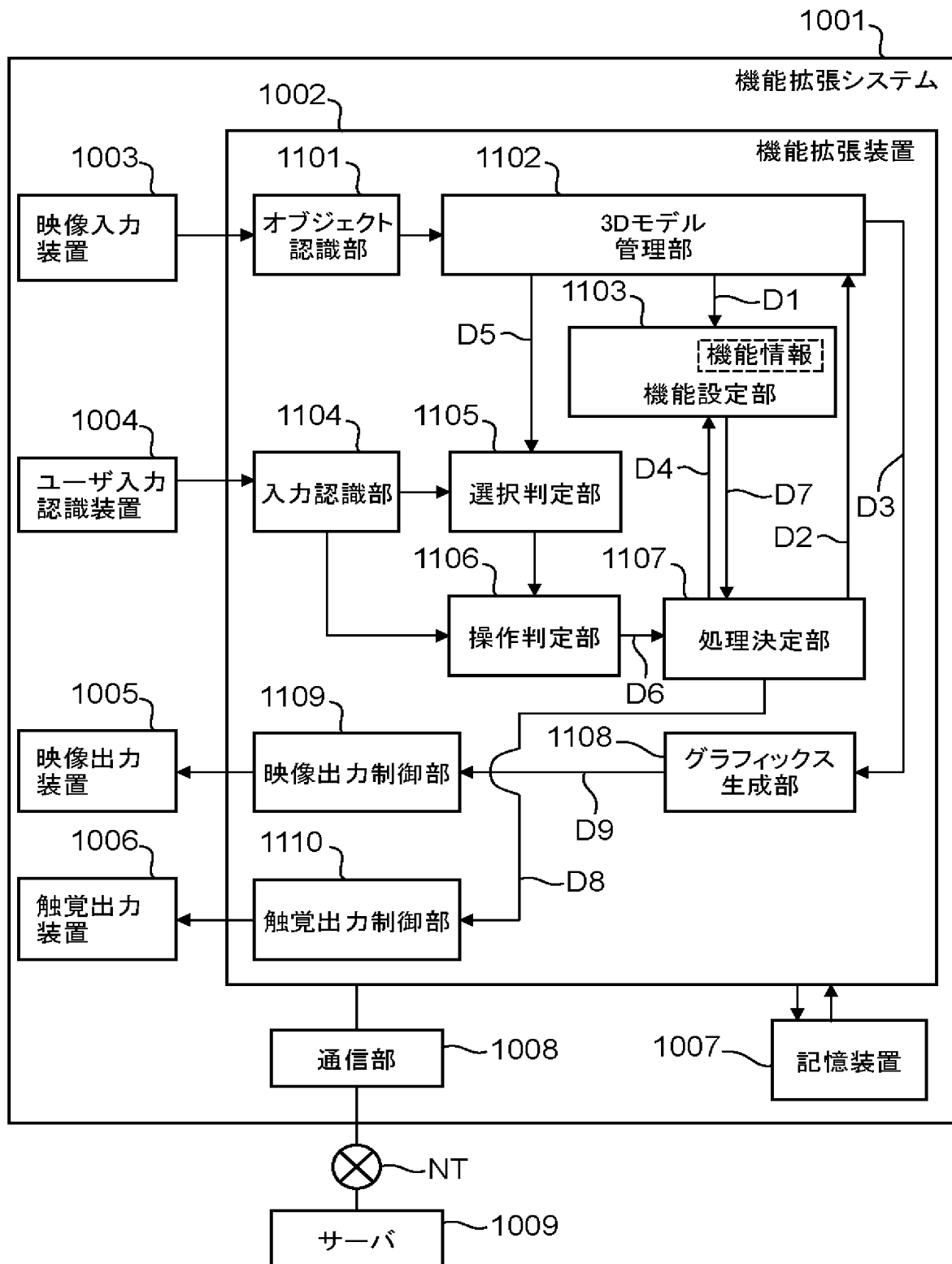
前記オブジェクト認識部が認識した物体の現実空間での位置及び前記入力認識部が認識した現実空間での入力位置に基づいて、ユーザが操作対象として選択した選択物体を判定する選択判定部と、

前記入力認識部が認識した入力動作を用いて、ユーザの操作を判定する操作判定部と、

前記選択判定部が選択した選択物体に対して、前記機能設定部により設定された機能を構成する操作のうち、前記操作判定部により判定された操作に対する処理を決定する処理決定部と、

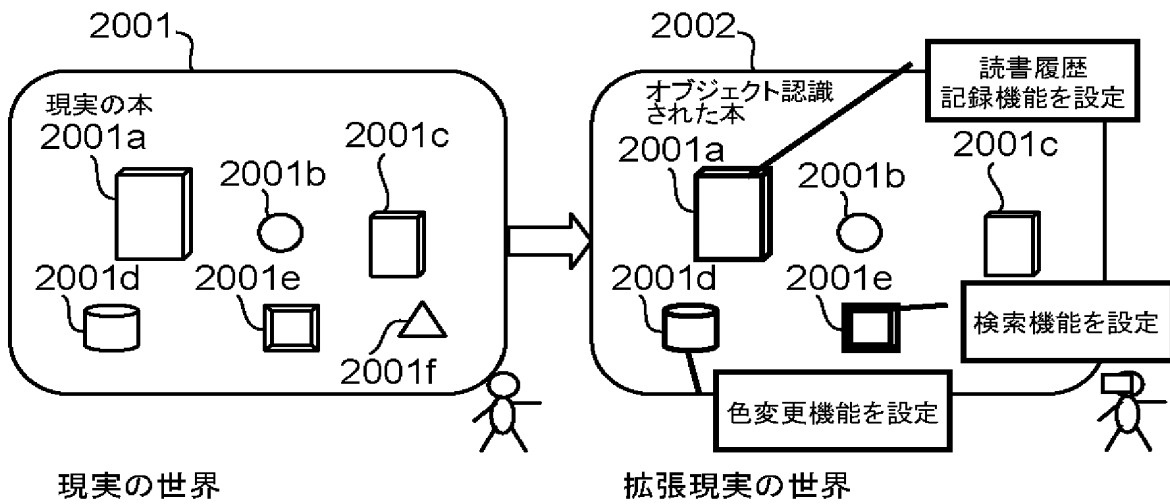
前記処理決定部が決定した処理を実行する実行部とを備える集積回路。

[図1]

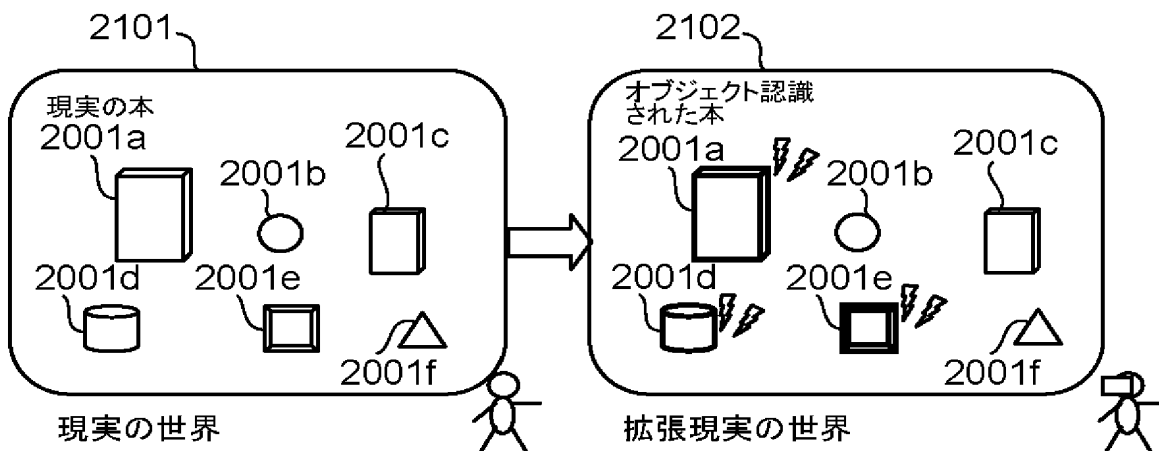


[図2]

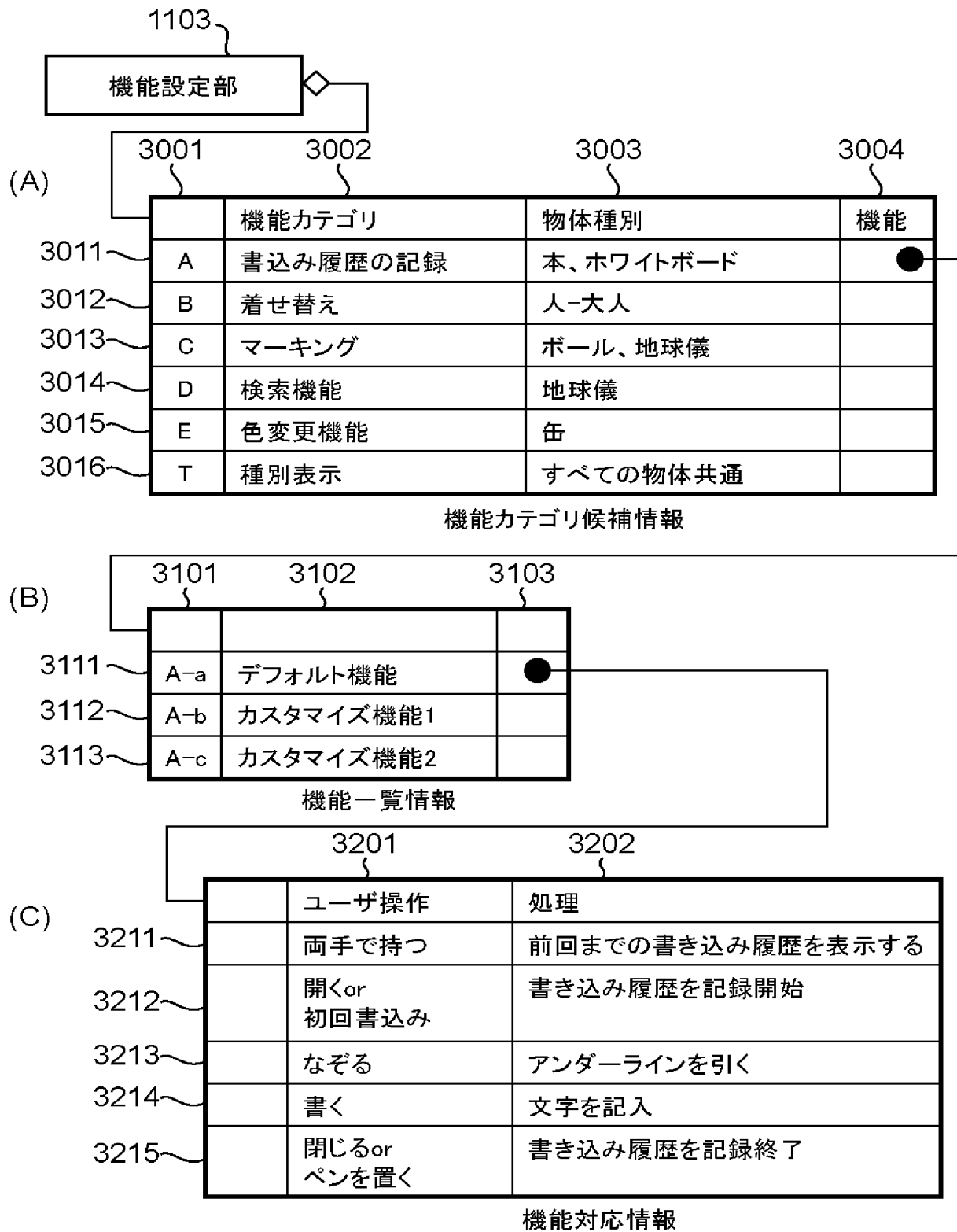
(A)



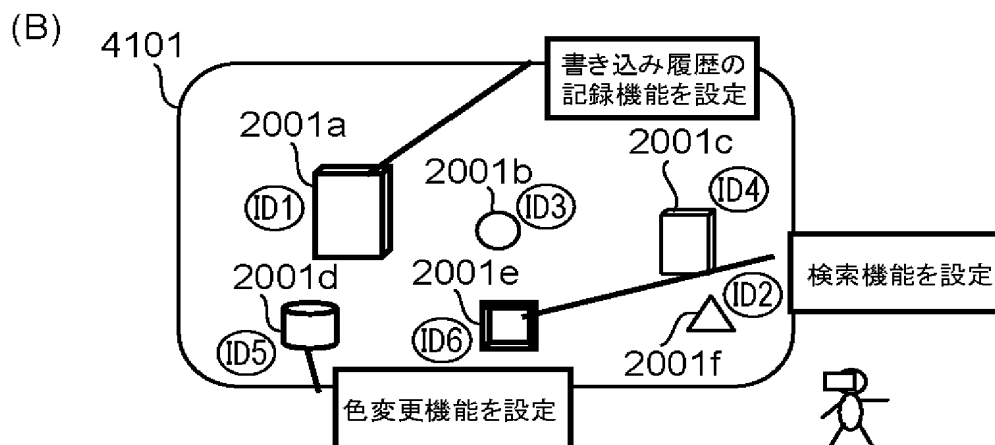
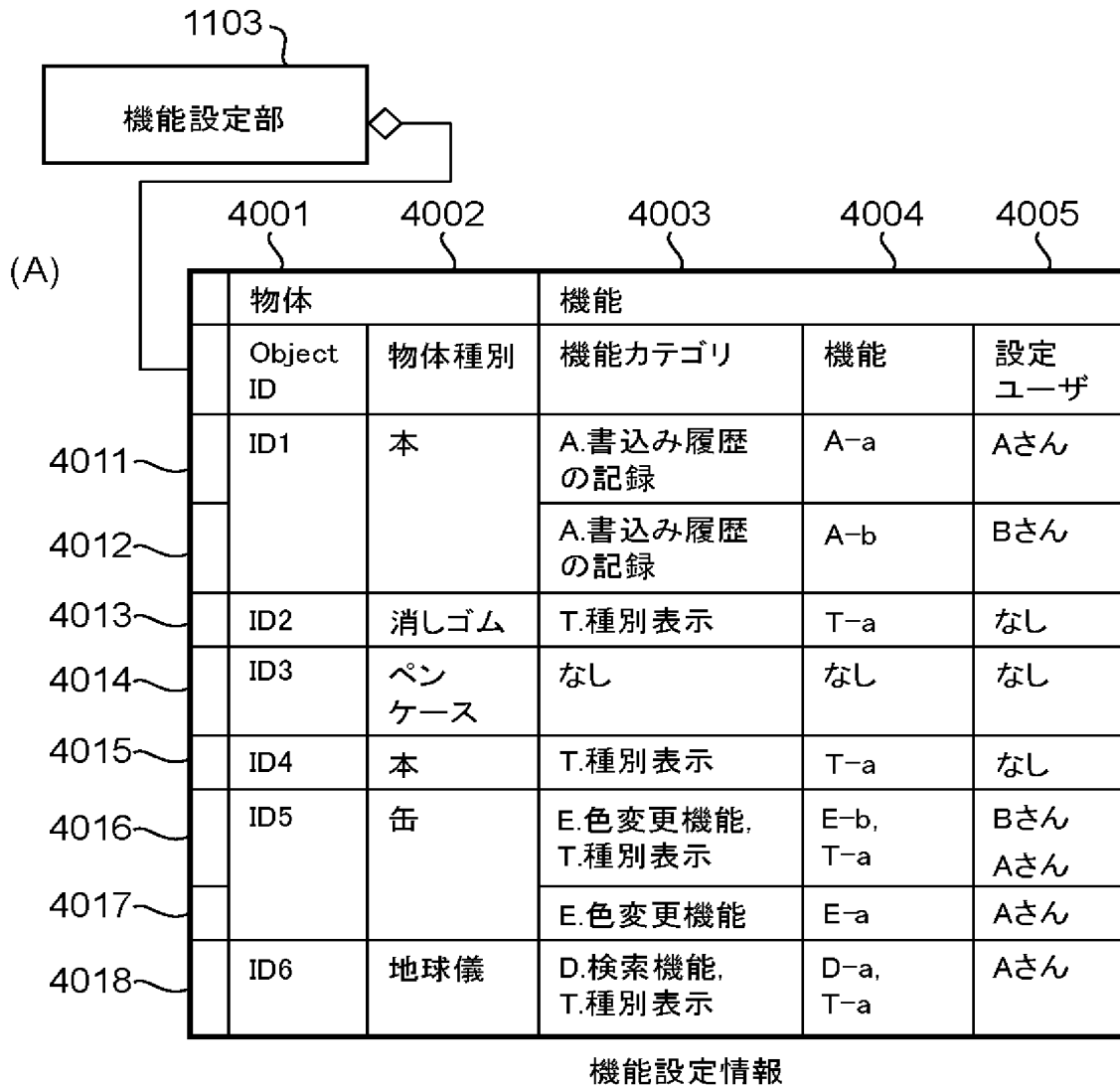
(B)



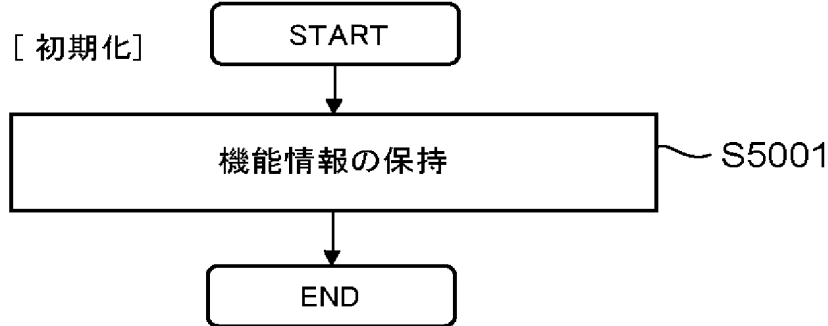
[図3]



[図4]

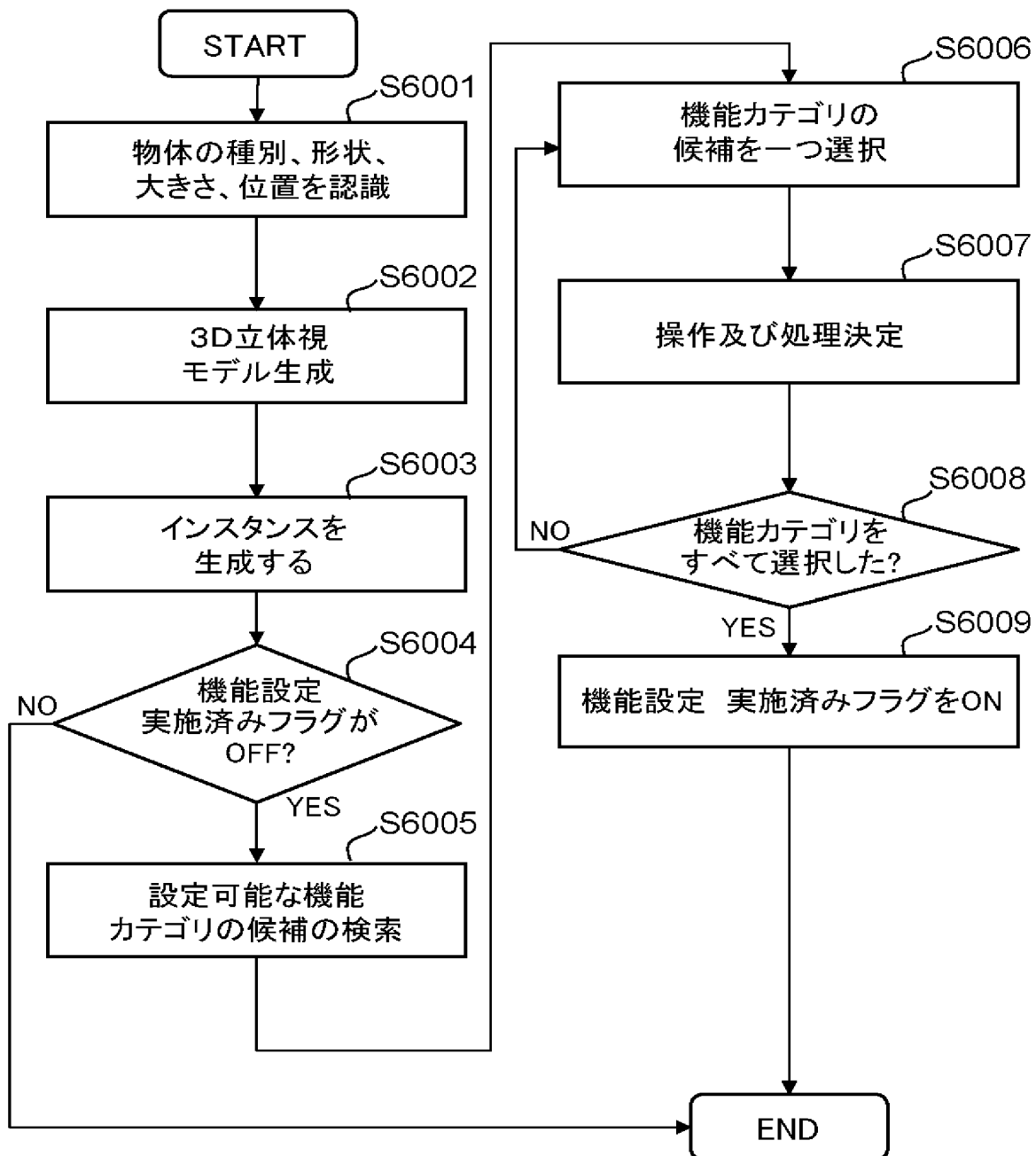


[図5]



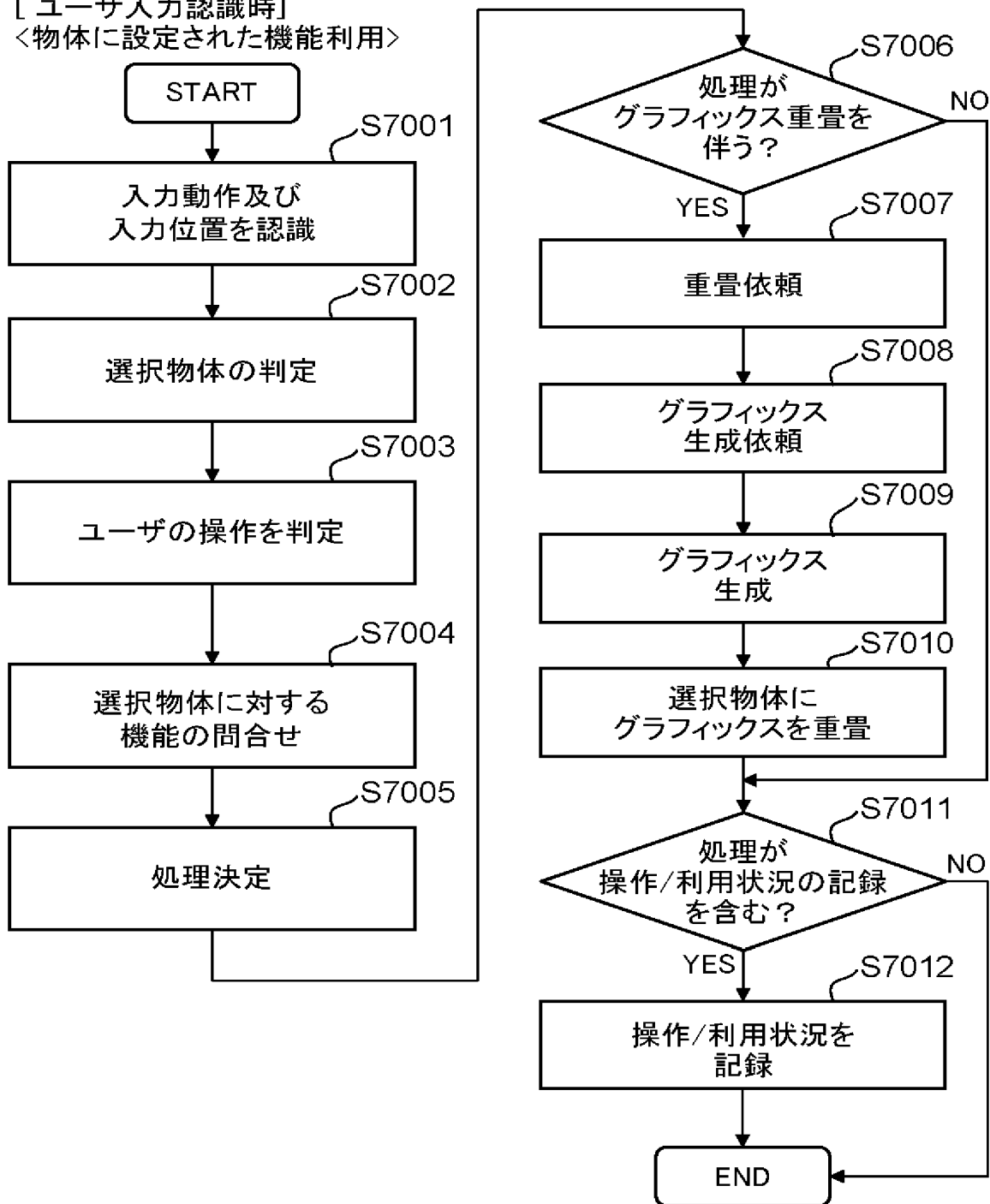
[図6]

[物体認識時]
<機能設定>



[図7]

[ユーザ入力認識時]
＜物体に設定された機能利用＞



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP2012/000357

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

G06F3/048(2006.01) i, G06F3/01(2006.01) i

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

G06F3/048, G06F3/01

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Jitsuyo Shinan Koho	1922-1996	Jitsuyo Shinan Toroku Koho	1996-2012
Kokai Jitsuyo Shinan Koho	1971-2012	Toroku Jitsuyo Shinan Koho	1994-2012

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X A	JP 2001-154781 A (NEC Corp.), 08 June 2001 (08.06.2001), paragraphs [0010] to [0042]; fig. 1 to 10 (Family: none)	1-5, 7-15 6



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.



See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T"

later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X"

document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y"

document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&"

document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

04 April, 2012 (04.04.12)

Date of mailing of the international search report

17 April, 2012 (17.04.12)

Name and mailing address of the ISA/

Japanese Patent Office

Authorized officer

Facsimile No.

Telephone No.